

(12) INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(19) World Intellectual Property Organization
International Bureau



(43) International Publication Date
22 June 2006 (22.06.2006)

PCT

(10) International Publication Number
WO 2006/065280 A2

(51) International Patent Classification:
A61K 31/44 (2006.01) *C07D 471/02* (2006.01)

(21) International Application Number:
PCT/US2005/021570

(22) International Filing Date: 17 June 2005 (17.06.2005)

(25) Filing Language: English

(26) Publication Language: English

(30) Priority Data:
60/580,989 18 June 2004 (18.06.2004) US
60/665,520 25 March 2005 (25.03.2005) US

(71) Applicant (*for all designated States except US*): 3M
INNOVATIVE PROPERTIES COMPANY [US/US];
3M Center, Post Office Box 33427, Saint Paul, Minnesota
55133-3427 (US).

(72) Inventors; and

(75) Inventors/Applicants (*for US only*): MOSER, William
H., [US/US]; 3M Center, Post Office Box 33427, Saint
Paul, Minnesota 55133-3427 (US). MOSEMAN, Joan T.,
[US/US]; 3M Center, Post Office Box 33427, Saint Paul,
Minnesota 55133-3427 (US). KSHIRSAGAR, Tushar
A., [IN/US]; 3M Center, Post Office Box 33427, Saint
Paul, Minnesota 55133-3427 (US). HEPPNER, Philip D.,
[US/US]; 3M Center, Post Office Box 33427, Saint Paul,
Minnesota 55133-3427 (US).

(74) Agents: ERSFELD, Dean A., et al.; 3M Center, Office
of Intellectual Property Counsel, Post Office Box 33427,
Saint Paul, Minnesota 55133-3427 (US).

(81) Designated States (*unless otherwise indicated, for every
kind of national protection available*): AE, AG, AL, AM,
AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BW, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CN,
CO, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DZ, EC, EE, EG, ES, FI,
GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE,
KG, KM, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MA,
MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MZ, NA, NG, NI, NO, NZ,
OM, PG, PH, PL, PT, RO, RU, SC, SD, SE, SG, SK, SL,
SM, SY, TJ, TM, TN, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VC,
VN, YU, ZA, ZM, ZW.

(84) Designated States (*unless otherwise indicated, for every
kind of regional protection available*): ARIPO (BW, GH,
GM, KE, LS, MW, MZ, NA, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZM,
ZW), Eurasian (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM),
European (AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI,
FR, GB, GR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LT, LU, MC, NL, PL, PT, RO,
SE, SI, SK, TR), OAPI (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN,
GQ, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

Declarations under Rule 4.17:

- *as to applicant's entitlement to apply for and be granted a
patent (Rule 4.17(ii))*
- *as to the applicant's entitlement to claim the priority of the
earlier application (Rule 4.17(iii))*

Published:

- *without international search report and to be republished
upon receipt of that report*

*For two-letter codes and other abbreviations, refer to the "Guid-
ance Notes on Codes and Abbreviations" appearing at the begin-
ning of each regular issue of the PCT Gazette.*

(54) Title: ISOXAZOLE, DIHYDROISOXAZOLE, AND OXADIAZOLE SUBSTITUTED IMIDAZO RING COMPOUNDS
AND METHODS

(57) Abstract: Imidazo ring compounds, (e.g., imidazo[4,5-c]pyridine, imidazo[4,5-c]quinoline, 6,7,8,9-tetrahydro imidazo[4,5-c]quinoline, imidazo[4,5-c]naphthyridine, and 6,7,8,9-tetrahydro imidazo[4,5-c]naphthyridine compounds) having an isoxazole, dihydroisoxazole, or oxadiazole substituent at the 1-position, pharmaceutical compositions containing the compounds, intermediates, and methods of making and methods of use of these compounds as immunomodulators, for modulating cytokine biosynthesis in animals and in the treatment of diseases including viral and neoplastic diseases are disclosed.

WO 2006/065280 A2

ISOXAZOLE, DIHYDROISOXAZOLE, AND OXADIAZOLE SUBSTITUTED
IMIDAZO RING COMPOUNDS AND METHODS

5

CROSS REFERENCE TO RELATED APPLICATIONS

The present invention claims priority to U.S. Provisional Application Serial No. 60/665520, filed March 25, 2005, and U.S. Provisional Application Serial No. 60/580989, filed June 18, 2004, both of which are incorporated herein by reference.

10

BACKGROUND

In the 1950's the 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline ring system was developed, and 1-(6-methoxy-8-quinoliny)-2-methyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline was synthesized for possible use as an antimalarial agent. Subsequently, syntheses of various substituted 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolines were reported. For example, 1-[2-(4-piperidyl)ethyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline was synthesized as a possible anticonvulsant and cardiovascular agent. Also, several 2-oxoimidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolines have been reported.

15

Certain 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amines and 1- and 2-substituted derivatives thereof were later found to be useful as antiviral agents, bronchodilators and immunomodulators. Subsequently, certain substituted 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine, quinolin-4-amine, tetrahydroquinolin-4-amine, naphthyridin-4-amine, and tetrahydronaphthyridin-4-amine compounds as well as certain analogous thiazolo and oxazolo compounds were synthesized and found to be useful as immune response modifiers, rendering them useful in the treatment of a variety of disorders.

20

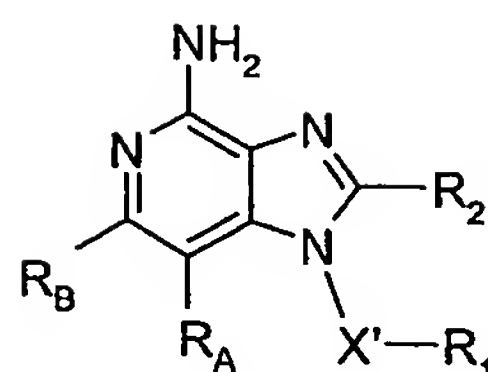
There continues to be interest in and a need for compounds that have the ability to modulate the immune response, by induction of cytokine biosynthesis or other mechanisms.

25

SUMMARY

30

It has now been found that compounds of Formula I are useful as immune response modifiers. The present invention, therefore, provides a new class of immune response modifying compounds of the following Formula I:



I

wherein X', R₁, R_A, R_B, and R₂ are as defined below.

The compounds of Formula I are useful as immune response modifiers due to their ability to induce cytokine biosynthesis (e.g., induce the synthesis of at least one cytokine) and otherwise modulate the immune response when administered to animals. This makes the compounds useful in the treatment of a variety of conditions such as viral diseases and tumors that are responsive to such changes in the immune response.

The invention further provides pharmaceutical compositions containing an effective amount of a compound of Formula I and methods of inducing cytokine biosynthesis in an animal, treating a viral infection or disease and/or treating a neoplastic disease in an animal by administering an effective amount of a compound of Formula I to the animal.

In addition, methods of synthesizing compounds of Formula I and intermediates useful in the synthesis of these compounds are provided.

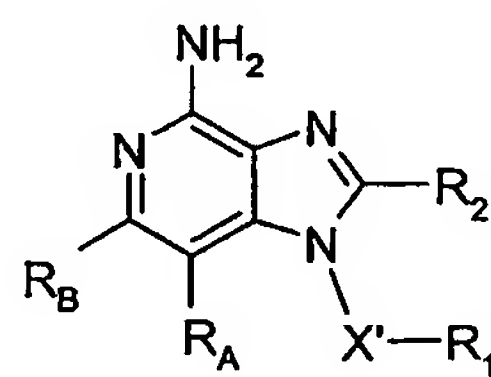
As used herein, "a," "an," "the," "at least one," and "one or more" are used interchangeably.

The terms "comprises" and variations thereof do not have a limiting meaning where these terms appear in the description and claims.

The above summary of the present invention is not intended to describe each disclosed embodiment or every implementation of the present invention. The description that follows more particularly exemplifies illustrative embodiments. In several places throughout the description, guidance is provided through lists of examples, which examples can be used in various combinations. In each instance, the recited list serves only as a representative group and should not be interpreted as an exclusive list.

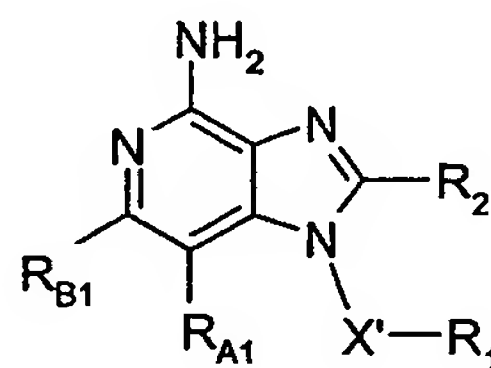
DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF ILLUSTRATIVE EMBODIMENTS OF THE INVENTION

The present invention provides compounds of the following Formula I:

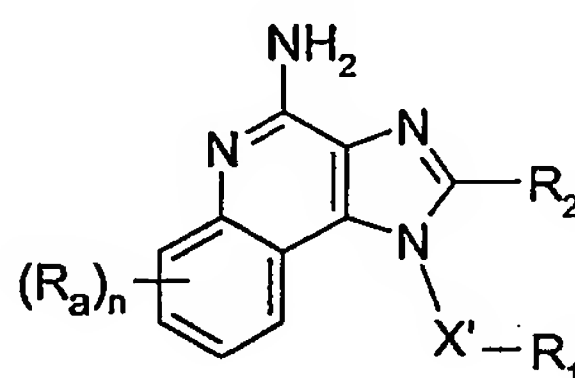


I

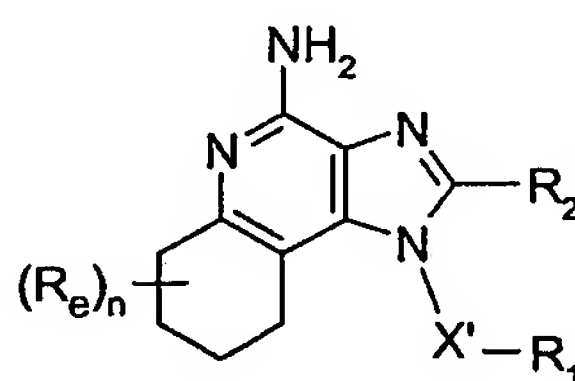
as well as more specific compounds of the following Formulas II through VIII, IXa, IXb, IXc, and IXd:



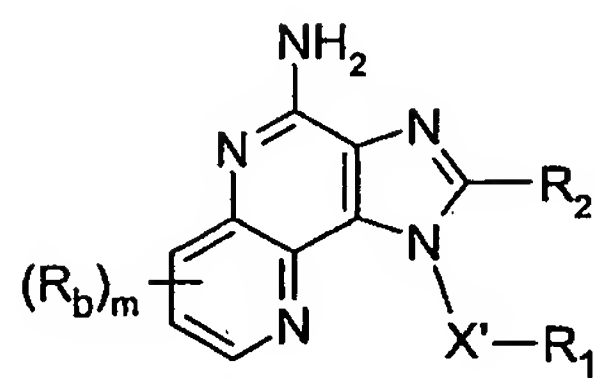
II



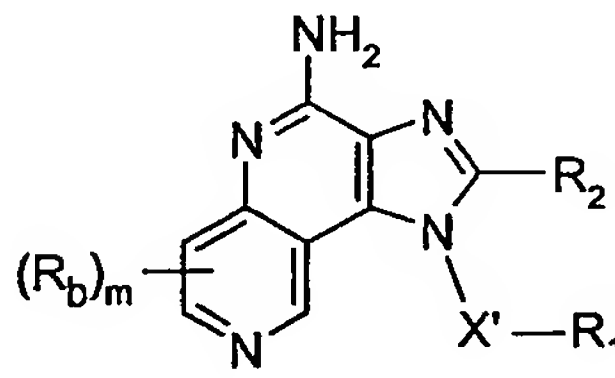
III



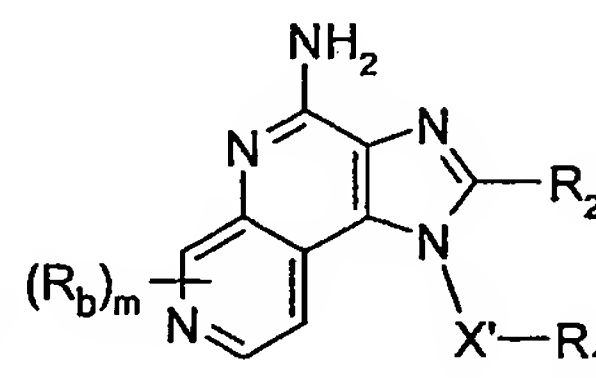
IV



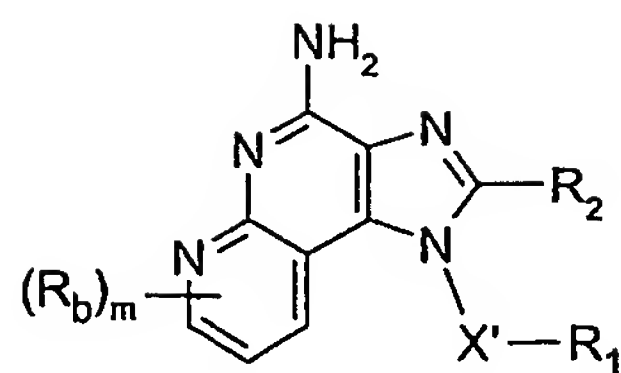
V



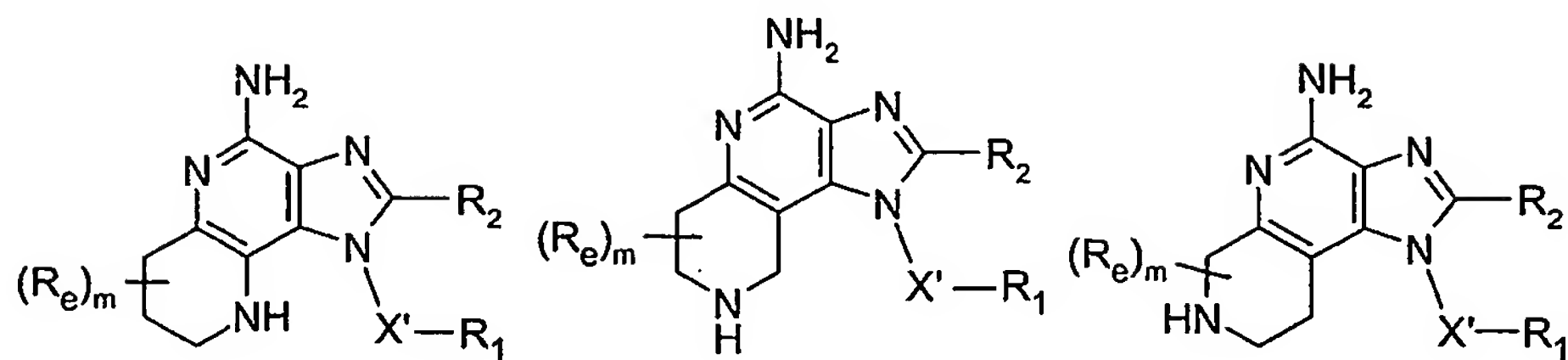
VI



VII



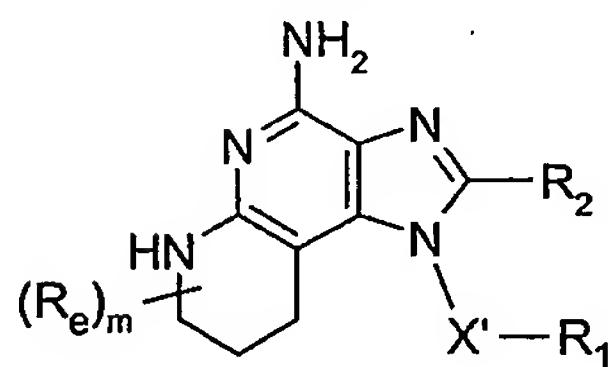
VIII



IXa

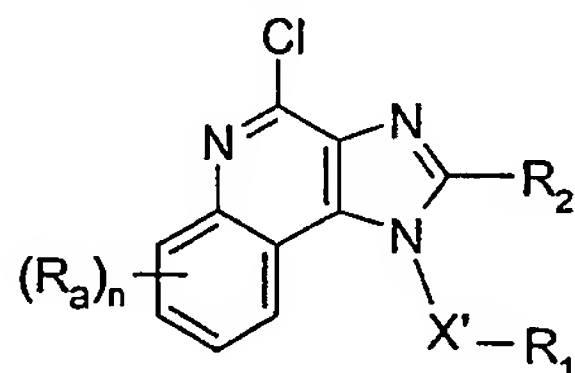
IXb

IXc



IXd

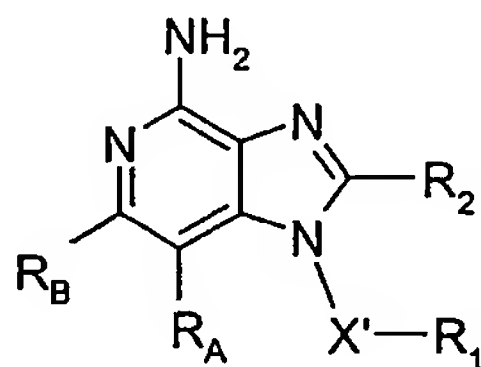
and intermediates of the following Formula X:



X

wherein X' , R_1 , R_A , R_B , R_{A1} , R_{B1} , R_a , R_b , R_e , R_2 , m , and n are as defined below.

In one embodiment, the present invention provides a compound of Formula I:

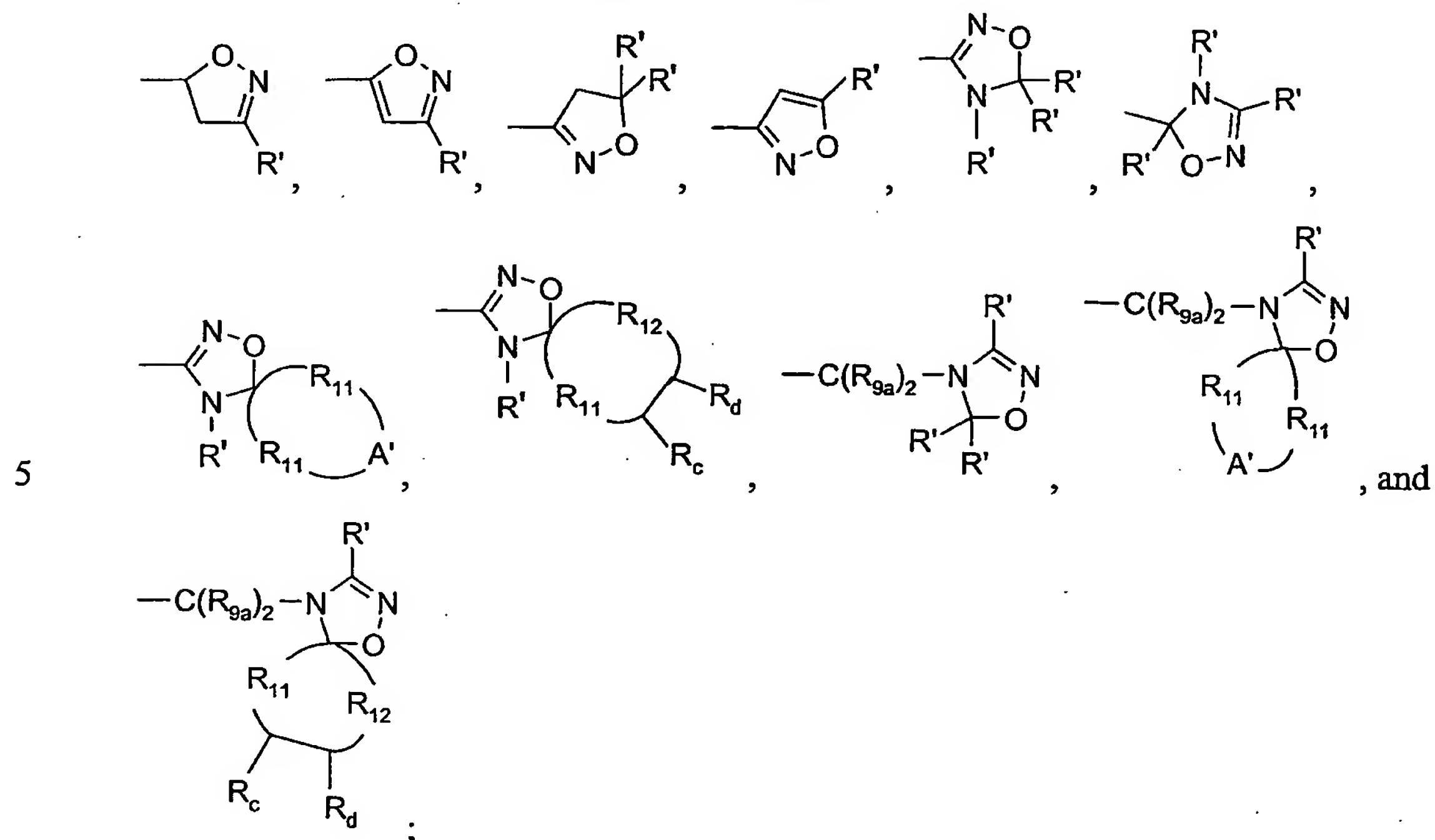


I

wherein:

X' is selected from the group consisting of -CH(R₉)-, -CH(R₉)-alkylene-, and -CH(R₉)-alkenylene-;

R₁ is selected from the group consisting of:



R' is selected from the group consisting of:

hydrogen,

alkyl,

alkenyl,

aryl,

arylalkylenyl,

heteroaryl,

heteroarylalkylenyl,

heterocyclyl,

heterocyclylalkylenyl, and

alkyl, alkenyl, aryl, arylalkylenyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkylenyl,

heterocyclyl, or heterocyclylalkylenyl, substituted by one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of:

hydroxy,

alkyl,

haloalkyl,

hydroxyalkyl,
 alkoxy,
 dialkylamino,
 -S(O)₀₋₂-alkyl,
 5 -S(O)₀₋₂-aryl,
 -NH-S(O)₂-alkyl,
 -NH-S(O)₂-aryl,
 haloalkoxy,
 halogen,
 10 nitrile,
 nitro,
 aryl,
 heteroaryl,
 heterocyclyl,
 15 aryloxy,
 arylalkyleneoxy,
 -C(O)-O-alkyl,
 -C(O)-N(R₈)₂,
 -N(R₈)-C(O)-alkyl,
 20 -O-(CO)-alkyl, and
 -C(O)-alkyl;

R_c and R_d are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen,
 halogen, hydroxy, alkyl, alkenyl, aryl, haloalkyl, alkoxy, alkylthio, and -N(R₉)₂; or R_c and
 R_d can join to form a fused aryl ring or fused 5-10 membered heteroaryl ring containing
 25 one to four heteroatoms;

R₁₁ is C₁₋₆ alkylene or C₂₋₆ alkenylene, wherein the alkylene or alkenylene is
 optionally interrupted by one heteroatom;

R₁₂ is selected from the group consisting of a bond, C₁₋₅ alkylene, and
 C₂₋₅ alkenylene, wherein the alkylene or alkenylene is optionally interrupted by one
 30 heteroatom;

wherein the total number of atoms in the ring which includes R₁₁ or R₁₂ is 4 to 9;

A' is selected from the group consisting of -O-, -S(O)₀₋₂-, -N(-Q-R₄)-, and

-C(R_{9a})₂;

R_A and R_B are each independently selected from the group consisting of:

hydrogen,

halogen,

5 alkyl,

alkenyl,

alkoxy,

alkylthio, and

-N(R₉)₂;

10 or R_A and R_B taken together form either a fused aryl ring that is unsubstituted or substituted by one or more R_a groups, or a fused 5 to 7 membered saturated ring that is unsubstituted or substituted by one or more R_e groups;

or R_A and R_B taken together form a fused heteroaryl or 5 to 7 membered saturated ring containing one heteroatom selected from the group consisting of N and S, wherein the
15 heteroaryl ring is unsubstituted or substituted by one or more R_b groups, and the 5 to 7 membered saturated ring is unsubstituted or substituted by one or more R_e groups;

R_a is selected from the group consisting of halogen, alkyl, haloalkyl, alkoxy, and
-N(R₉)₂;

R_b is selected from the group consisting of halogen, hydroxy, alkyl, haloalkyl,
20 alkoxy, and -N(R₉)₂;

R_e is selected from the group consisting of halogen, hydroxy, alkyl, alkenyl, haloalkyl, alkoxy, alkylthio, and -N(R₉)₂;

R₂ is selected from the group consisting of:

-R₄,

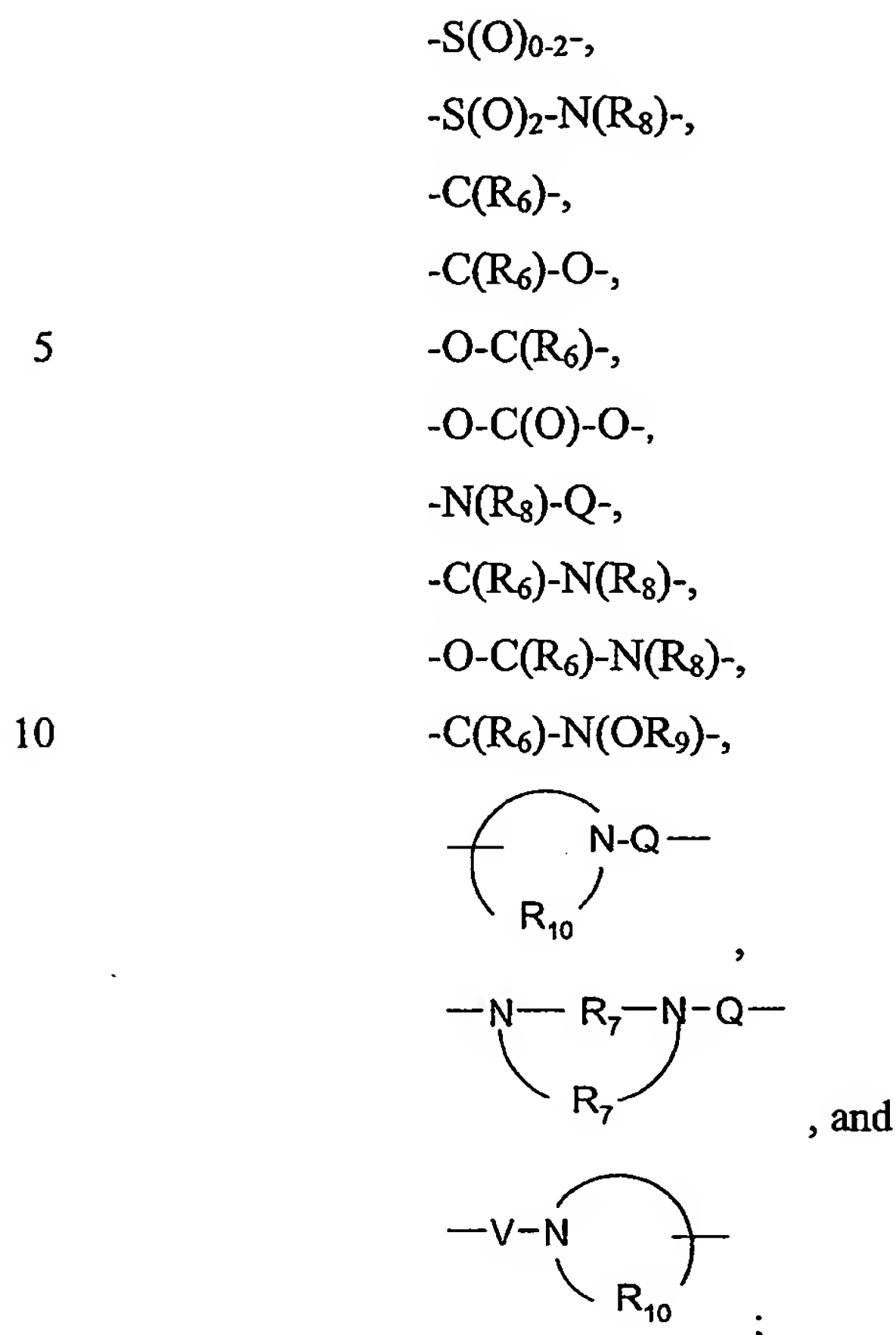
25 -X-R₄,

-X-Y-R₄, and

-X-R₅;

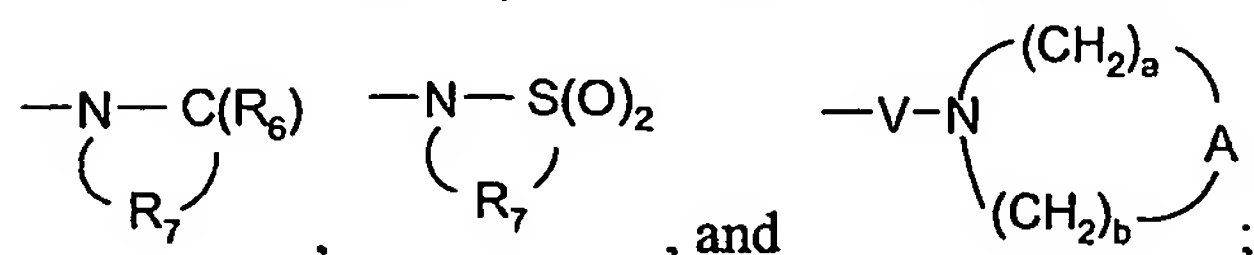
X is selected from the group consisting of alkylene, alkenylene, alkynylene, arylene, heteroarylene, and heterocyclylene wherein the alkylene, alkenylene, and
30 alkynylene groups are optionally interrupted or terminated by arylene, heteroarylene or heterocyclylene and optionally interrupted by one or more -O- groups;

Y is selected from the group consisting of:



R_4 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl,
 arylalkylenyl, aryloxyalkylenyl, alkylarylenyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkylenyl,
 heteroaryloxyalkylenyl, alkylheteroarylenyl, and heterocyclyl wherein the alkyl, alkenyl,
 alkynyl, aryl, arylalkylenyl, aryloxyalkylenyl, alkylarylenyl, heteroaryl,
 heteroarylalkylenyl, heteroaryloxyalkylenyl, alkylheteroarylenyl, and heterocyclyl groups
 are unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents independently selected from
 the group consisting of alkyl, alkoxy, hydroxyalkyl, haloalkyl, haloalkoxy, halogen, nitro,
 hydroxy, mercapto, cyano, aryl, aryloxy, arylalkyleneoxy, heteroaryl, heteroaryloxy,
 heteroarylalkyleneoxy, heterocyclyl, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino,
 (dialkylamino)alkyleneoxy, and in the case of alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, and heterocyclyl,
 oxo;

R_5 is selected from the group consisting of:



R_6 is selected from the group consisting of $=O$ and $=S$;

R_7 is C_{2-7} alkylene;

R_8 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, alkoxyalkylenyl, hydroxyalkylenyl, and arylalkylenyl;

5 R_9 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl;

R_{9a} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and C_{1-4} alkyl;

R_{10} is C_{3-8} alkylene;

A is selected from the group consisting of $-O-$, $-C(O)-$, $-S(O)_{0-2}-$, $-CH_2-$, and $-N(R_4)-$;

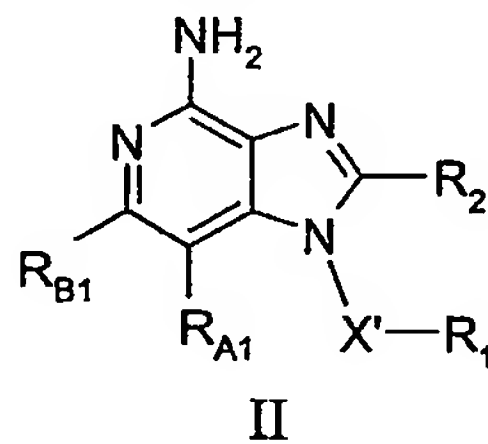
10 Q is selected from the group consisting of a bond, $-C(R_6)-$, $-C(R_6)-C(R_6)-$, $-S(O)_2-$, and $-S(O)_2-N(R_8)-$;

V is selected from the group consisting of $-C(R_6)-$, $-O-C(R_6)-$, and $-S(O)_2-$; and

a and b are each independently an integer from 1 to 6 with the proviso that $a + b$ is ≤ 7 ;

15 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

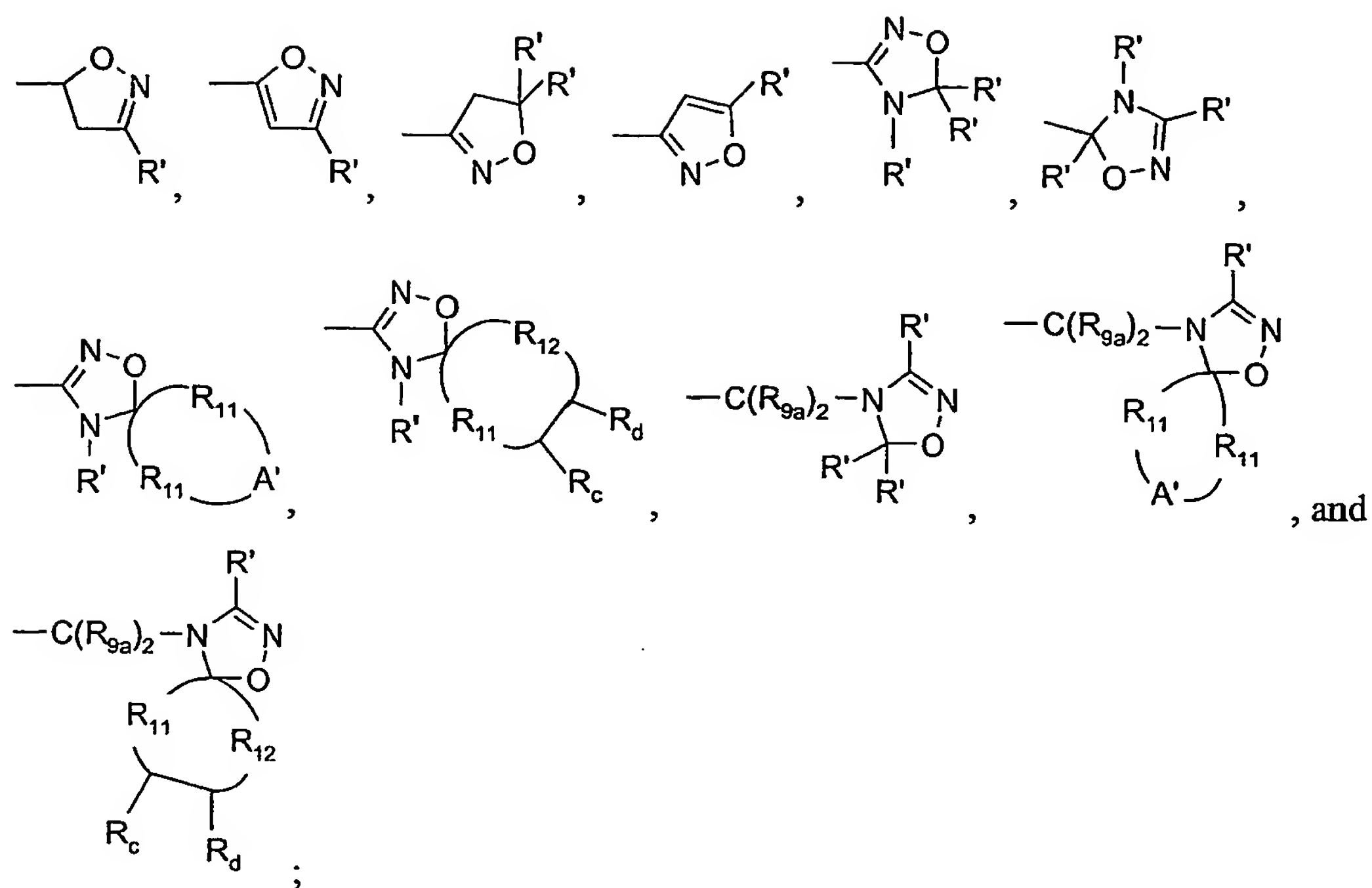
In one embodiment, the present invention provides a compound of Formula II:



20 wherein:

X' is selected from the group consisting of $-CH(R_9)-$, $-CH(R_9)$ -alkylene-, and $-CH(R_9)$ -alkenylenyl-;

R_1 is selected from the group consisting of:



R' is selected from the group consisting of:

- 5 hydrogen,
- alkyl,
- alkenyl,
- aryl,
- arylalkylenyl,
- 10 heteroaryl,
- heteroarylalkylenyl,
- heterocyclyl,
- heterocyclylalkylenyl, and
- alkyl, alkenyl, aryl, arylalkylenyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkylenyl,
- 15 heterocyclyl, or heterocyclylalkylenyl, substituted by one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of:
- hydroxy,
- alkyl,
- haloalkyl,
- 20 hydroxyalkyl,
- alkoxy,
- dialkylamino,

5 -S(O)₀₋₂-alkyl,
 -S(O)₀₋₂-aryl,
 -NH-S(O)₂-alkyl,
 -NH-S(O)₂-aryl,
 haloalkoxy,
 halogen,
 nitrile,
 nitro,
 aryl,
 10 heteroaryl,
 heterocyclyl,
 aryloxy,
 arylalkyleneoxy,
 -C(O)-O-alkyl,
 15 -C(O)-N(R₈)₂,
 -N(R₈)-C(O)-alkyl,
 -O-(CO)-alkyl, and
 -C(O)-alkyl;

20 R_c and R_d are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen,
 halogen, hydroxy, alkyl, alkenyl, aryl, haloalkyl, alkoxy, alkylthio, and -N(R₉)₂; or R_c and
 R_d can join to form a fused aryl ring or fused 5-10 membered heteroaryl ring containing
 one to four heteroatoms;

25 R₁₁ is C₁₋₆ alkylene or C₂₋₆ alkenylene, wherein the alkylene or alkenylene is
 optionally interrupted by one heteroatom;

30 R₁₂ is selected from the group consisting of a bond, C₁₋₅ alkylene, and
 C₂₋₅ alkenylene, wherein the alkylene or alkenylene is optionally interrupted by one
 heteroatom;

wherein the total number of atoms in the ring which includes R₁₁ or R₁₂ is 4 to 9;

30 A' is selected from the group consisting of -O-, -S(O)₀₋₂-, -N(-Q-R₄)-, and
 -C(R_{9a})₂-;

R_{A1} and R_{B1} are each independently selected from the group consisting of:

hydrogen,

halogen,

alkyl,

alkenyl,

alkoxy,

5

alkylthio, and

-N(R₉)₂;

R₂ is selected from the group consisting of:

-R₄,

-X-R₄,

10

-X-Y-R₄, and

-X-R₅;

15

X is selected from the group consisting of alkylene, alkenylene, alkynylene, arylene, heteroarylene, and heterocyclylene wherein the alkylene, alkenylene, and alkynylene groups are optionally interrupted or terminated by arylene, heteroarylene or heterocyclylene and optionally interrupted by one or more -O- groups;

Y is selected from the group consisting of:

-S(O)₀₋₂-,

-S(O)₂-N(R₈)-,

-C(R₆)-,

20

-C(R₆)-O-,

-O-C(R₆)-,

-O-C(O)-O-,

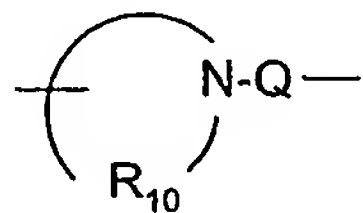
-N(R₈)-Q-,

-C(R₆)-N(R₈)-,

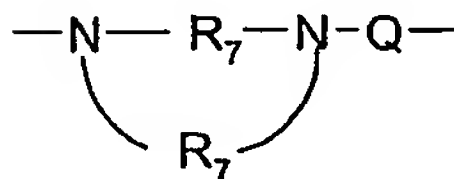
25

-O-C(R₆)-N(R₈)-,

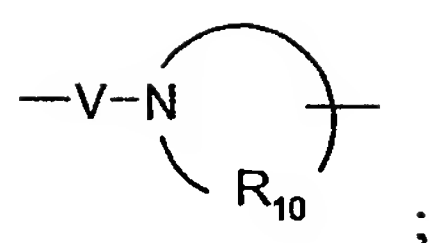
-C(R₆)-N(OR₉)-,



,

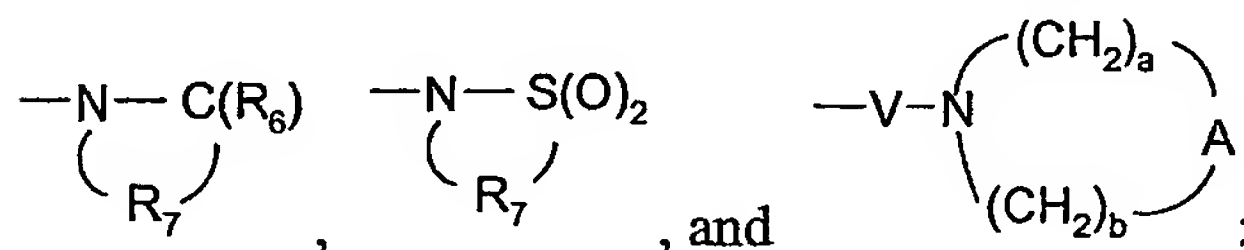


, and



R₄ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, arylalkylenyl, aryloxyalkylenyl, alkylarylenyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkylenyl, heteroaryloxyalkylenyl, alkylheteroarylenyl, and heterocyclyl wherein the alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, arylalkylenyl, aryloxyalkylenyl, alkylarylenyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkylenyl, heteroaryloxyalkylenyl, alkylheteroarylenyl, and heterocyclyl groups are unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents independently selected from the group consisting of alkyl, alkoxy, hydroxyalkyl, haloalkyl, haloalkoxy, halogen, nitro, hydroxy, mercapto, cyano, aryl, aryloxy, arylalkyleneoxy, heteroaryl, heteroaryloxy, heteroarylalkyleneoxy, heterocyclyl, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, (dialkylamino)alkyleneoxy, and in the case of alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, and heterocyclyl, oxo;

R_5 is selected from the group consisting of:



15 R₆ is selected from the group consisting of =O and =S;

R₇ is C₂₋₇ alkylene;

R₈ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, alkoxyalkylenyl, hydroxyalkylenyl, and arylalkylenyl;

R₉ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl;

20 R_{9a} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and C₁₋₄ alkyl;

R₁₀ is C₃₋₈ alkylene;

A is selected from the group consisting of -O-, -C(O)-, -S(O)₀₋₂-, -CH₂-, and -N(R₄)-;

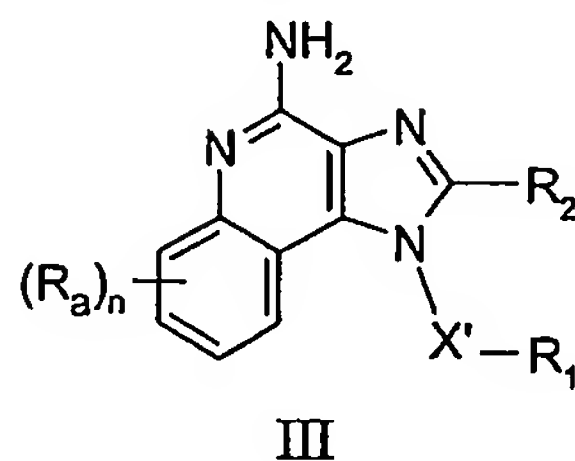
Q is selected from the group consisting of a bond, $-C(R_6)-$, $-C(R_6)-C(R_6)-$, $-S(O)_2-$,
25 and $-S(O)_2-N(R_8)-$;

V is selected from the group consisting of -C(R₆)-, -O-C(R₆)-, and -S(O)₂-; and

a and b are each independently an integer from 1 to 6 with the proviso that $a + b \leq 7$;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

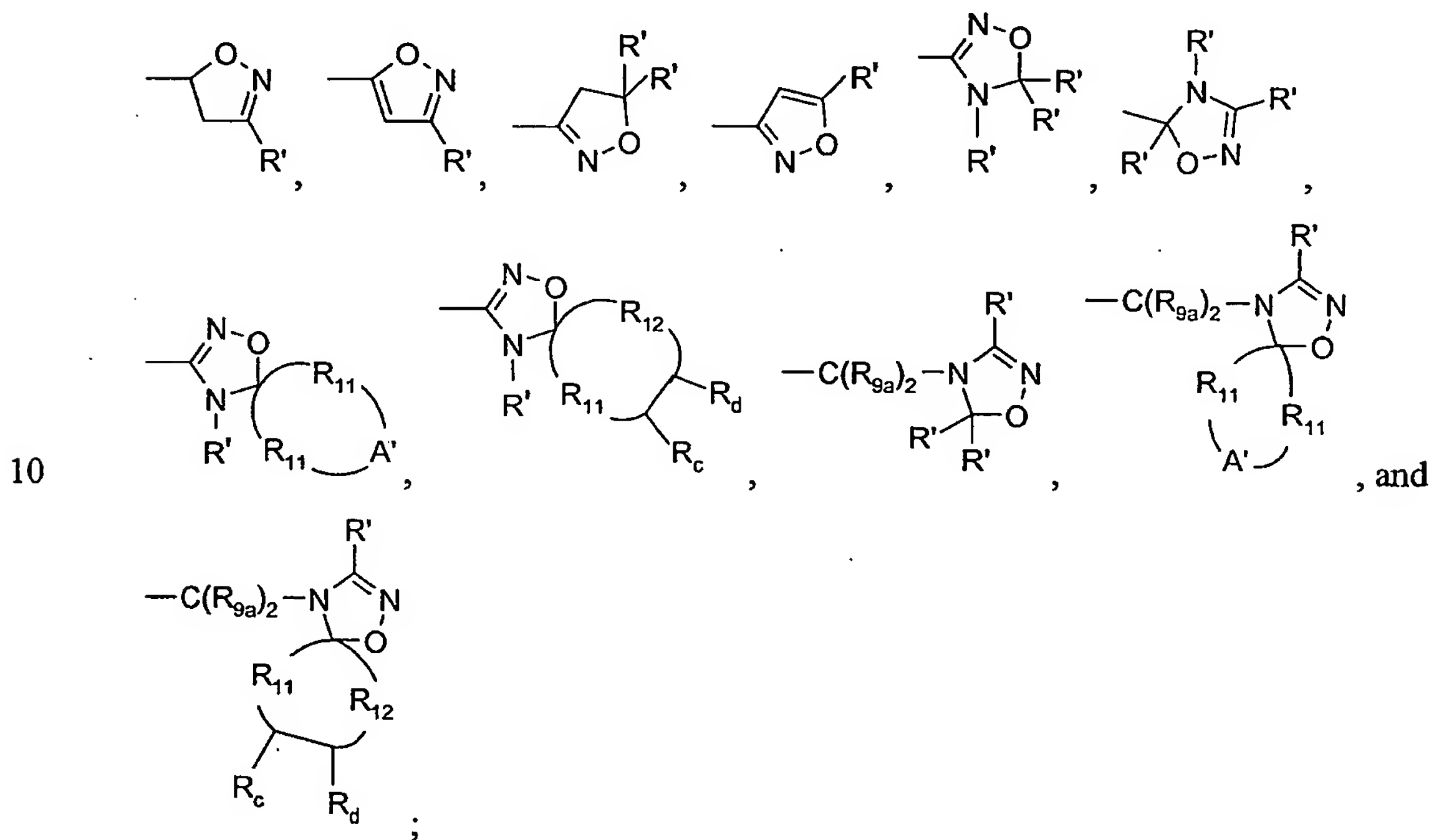
In one embodiment, the present invention provides a compound of Formula III:



5 wherein:

X' is selected from the group consisting of -CH(R₉)-, -CH(R₉)-alkylene-, and -CH(R₉)-alkenylene-;

R_1 is selected from the group consisting of:



R' is selected from the group consisting of:

hydrogen,

alkyl,

alkenyl,

aryl,

arylaalkylenyl,

heteroaryl,

heteroarylalkylenyl,

heterocyclyl,
heterocyclylalkylenyl, and
alkyl, alkenyl, aryl, arylalkylenyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkylenyl,
heterocyclyl, or heterocyclylalkylenyl, substituted by one or more substituents selected
5 from the group consisting of:

hydroxy,
alkyl,
haloalkyl,
hydroxyalkyl,
10 alkoxy,
dialkylamino,
-S(O)₀₋₂-alkyl,
-S(O)₀₋₂-aryl,
-NH-S(O)₂-alkyl,
15 -NH-S(O)₂-aryl,
haloalkoxy,
halogen,
nitrile,
nitro,
20 aryl,
heteroaryl,
heterocyclyl,
aryloxy,
arylalkyleneoxy,
25 -C(O)-O-alkyl,
-C(O)-N(R₈)₂,
-N(R₈)-C(O)-alkyl,
-O-(CO)-alkyl, and
-C(O)-alkyl;

30 R_c and R_d are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen,
halogen, hydroxy, alkyl, alkenyl, aryl, haloalkyl, alkoxy, alkylthio, and -N(R₉)₂; or R_c and

R_d can join to form a fused aryl ring or fused 5-10 membered heteroaryl ring containing one to four heteroatoms;

R_{11} is C_{1-6} alkylene or C_{2-6} alkenylene, wherein the alkylene or alkenylene is optionally interrupted by one heteroatom;

5 R_{12} is selected from the group consisting of a bond, C_{1-5} alkylene, and C_{2-5} alkenylene, wherein the alkylene or alkenylene is optionally interrupted by one heteroatom;

wherein the total number of atoms in the ring which includes R_{11} or R_{12} is 4 to 9;

A' is selected from the group consisting of $-O-$, $-S(O)_{0-2}-$, $-N(-Q-R_4)-$, and
10 $-C(R_{9a})_2-$;

R_a is selected from the group consisting of halogen, alkyl, haloalkyl, alkoxy, and $-N(R_9)_2$;

n is an integer from 0 to 4;

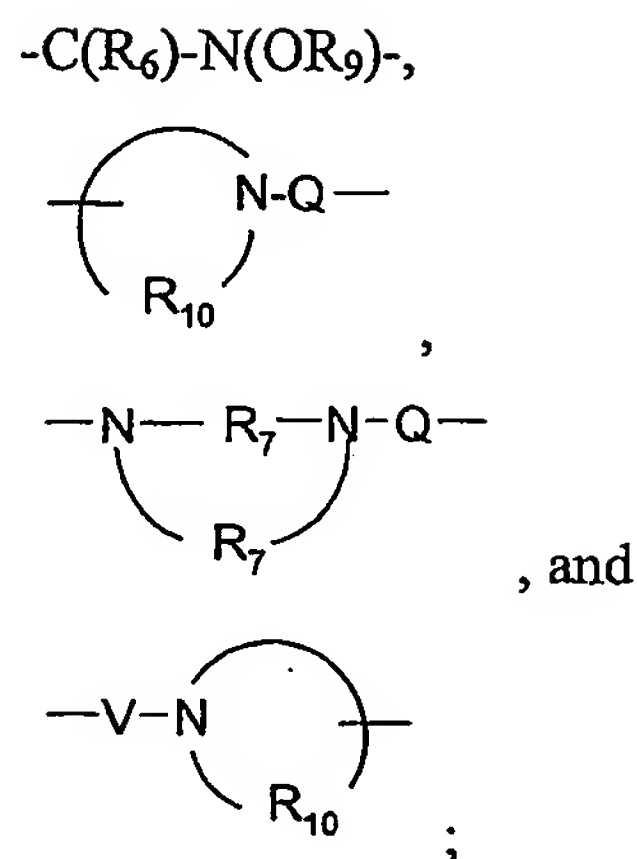
R_2 is selected from the group consisting of:

15 $-R_4$,
 $-X-R_4$,
 $-X-Y-R_4$, and
 $-X-R_5$;

X is selected from the group consisting of alkylene, alkenylene, alkynylene, arylene, heteroarylene, and heterocyclylene wherein the alkylene, alkenylene, and
20 alkynylene groups are optionally interrupted or terminated by arylene, heteroarylene or heterocyclylene and optionally interrupted by one or more $-O-$ groups;

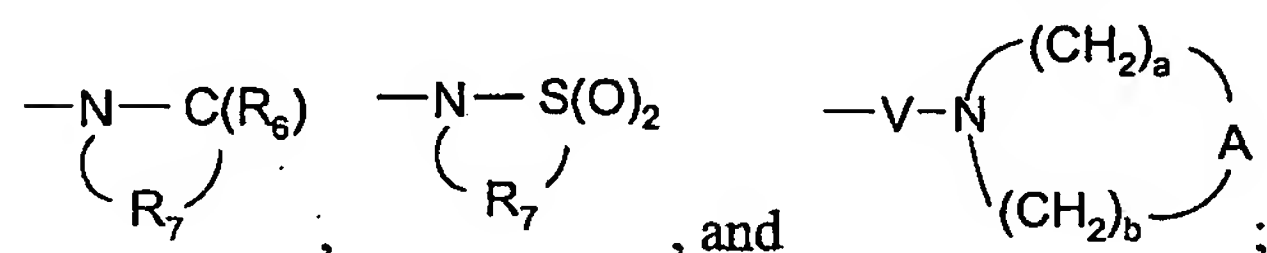
Y is selected from the group consisting of:

25 $-S(O)_{0-2}-$,
 $-S(O)_2-N(R_8)-$,
 $-C(R_6)-$,
 $-C(R_6)-O-$,
 $-O-C(R_6)-$,
 $-O-C(O)-O-$,
30 $-N(R_8)-Q-$,
 $-C(R_6)-N(R_8)-$,
 $-O-C(R_6)-N(R_8)-$,



5 R_4 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, arylalkylenyl, aryloxyalkylenyl, alkylarylenyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkylenyl, heteroaryloxyalkylenyl, alkylheteroarylenyl, and heterocyclyl wherein the alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, arylalkylenyl, aryloxyalkylenyl, alkylarylenyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkylenyl, heteroaryloxyalkylenyl, alkylheteroarylenyl, and heterocyclyl groups
 10 are unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents independently selected from the group consisting of alkyl, alkoxy, hydroxyalkyl, haloalkyl, haloalkoxy, halogen, nitro, hydroxy, mercapto, cyano, aryl, aryloxy, arylalkyleneoxy, heteroaryl, heteroaryloxy, heteroarylalkyleneoxy, heterocyclyl, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, (dialkylamino)alkyleneoxy, and in the case of alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, and heterocyclyl,
 15 oxo;

R_5 is selected from the group consisting of:



R_6 is selected from the group consisting of =O and =S;

R_7 is C_{2-7} alkylene;

20 R_8 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, alkoxyalkylenyl, hydroxyalkylenyl, and arylalkylenyl;

R_9 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl;

R_{9a} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and C_{1-4} alkyl;

R_{10} is C_{3-8} alkylene;

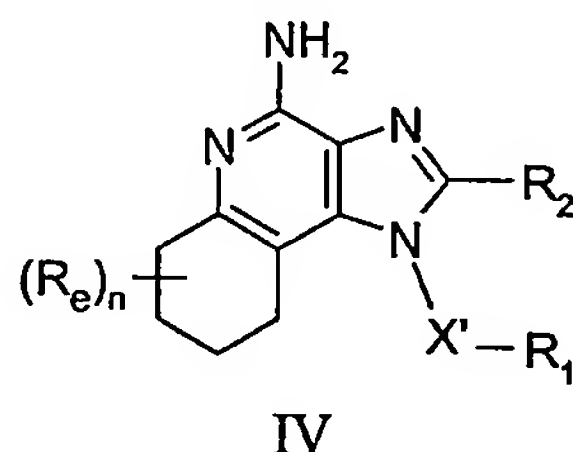
25 A is selected from the group consisting of -O-, -C(O)-, -S(O)₀₋₂-, -CH₂-, and -N(R_4)-;

Q is selected from the group consisting of a bond, $-\text{C}(\text{R}_6)-$, $-\text{C}(\text{R}_6)-\text{C}(\text{R}_6)-$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2-$, and $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2-\text{N}(\text{R}_8)-$;

V is selected from the group consisting of $-\text{C}(\text{R}_6)-$, $-\text{O}-\text{C}(\text{R}_6)-$, and $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2-$; and

a and b are each independently an integer from 1 to 6 with the proviso that $a + b$ is ≤ 7 ;
or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

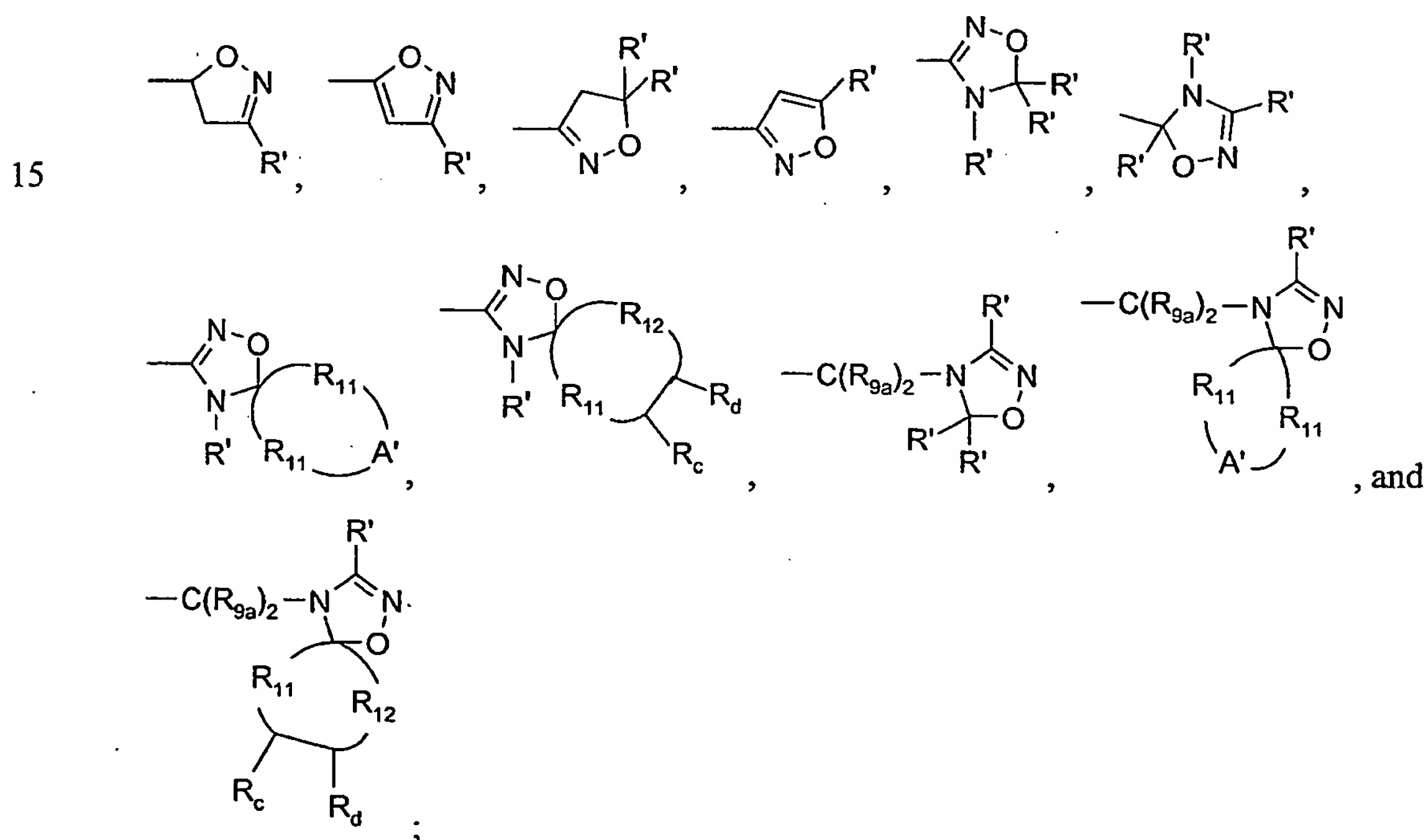
In one embodiment, the present invention provides a compound of Formula IV:



wherein:

X' is selected from the group consisting of $-\text{CH}(\text{R}_9)-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}_9)-\text{alkylene}-$, and $-\text{CH}(\text{R}_9)-\text{alkenylene}-$;

R₁ is selected from the group consisting of:



R' is selected from the group consisting of:

hydrogen,

alkyl,
alkenyl,
aryl,
arylalkylenyl,
5 heteroaryl,
heteroarylalkylenyl,
heterocyclyl,
heterocyclylalkylenyl, and
alkyl, alkenyl, aryl, arylalkylenyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkylenyl,
10 heterocyclyl, or heterocyclylalkylenyl, substituted by one or more substituents selected
from the group consisting of:
hydroxy,
alkyl,
haloalkyl,
15 hydroxyalkyl,
alkoxy,
dialkylamino,
-S(O)₀₋₂-alkyl,
-S(O)₀₋₂-aryl,
20 -NH-S(O)₂-alkyl,
-NH-S(O)₂-aryl,
haloalkoxy,
halogen,
nitrile,
25 nitro,
aryl,
heteroaryl,
heterocyclyl,
aryloxy,
30 arylalkyleneoxy,
-C(O)-O-alkyl,
-C(O)-N(R₈)₂,

-N(R₈)-C(O)-alkyl,
 -O-(CO)-alkyl, and
 -C(O)-alkyl;

R_c and R_d are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen,
 5 halogen, hydroxy, alkyl, alkenyl, aryl, haloalkyl, alkoxy, alkylthio, and -N(R₉)₂; or R_c and
 R_d can join to form a fused aryl ring or fused 5-10 membered heteroaryl ring containing
 one to four heteroatoms;

R₁₁ is C₁₋₆ alkylene or C₂₋₆ alkenylene, wherein the alkylene or alkenylene is
 optionally interrupted by one heteroatom;

10 R₁₂ is selected from the group consisting of a bond, C₁₋₅ alkylene, and
 C₂₋₅ alkenylene, wherein the alkylene or alkenylene is optionally interrupted by one
 heteroatom;

wherein the total number of atoms in the ring which includes R₁₁ or R₁₂ is 4 to 9;

A' is selected from the group consisting of -O-, -S(O)₀₋₂-, -N(-Q-R₄)-, and
 15 -C(R_{9a})₂-;

R_e is selected from the group consisting of halogen, hydroxy, alkyl, alkenyl,
 haloalkyl, alkoxy, alkylthio, and -N(R₉)₂;

n is an integer of 0 to 4;

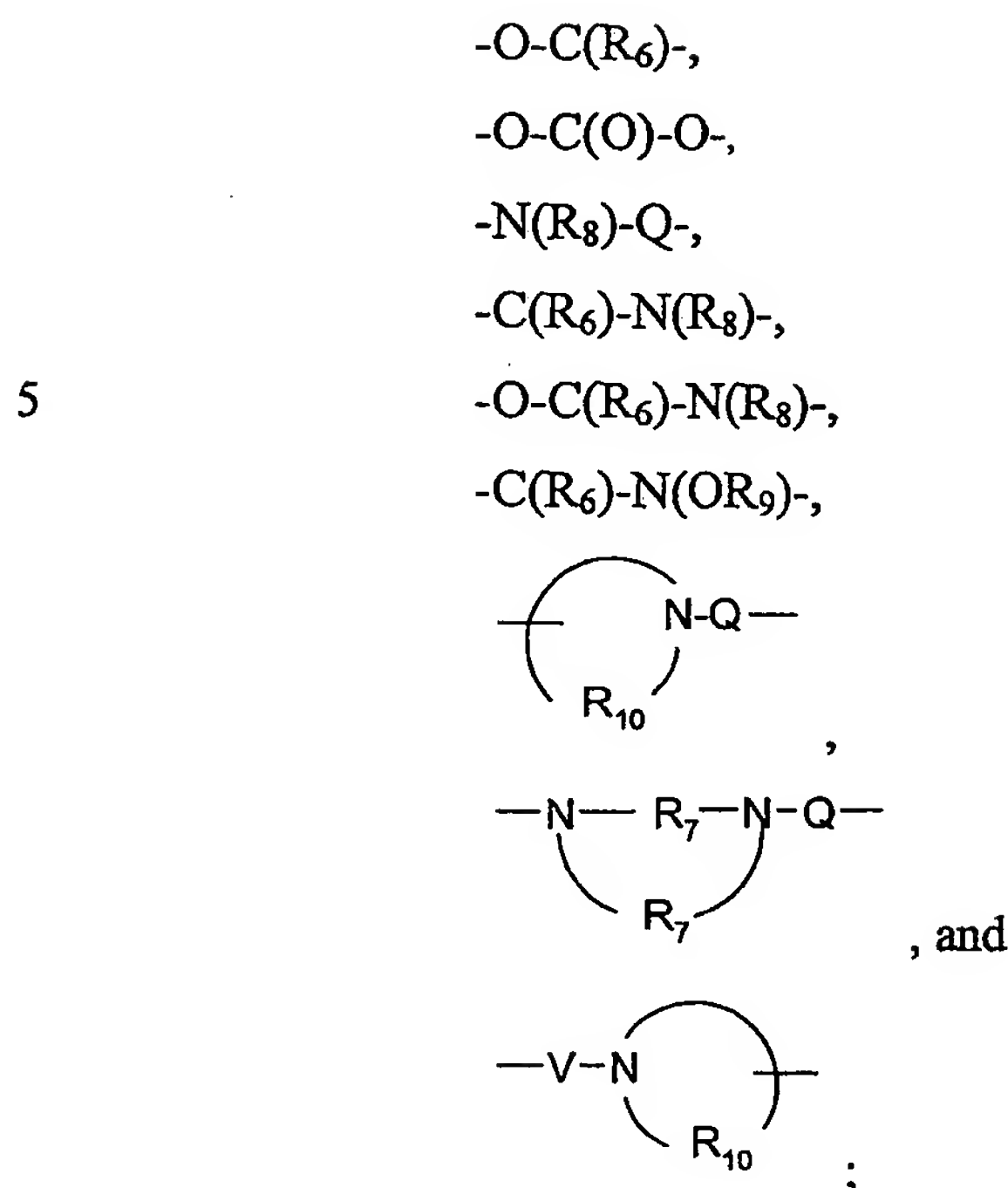
R₂ is selected from the group consisting of:

20 -R₄,
 -X-R₄,
 -X-Y-R₄, and
 -X-R₅;

X is selected from the group consisting of alkylene, alkenylene, alkynylene,
 25 arylene, heteroarylene, and heterocyclylene wherein the alkylene, alkenylene, and
 alkynylene groups are optionally interrupted or terminated by arylene, heteroarylene or
 heterocyclylene and optionally interrupted by one or more -O- groups;

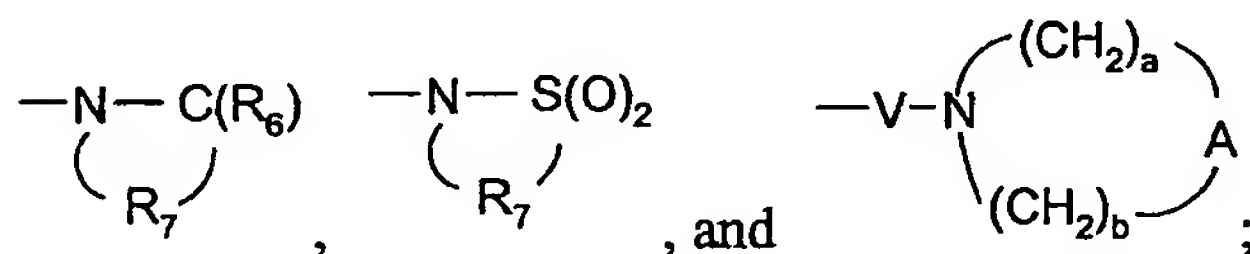
Y is selected from the group consisting of:

30 -S(O)₀₋₂-,
 -S(O)₂-N(R₈)-,
 -C(R₆)-,
 -C(R₆)-O-,



10 R_4 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, arylalkylenyl, aryloxyalkylenyl, alkylarylenyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkylenyl, heteroaryloxyalkylenyl, alkylheteroarylenyl, and heterocyclyl wherein the alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, arylalkylenyl, aryloxyalkylenyl, alkylarylenyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkylenyl, heteroaryloxyalkylenyl, alkylheteroarylenyl, and heterocyclyl groups
 15 are unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents independently selected from the group consisting of alkyl, alkoxy, hydroxyalkyl, haloalkyl, haloalkoxy, halogen, nitro, hydroxy, mercapto, cyano, aryl, aryloxy, arylalkyleneoxy, heteroaryl, heteroaryloxy, heteroarylalkyleneoxy, heterocyclyl, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, (dialkylamino)alkyleneoxy, and in the case of alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, and heterocyclyl,
 20 oxo;

R_5 is selected from the group consisting of:



R_6 is selected from the group consisting of =O and =S;

R_7 is C_{2-7} alkylene;

25 R_8 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, alkoxyalkylenyl, hydroxyalkylenyl, and arylalkylenyl;

R_9 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl;

R_{9a} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and C_{1-4} alkyl;

R_{10} is C_{3-8} alkylene;

A is selected from the group consisting of -O-, -C(O)-, -S(O)₀₋₂-, -CH₂-, and
5 -N(R_4)-;

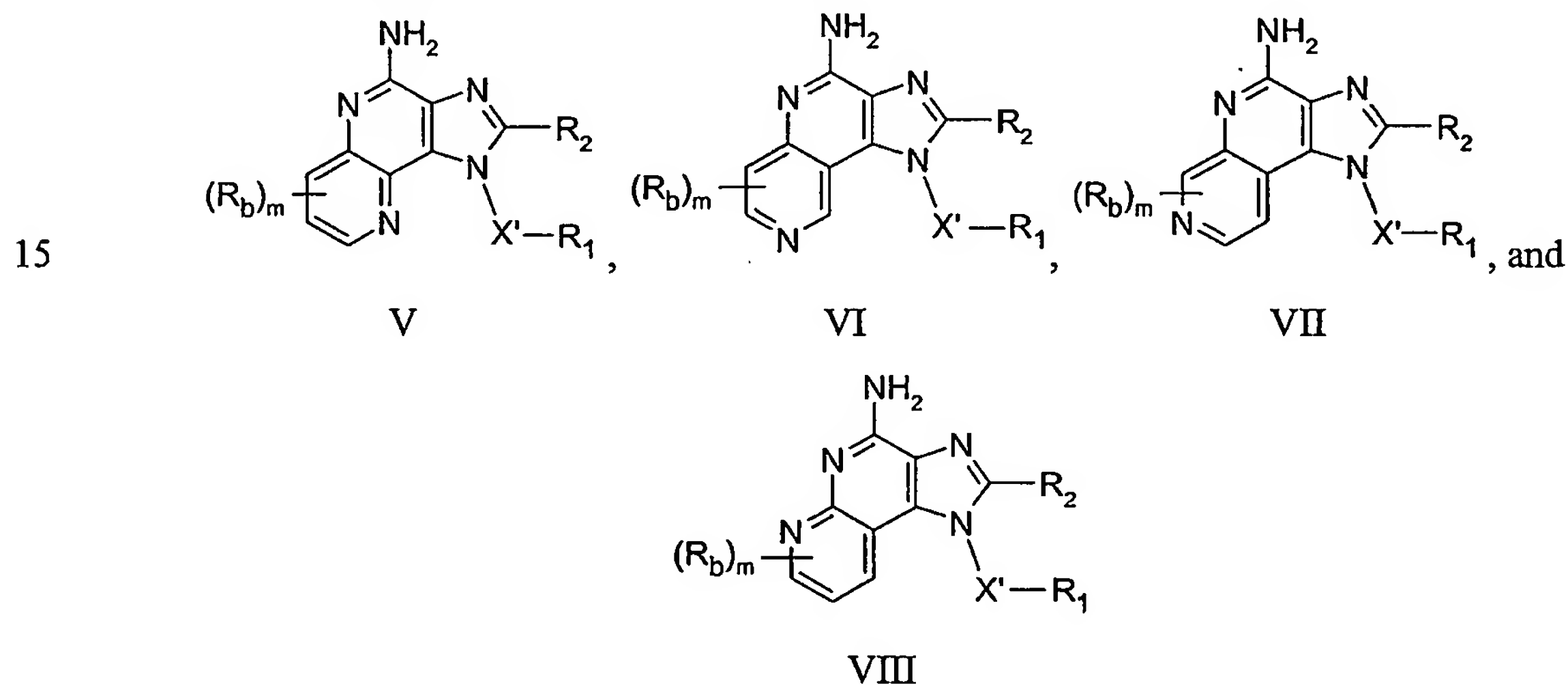
Q is selected from the group consisting of a bond, -C(R_6)-, -C(R_6)-C(R_6)-, -S(O)₂-,
and -S(O)₂-N(R_8)-;

V is selected from the group consisting of -C(R_6)-, -O-C(R_6)-, and -S(O)₂-; and

a and b are each independently an integer from 1 to 6 with the proviso that $a + b$ is
10 ≤ 7 ;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

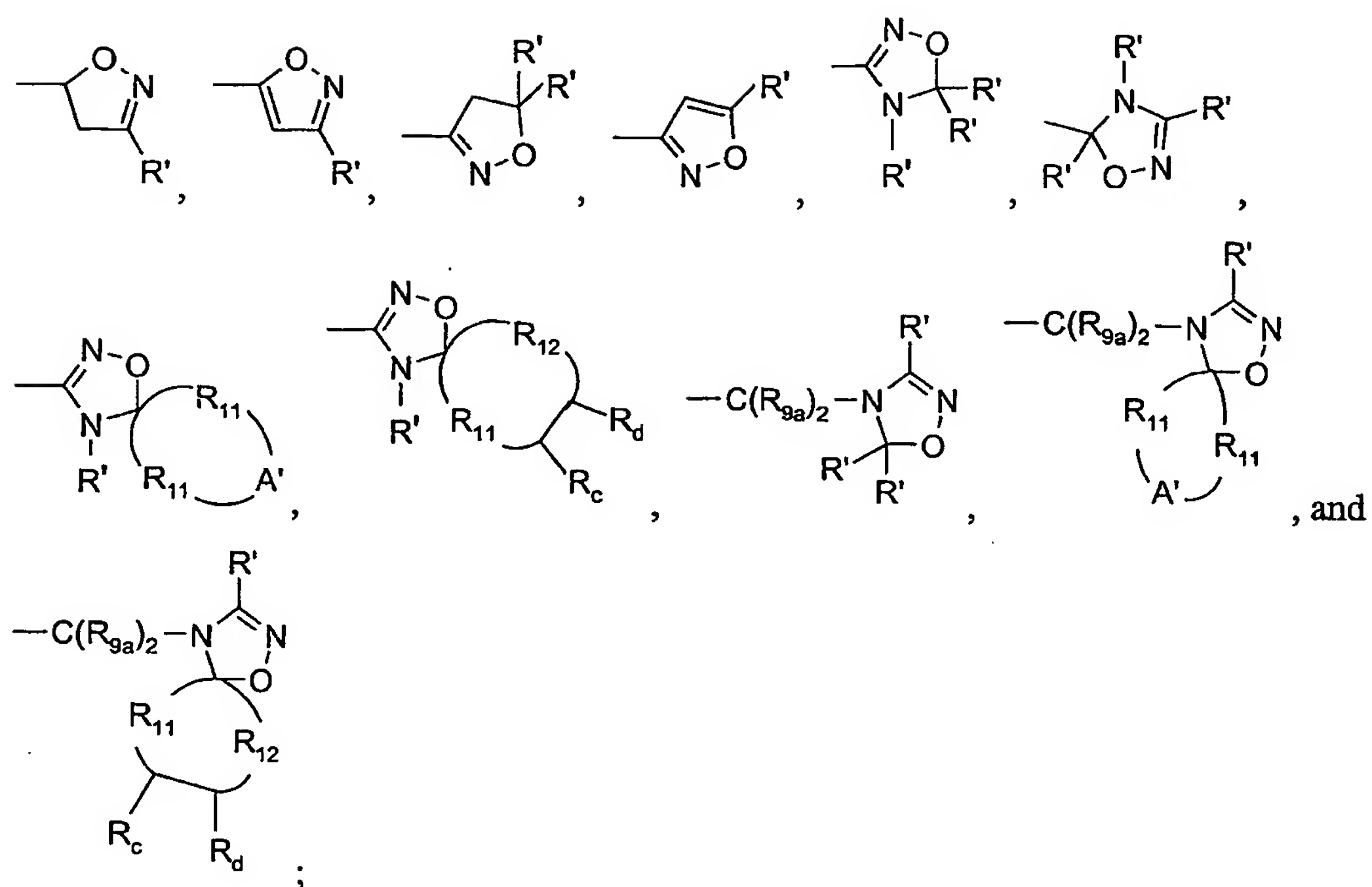
In one embodiment, the present invention provides a compound selected from the
group consisting Formulas V, VI, VII, and VIII:



wherein:

20 X' is selected from the group consisting of -CH(R_9)-, -CH(R_9)-alkylene-, and
-CH(R_9)-alkenylene-;

R_1 is selected from the group consisting of:



R' is selected from the group consisting of:

- 5 hydrogen,
alkyl,
alkenyl,
aryl,
arylalkylenyl,
10 heteroaryl,
heteroarylalkylenyl,
heterocyclyl,
heterocyclylalkylenyl, and
alkyl, alkenyl, aryl, arylalkylenyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkylenyl,
15 heterocyclyl, or heterocyclylalkylenyl, substituted by one or more substituents selected
from the group consisting of:
hydroxy,
alkyl,
haloalkyl,
20 hydroxyalkyl,
alkoxy,
dialkylamino,

5 -S(O)₀₋₂-alkyl,
 -S(O)₀₋₂-aryl,
 -NH-S(O)₂-alkyl,
 -NH-S(O)₂-aryl,
 haloalkoxy,
 halogen,
 nitrile,
 nitro,
 aryl,
 10 heteroaryl,
 heterocyclyl,
 aryloxy,
 arylalkyleneoxy,
 -C(O)-O-alkyl,
 15 -C(O)-N(R₈)₂,
 -N(R₈)-C(O)-alkyl,
 -O-(CO)-alkyl, and
 -C(O)-alkyl;

20 R_c and R_d are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen,
 halogen, hydroxy, alkyl, alkenyl, aryl, haloalkyl, alkoxy, alkylthio, and -N(R₉)₂; or R_c and
 R_d can join to form a fused aryl ring or fused 5-10 membered heteroaryl ring containing
 one to four heteroatoms;

25 R₁₁ is C₁₋₆ alkylene or C₂₋₆ alkenylene, wherein the alkylene or alkenylene is
 optionally interrupted by one heteroatom;

30 R₁₂ is selected from the group consisting of a bond, C₁₋₅ alkylene, and
 C₂₋₅ alkenylene, wherein the alkylene or alkenylene is optionally interrupted by one
 heteroatom;

 wherein the total number of atoms in the ring which includes R₁₁ or R₁₂ is 4 to 9;

35 A' is selected from the group consisting of -O-, -S(O)₀₋₂-, -N(-Q-R₄)-, and
 -C(R_{9a})₂-;

 R_b is selected from the group consisting of halogen, hydroxy, alkyl, haloalkyl,
 alkoxy, and -N(R₉)₂;

m is an integer from 0 to 3;

R₂ is selected from the group consisting of:

-R₄,

-X-R₄,

5 -X-Y-R₄, and

-X-R₅;

X is selected from the group consisting of alkylene, alkenylene, alkynylene, arylene, heteroarylene, and heterocyclylene wherein the alkylene, alkenylene, and alkynylene groups are optionally interrupted or terminated by arylene, heteroarylene or heterocyclylene and optionally interrupted by one or more -O- groups;

Y is selected from the group consisting of:

-S(O)₀₋₂-,

-S(O)₂-N(R₈)-,

-C(R₆)-,

15 -C(R₆)-O-,

-O-C(R₆)-,

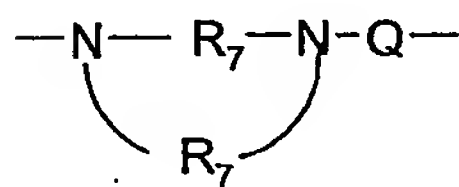
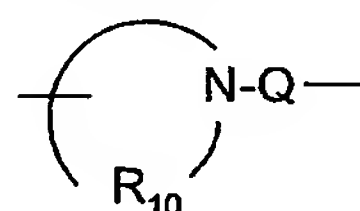
-O-C(O)-O-,

-N(R₈)-Q-,

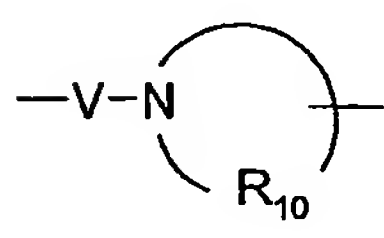
-C(R₆)-N(R₈)-,

20 -O-C(R₆)-N(R₈)-,

-C(R₆)-N(OR₉)-,



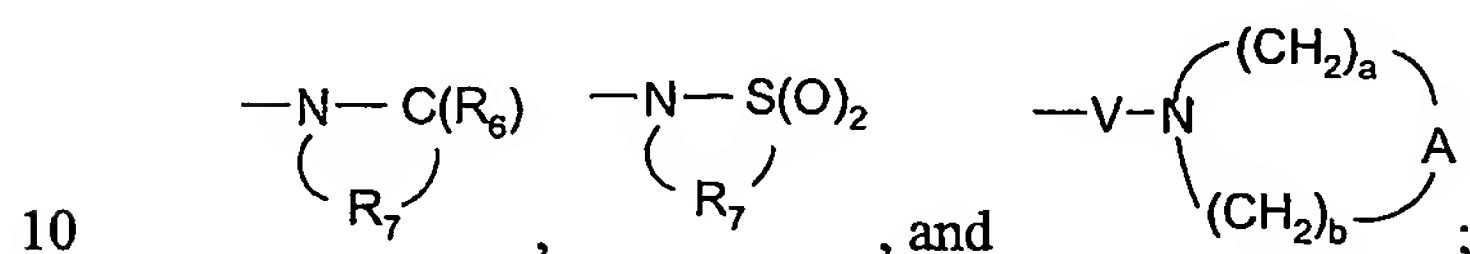
, and



25 R₄ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, arylalkylenyl, aryloxyalkylenyl, alkylarylenyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkylenyl, heteroaryloxyalkylenyl, alkylheteroarylenyl, and heterocyclyl wherein the alkyl, alkenyl,

alkynyl, aryl, arylalkylenyl, aryloxyalkylenyl, alkylarylenyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkylenyl, heteroaryloxyalkylenyl, alkylheteroarylenyl, and heterocyclyl groups are unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents independently selected from the group consisting of alkyl, alkoxy, hydroxyalkyl, haloalkyl, haloalkoxy, halogen, nitro, hydroxy, mercapto, cyano, aryl, aryloxy, arylalkyleneoxy, heteroaryl, heteroaryloxy, heteroarylalkyleneoxy, heterocyclyl, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, (dialkylamino)alkyleneoxy, and in the case of alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, and heterocyclyl, oxo;

R_5 is selected from the group consisting of:



R_6 is selected from the group consisting of =O and =S;

R_7 is C_{2-7} alkylene;

R_8 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, alkoxyalkylenyl, hydroxyalkylenyl, and arylalkylenyl;

15 R_9 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl;

R_{9a} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and C_{1-4} alkyl;

R_{10} is C_{3-8} alkylene;

A is selected from the group consisting of -O-, -C(O)-, -S(O)₀₋₂-, -CH₂-, and -N(R_4)-

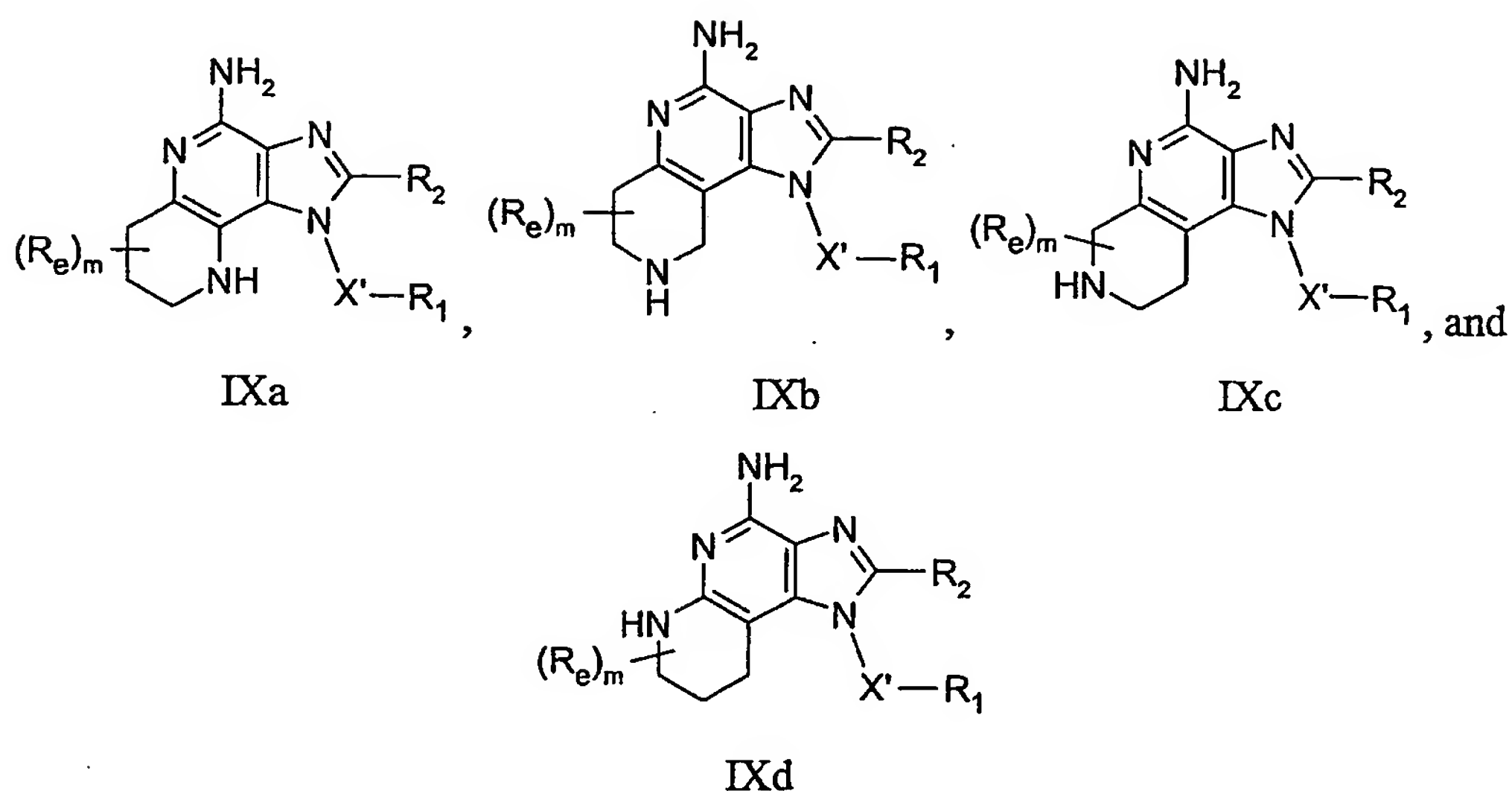
20 Q is selected from the group consisting of a bond, -C(R_6)-, -C(R_6)-C(R_6)-, -S(O)₂-, and -S(O)₂-N(R_8)-

V is selected from the group consisting of -C(R_6)-, -O-C(R_6)-, and -S(O)₂-; and

a and b are each independently an integer from 1 to 6 with the proviso that $a + b \leq 7$;

25 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

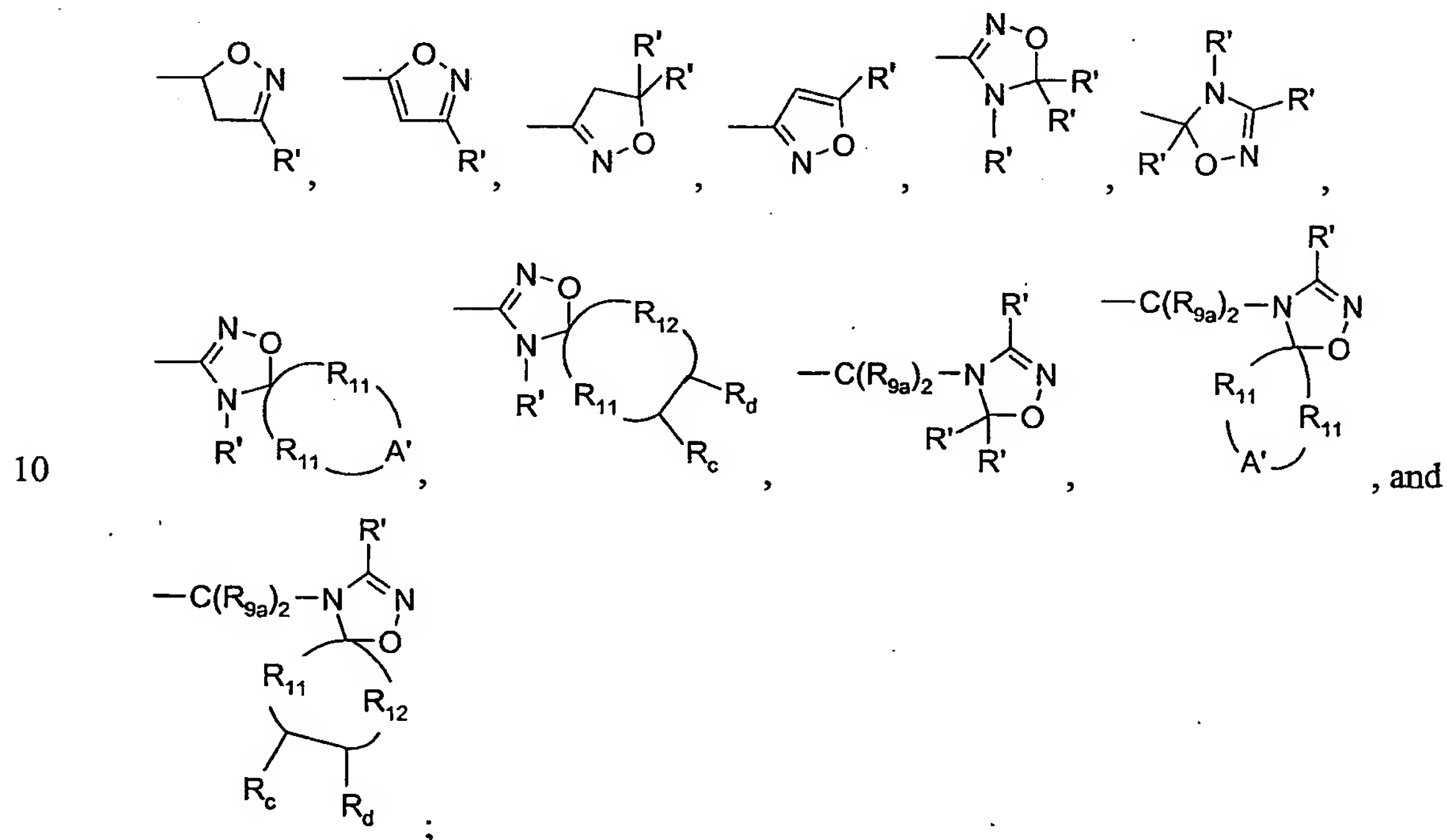
In one embodiment, the present invention provides a compound selected from the group consisting Formulas IXa, IXb, IXc, and IXd:



5 wherein:

X' is selected from the group consisting of -CH(R₉)-, -CH(R₉)-alkylene-, and -CH(R₉)-alkenylene-;

R₁ is selected from the group consisting of:



R' is selected from the group consisting of:

hydrogen,

alkyl,

alkenyl,

aryl,
arylalkylenyl,
heteroaryl,
heteroarylalkylenyl,
5 heterocyclyl,
heterocyclylalkylenyl, and
alkyl, alkenyl, aryl, arylalkylenyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkylenyl,
heterocyclyl, or heterocyclylalkylenyl, substituted by one or more substituents selected
from the group consisting of:
10 hydroxy,
alkyl,
haloalkyl,
hydroxyalkyl,
alkoxy,
15 dialkylamino,
-S(O)₀₋₂-alkyl,
-S(O)₀₋₂-aryl,
-NH-S(O)₂-alkyl,
-NH-S(O)₂-aryl,
20 haloalkoxy,
halogen,
nitrile,
nitro,
aryl,
25 heteroaryl,
heterocyclyl,
aryloxy,
arylalkyleneoxy,
-C(O)-O-alkyl,
30 -C(O)-N(R₈)₂,
-N(R₈)-C(O)-alkyl,
-O-(CO)-alkyl, and

-C(O)-alkyl;

R_c and R_d are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halogen, hydroxy, alkyl, alkenyl, aryl, haloalkyl, alkoxy, alkylthio, and $-N(R_9)_2$; or R_c and R_d can join to form a fused aryl ring or fused 5-10 membered heteroaryl ring containing one to four heteroatoms;

R_{11} is C_{1-6} alkylene or C_{2-6} alkenylene, wherein the alkylene or alkenylene is optionally interrupted by one heteroatom;

R_{12} is selected from the group consisting of a bond, C_{1-5} alkylene, and C_{2-5} alkenylene, wherein the alkylene or alkenylene is optionally interrupted by one heteroatom;

wherein the total number of atoms in the ring which includes R_{11} or R_{12} is 4 to 9;

A' is selected from the group consisting of $-O-$, $-S(O)_{0-2}-$, $-N(-Q-R_4)-$, and $-C(R_{9a})_2-$;

R_e is selected from the group consisting of halogen, hydroxy, alkyl, alkenyl, haloalkyl, alkoxy, alkylthio, and $-N(R_9)_2$;

m is an integer from 0 to 3;

R_2 is selected from the group consisting of:

$-R_4$,

$-X-R_4$,

$-X-Y-R_4$, and

$-X-R_5$;

X is selected from the group consisting of alkylene, alkenylene, alkynylene, arylene, heteroarylene, and heterocyclylene wherein the alkylene, alkenylene, and alkynylene groups are optionally interrupted or terminated by arylene, heteroarylene or heterocyclylene and optionally interrupted by one or more $-O-$ groups;

Y is selected from the group consisting of:

$-S(O)_{0-2}-$,

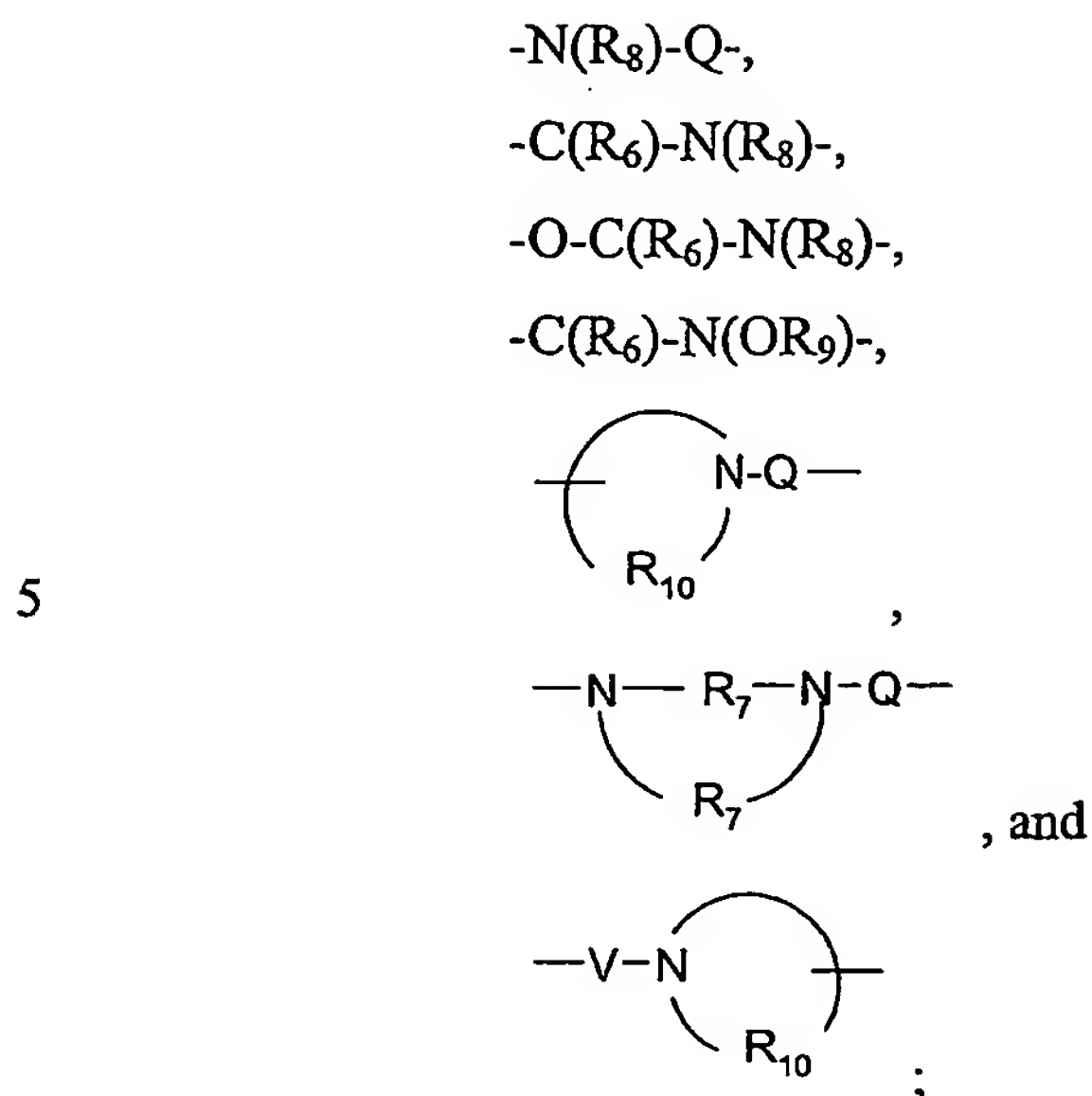
$-S(O)_2-N(R_8)-$,

$-C(R_6)-$,

$-C(R_6)-O-$,

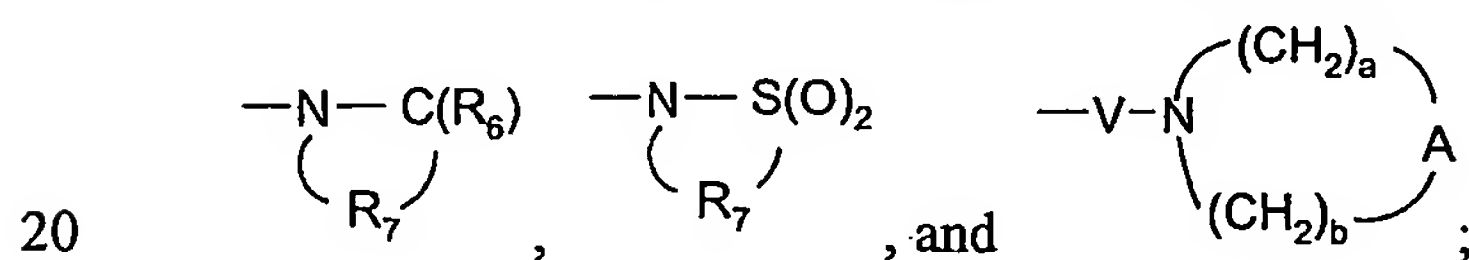
$-O-C(R_6)-$,

$-O-C(O)-O-$,



R₄ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, arylalkylenyl, aryloxyalkylenyl, alkylarylenyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkylenyl, heteroaryloxyalkylenyl, alkylheteroarylenyl, and heterocyclyl wherein the alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, arylalkylenyl, aryloxyalkylenyl, alkylarylenyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkylenyl, heteroaryloxyalkylenyl, alkylheteroarylenyl, and heterocyclyl groups are unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents independently selected from the group consisting of alkyl, alkoxy, hydroxyalkyl, haloalkyl, haloalkoxy, halogen, nitro, hydroxy, mercapto, cyano, aryl, aryloxy, arylalkyleneoxy, heteroaryl, heteroaryloxy, heteroarylalkyleneoxy, heterocyclyl, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, (dialkylamino)alkyleneoxy, and in the case of alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, and heterocyclyl, oxo;

R_5 is selected from the group consisting of:



R_6 is selected from the group consisting of =O and =S;

R₇ is C₂₋₇ alkylene;

R₈ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, alkoxyalkylenyl, hydroxyalkylenyl, and arylalkylenyl;

25 R₉ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl;

R_{9a} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and C₁₋₄ alkyl;

R_{10} is C_{3-8} alkylene;

A is selected from the group consisting of -O-, -C(O)-, -S(O)₀₋₂-, -CH₂-, and -N(R₄)-;

Q is selected from the group consisting of a bond, -C(R₆)-, -C(R₆)-C(R₆)-, -S(O)₂-,
5 and -S(O)₂-N(R₈)-;

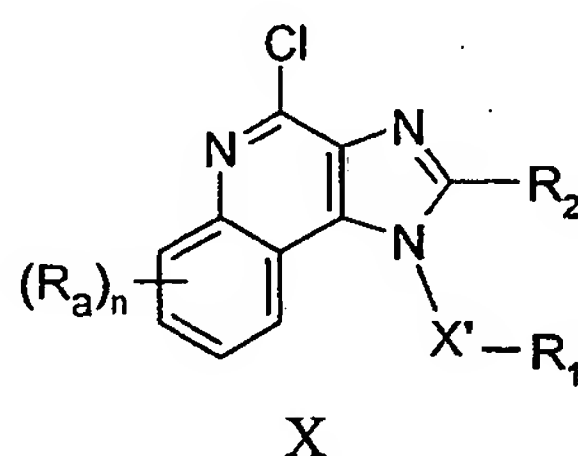
V is selected from the group consisting of -C(R₆)-, -O-C(R₆)-, and -S(O)₂-; and

a and b are each independently an integer from 1 to 6 with the proviso that $a + b \leq 7$;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

10

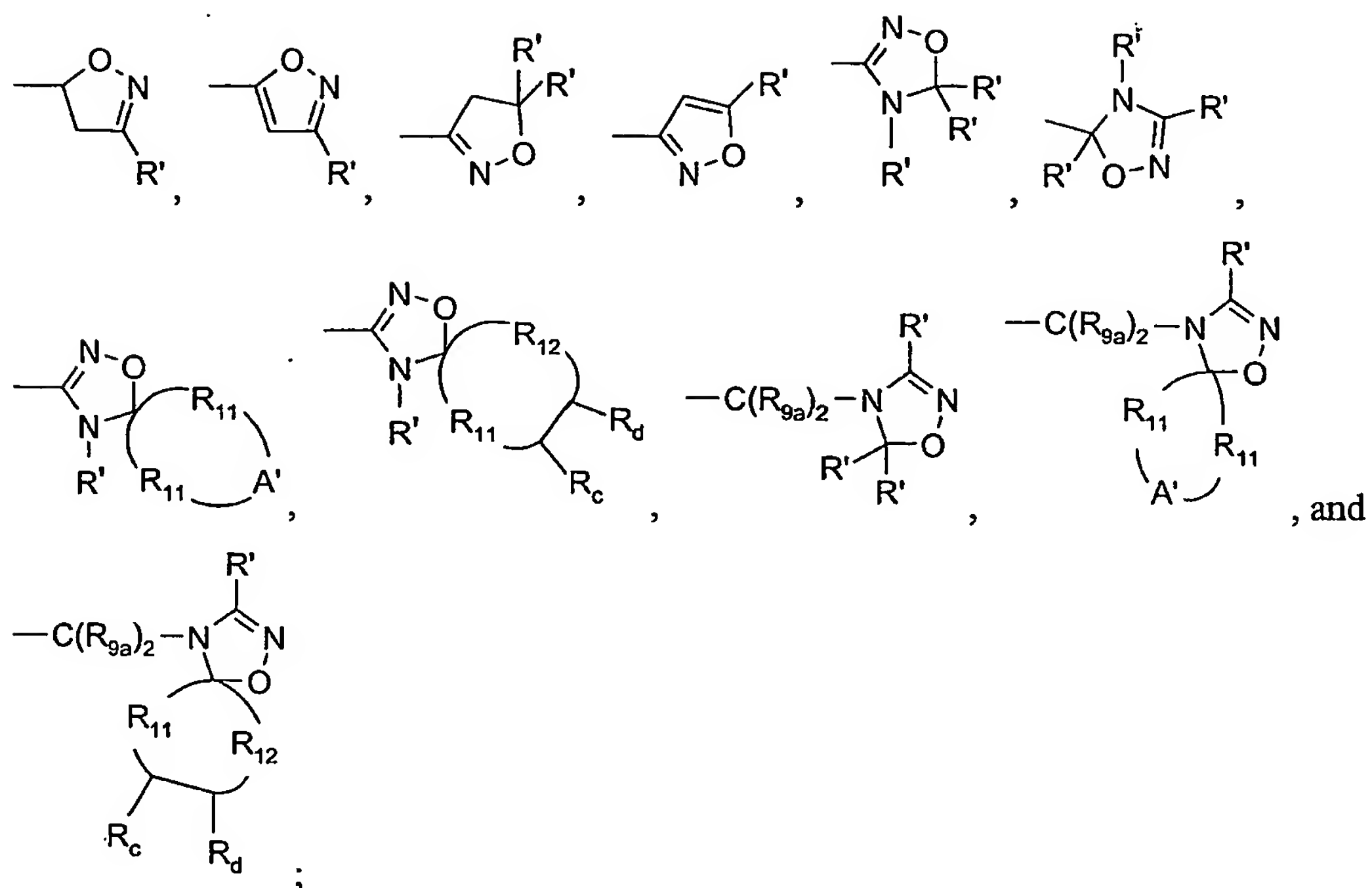
In one embodiment, the present invention provides an intermediate compound of Formula X:



15 wherein:

X' is selected from the group consisting of -CH(R₉)-, -CH(R₉)-alkylene-, and -CH(R₉)-alkenylene-;

R₁ is selected from the group consisting of:



R' is selected from the group consisting of:

- 5 hydrogen,
- alkyl,
- alkenyl,
- aryl,
- arylalkylenyl,
- 10 heteroaryl,
- heteroarylalkylenyl,
- heterocyclyl,
- heterocyclylalkylenyl, and
- alkyl, alkenyl, aryl, arylalkylenyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkylenyl,
- 15 heterocyclyl, or heterocyclylalkylenyl, substituted by one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of:
- hydroxy,
- alkyl,
- haloalkyl,
- 20 hydroxyalkyl,
- alkoxy,
- dialkylamino,

5 -S(O)₀₋₂-alkyl,
 -S(O)₀₋₂-aryl,
 -NH-S(O)₂-alkyl,
 -NH-S(O)₂-aryl,
 haloalkoxy,
 halogen,
 nitrile,
 nitro,
 aryl,
 10 heteroaryl,
 heterocyclyl,
 aryloxy,
 arylalkyleneoxy,
 -C(O)-O-alkyl,
 15 -C(O)-N(R₈)₂,
 -N(R₈)-C(O)-alkyl,
 -O-(CO)-alkyl, and
 -C(O)-alkyl;

20 R_c and R_d are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen,
 halogen, hydroxy, alkyl, alkenyl, aryl, haloalkyl, alkoxy, alkylthio, and -N(R₉)₂; or R_c and
 R_d can join to form a fused aryl ring or fused 5-10 membered heteroaryl ring containing
 one to four heteroatoms;

25 R₁₁ is C₁₋₆ alkylene or C₂₋₆ alkenylene, wherein the alkylene or alkenylene is
 optionally interrupted by one heteroatom;

30 R₁₂ is selected from the group consisting of a bond, C₁₋₅ alkylene, and
 C₂₋₅ alkenylene, wherein the alkylene or alkenylene is optionally interrupted by one
 heteroatom;

 wherein the total number of atoms in the ring which includes R₁₁ or R₁₂ is 4 to 9;

35 A' is selected from the group consisting of -O-, -S(O)₀₋₂-, -N(-Q-R₄)-, and
 -C(R_{9a})₂-;

 R_a is selected from the group consisting of halogen, alkyl, haloalkyl, alkoxy, and
 -N(R₉)₂;

n is an integer from 0 to 4;

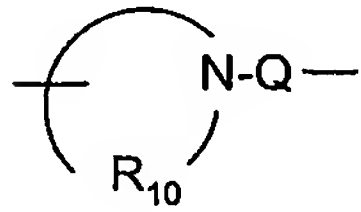
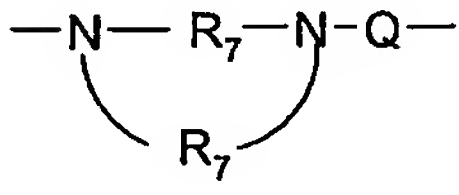
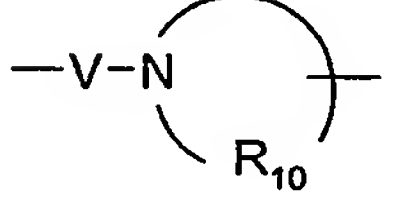
R₂ is selected from the group consisting of:

- 5 -R₄,
 -X-R₄,
 -X-Y-R₄, and
 -X-R₅;

10 X is selected from the group consisting of alkylene, alkenylene, alkynylene, arylene, heteroarylene, and heterocyclylene wherein the alkylene, alkenylene, and alkynylene groups are optionally interrupted or terminated by arylene, heteroarylene or heterocyclylene and optionally interrupted by one or more -O- groups;

 Y is selected from the group consisting of:

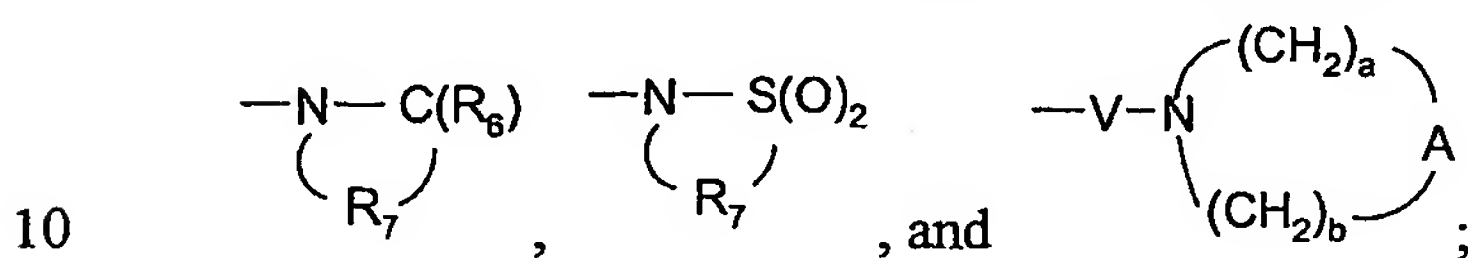
- 15 -S(O)₀₋₂-,
 -S(O)₂-N(R₈)-,
 -C(R₆)-,
 -C(R₆)-O-,
 -O-C(R₆)-,
 -O-C(O)-O-,
 -N(R₈)-Q-,
 -C(R₆)-N(R₈)-,

20 -O-C(R₆)-N(R₈)-,
 -C(R₆)-N(OR₉)-,
 ,
 , and
 ;

25 R₄ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, arylalkylenyl, aryloxyalkylenyl, alkylarylenyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkylenyl, heteroaryloxyalkylenyl, alkylheteroarylenyl, and heterocyclyl wherein the alkyl, alkenyl,

alkynyl, aryl, arylalkylenyl, aryloxyalkylenyl, alkylarylenyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkylenyl, heteroaryloxyalkylenyl, alkylheteroarylenyl, and heterocyclyl groups are unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents independently selected from the group consisting of alkyl, alkoxy, hydroxyalkyl, haloalkyl, haloalkoxy, halogen, nitro, hydroxy, mercapto, cyano, aryl, aryloxy, arylalkyleneoxy, heteroaryl, heteroaryloxy, heteroarylalkyleneoxy, heterocyclyl, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, (dialkylamino)alkyleneoxy, and in the case of alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, and heterocyclyl, oxo;

R_5 is selected from the group consisting of:



R₆ is selected from the group consisting of =O and =S;

R₇ is C₂₋₇ alkylene;

R₈ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, alkoxyalkylenyl, hydroxyalkylenyl, and arylalkylenyl;

15 R₉ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl;

R_{9a} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and C₁₋₄ alkyl;

R₁₀ is C₃₋₈ alkylene;

A is selected from the group consisting of -O-, -C(O)-, -S(O)₀₋₂-, -CH₂-, and -N(R₄)-;

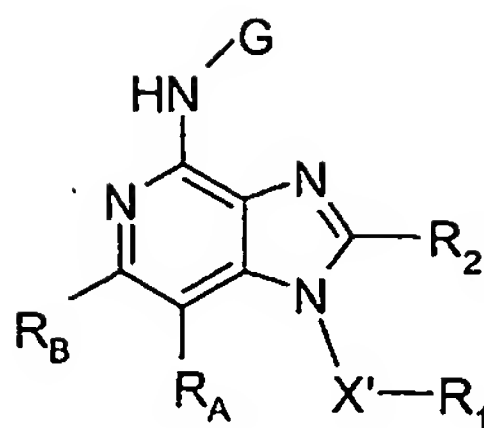
20 Q is selected from the group consisting of a bond, -C(R₆)-, -C(R₆)-C(R₆)-, -S(O)₂-,
and -S(O)₂-N(R₈)-;

V is selected from the group consisting of -C(R₆)-, -O-C(R₆)-, and -S(O)₂-; and

a and b are each independently an integer from 1 to 6 with the proviso that $a + b \leq 7$;

25 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

For certain embodiments, there is provided a compound (which is a prodrug) of the Formula I-1:



I-1

wherein:

G is selected from the group consisting of:

- 5 -C(O)-R",
 α -aminoacyl,
 α -aminoacyl- α -aminoacyl,
 -C(O)-O-R",
 -C(O)-N(R''')R",
 10 -C(=NY')-R",
 -CH(OH)-C(O)-OY',
 -CH(OC₁₋₄ alkyl)Y₀,
 -CH₂Y₁, and
 -CH(CH₃)Y₁;

- 15 R" and R''' are independently selected from the group consisting of C₁₋₁₀ alkyl, C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, and benzyl, each of which may be unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, hydroxy, nitro, cyano, carboxy, C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₁₋₄ alkoxy, aryl, heteroaryl, arylC₁₋₄ alkylenyl, heteroarylC₁₋₄ alkylenyl, haloC₁₋₄ alkylenyl, haloC₁₋₄ alkoxy, -O-C(O)-CH₃, -C(O)-O-CH₃,
 20 -C(O)-NH₂, -O-CH₂-C(O)-NH₂, -NH₂, and -S(O)₂-NH₂, with the proviso that R''' can also be hydrogen;

α -aminoacyl is an acyl group derived from an amino acid selected from the group consisting of racemic, D-, and L-amino acids;

Y' is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, C₁₋₆ alkyl, and benzyl;

- 25 Y₀ is selected from the group consisting of C₁₋₆ alkyl, carboxyC₁₋₆ alkylenyl, aminoC₁₋₄ alkylenyl, mono-N-C₁₋₆ alkylaminoC₁₋₄ alkylenyl, and di-N,N-C₁₋₆ alkylaminoC₁₋₄ alkylenyl;

Y₁ is selected from the group consisting of mono-N-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, di-N,N-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, morpholin-4-yl, piperidin-1-yl, pyrrolidin-1-yl, and

4-C₁₋₄ alkylpiperazin-1-yl; and

R_A, R_B, X', R₁, and R₂ are as defined in Formula I above;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

As used herein, the terms "alkyl," "alkenyl," "alkynyl" and the prefix "alk-" are inclusive of both straight chain and branched chain groups and of cyclic groups, e.g., cycloalkyl and cycloalkenyl. Unless otherwise specified, these groups contain from 1 to 20 carbon atoms, with alkenyl groups containing from 2 to 20 carbon atoms, and alkynyl groups containing from 2 to 20 carbon atoms. In some embodiments, these groups have a total of up to 10 carbon atoms, up to 8 carbon atoms, up to 6 carbon atoms, or up to 4 carbon atoms. Cyclic groups can be monocyclic or polycyclic and preferably have from 3 to 10 ring carbon atoms. Exemplary cyclic groups include cyclopropyl, cyclopropylmethyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, adamantyl, and substituted and unsubstituted bornyl, norbornyl, and norbornenyl.

Unless otherwise specified, "alkylene," "alkenylene," and "alkynylene" are the divalent forms of the "alkyl," "alkenyl," and "alkynyl" groups defined above. The terms, "alkylenyl," "alkenylenyl," and "alkynylenyl" are used when "alkylene," "alkenylene," and "alkynylene," respectively, are substituted. For example, an arylalkylenyl group comprises an alkylene moiety to which an aryl group is attached. In another example, hydroxyalkylenyl, haloalkylenyl, and haloalkyleneoxy have the same meaning as hydroxyalkyl, haloalkyl, and haloalkoxy, respectively.

The term "haloalkyl" is inclusive of groups that are substituted by one or more halogen atoms, including perfluorinated groups. This is also true of other groups that include the prefix "halo-." Examples of suitable haloalkyl groups are chloromethyl, trifluoromethyl, and the like.

The term "aryl" as used herein includes carbocyclic aromatic rings or ring systems. Examples of aryl groups include phenyl, naphthyl, biphenyl, fluorenyl and indenyl.

Unless otherwise indicated, the term "heteroatom" refers to the atoms O, S, or N.

The term "heteroaryl" includes aromatic rings or ring systems that contain at least one ring heteroatom (e.g., O, S, N). In some embodiments, the term "heteroaryl" includes a ring or ring system that contains 2-12 carbon atoms, 1-3 rings, 1-4 heteroatoms, and O, S, and N as the heteroatoms. Exemplary heteroaryl groups include furyl, thienyl, pyridyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, indolyl, isoindolyl, triazolyl, pyrrolyl, tetrazolyl, imidazolyl,

pyrazolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, benzofuranyl, benzothiophenyl, carbazolyl, benzoxazolyl, pyrimidinyl, benzimidazolyl, quinoxaliny, benzothiazolyl, naphthyridinyl, isoxazolyl, isothiazolyl, purinyl, quinazolinyl, pyrazinyl, 1-oxidopyridyl, pyridazinyl, triazinyl, tetrazinyl, oxadiazolyl, thiadiazolyl, and so on.

5 The term "heterocyclyl" includes non-aromatic rings or ring systems that contain at least one ring heteroatom (e.g., O, S, N) and includes all of the fully saturated and partially unsaturated derivatives of the above mentioned heteroaryl groups. In some embodiments, the term "heterocyclyl" includes a ring or ring system that contains 2-12 carbon atoms, 1-3 rings, 1-4 heteroatoms, and O, S, and N as the heteroatoms. Exemplary heterocyclyl
10 groups include pyrrolidinyl, tetrahydrofuranyl, morpholinyl, thiomorpholinyl, 1,1-dioxothiomorpholinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, thiazolidinyl, imidazolidinyl, isothiazolidinyl, tetrahydropyranyl, quinuclidinyl, homopiperidinyl (azepanyl), 1,4-oxazepanyl, homopiperazinyl (diazepanyl), 1,3-dioxolanyl, aziridinyl, azetidyl, dihydroisoquinolin-(1*H*)-yl, octahydroisoquinolin-(1*H*)-yl, dihydroquinolin-(2*H*)-yl,
15 octahydroquinolin-(2*H*)-yl, dihydro-1*H*-imidazolyl, 3-azabicyclo[3.2.2]non-3-yl, and the like.

 The term "heterocyclyl" includes bicyclic and tricyclic heterocyclic ring systems. Such ring systems include fused and/or bridged rings and spiro rings. Fused rings can include, in addition to a saturated or partially saturated ring, an aromatic ring, for example,
20 a benzene ring. Spiro rings include two rings joined by one spiro atom and three rings joined by two spiro atoms.

 When "heterocyclyl" contains a nitrogen atom, the point of attachment of the heterocyclyl group may be the nitrogen atom.

 The terms "arylene," "heteroarylene," and "heterocyclylene" are the divalent forms
25 of the "aryl," "heteroaryl," and "heterocyclyl" groups defined above. The terms, "arylenyl," "heteroarylenyl," and "heterocyclenyl" are used when "arylene," "heteroarylene," and "heterocyclylene," respectively, are substituted. For example, an alkylarylenyl group comprises an arylene moiety to which an alkyl group is attached.

 The term "fused aryl ring" includes fused carbocyclic aromatic rings or ring
30 systems. Examples of fused aryl rings include benzo, naphtho, fluoreno, and indeno.

The term "fused heteroaryl ring" includes the fused forms of 5 or 6 membered aromatic rings that contain one heteroatom selected from S and N. Examples of fused heteroaryl rings include pyrido and thieno.

5 The term "fused 5 to 7 membered saturated ring" includes rings which are fully saturated except for the bond where the ring is fused, for example a cyclohexene ring and a tetrahydropyridine ring (when one nitrogen atom is present).

10 When a group (or substituent or variable) is present more than once in any Formula described herein, each group (or substituent or variable) is independently selected, whether explicitly stated or not. For example, for the formula $-C(O)-N(R_8)_2-$ each R_8 group is independently selected. In another example, when two R' groups are present, each R' group is independently selected. In a further example, when more than one R' group is present and each R' group contains one or more R_8 groups, then each R' group is independently selected, and each R_8 group is independently selected.

15 The invention is inclusive of the compounds described herein in any of their pharmaceutically acceptable forms, including isomers (e.g., diastereomers and enantiomers), salts, solvates, polymorphs, prodrugs, and the like. In particular, if a compound is optically active, the invention specifically includes each of the compound's enantiomers as well as racemic mixtures of the enantiomers. It should be understood that the term "compound" includes any or all of such forms, whether explicitly stated or not
20 (although at times, "salts" are explicitly stated).

The term "prodrug" means a compound that can be transformed in vivo to yield an immune response modifying compound in any of the salt, solvated, polymorphic, or isomeric forms described above. The prodrug, itself, may be an immune response modifying compound in any of the salt, solvated, polymorphic, or isomeric forms
25 described above. The transformation may occur by various mechanisms, such as through a chemical (e.g., solvolysis or hydrolysis, for example, in the blood) or enzymatic biotransformation. A discussion of the use of prodrugs is provided by T. Higuchi and W. Stella, "Pro-drugs as Novel Delivery Systems," Vol. 14 of the A. C. S. Symposium Series, and in Bioreversible Carriers in Drug Design, ed. Edward B. Roche, American
30 Pharmaceutical Association and Pergamon Press, 1987.

For any of the compounds presented herein, each one of the following variables (e.g., X' , R_1 , R' , R_2 , X , Y , R_a , n , and so on) in any of its embodiments can be combined

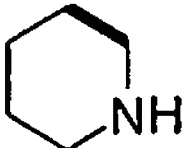
with any one or more of the other variables in any of their embodiments and associated with any one of the formulas described herein, as would be understood by one of skill in the art. Each of the resulting combinations of variables is an embodiment of the present invention.

5 For certain embodiments of Formula I or I-1, R_A and R_B taken together form a fused aryl ring that is unsubstituted or substituted by one or more R_a groups. For certain of these embodiments, the fused aryl ring is unsubstituted.

For certain embodiments of Formula I or I-1, R_A and R_B taken together form a fused 5 to 7 membered saturated ring that is unsubstituted or substituted by one or more R_e groups. In certain of these embodiments the ring is unsubstituted.

For certain embodiments of Formula I or I-1, R_A and R_B taken together form a fused heteroaryl ring that is unsubstituted or substituted by one or more R_b groups. For certain of these embodiments the fused heteroaryl ring is unsubstituted. In certain embodiments, the ring is pyrido.

15 For certain embodiments of Formula I or I-1, R_A and R_B taken together form a fused 5 to 7 membered saturated ring containing one heteroatom selected from the group consisting of N and S, wherein the ring is unsubstituted or substituted by one or more R_e groups. For certain of these embodiments, the ring is unsubstituted. In certain embodiments, the ring is tetrahydropyrido. In certain of these embodiments, the ring is

20  wherein the highlighted bond indicates the position where the ring is fused.

For certain embodiments of Formula II, R_{A1} and R_{B1} are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl.

For certain embodiments of Formula II, R_{A1} and R_{B1} are each methyl.

For certain embodiments, including any one of the above embodiments of Formula 25 III, Formula IV, or Formula X, n is 0.

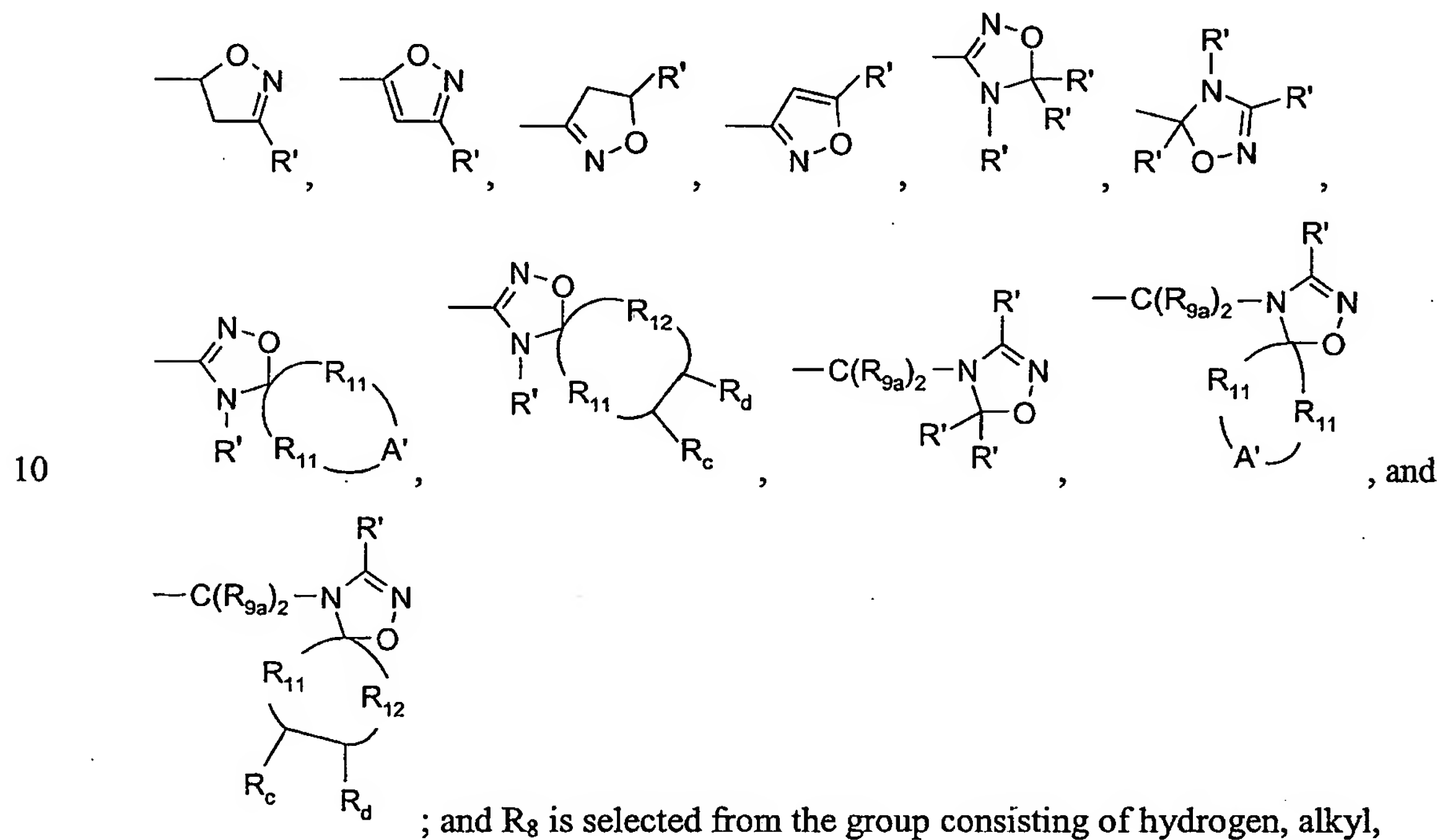
For certain embodiments, the compound selected from the group consisting of Formulas V, VI, VII, and VIII, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof is the compound of Formula V or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

For certain embodiments, the compound selected from the group consisting of 30 Formulas IXa, IXb, IXc, and IXd, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof is the compound of Formula IXa or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

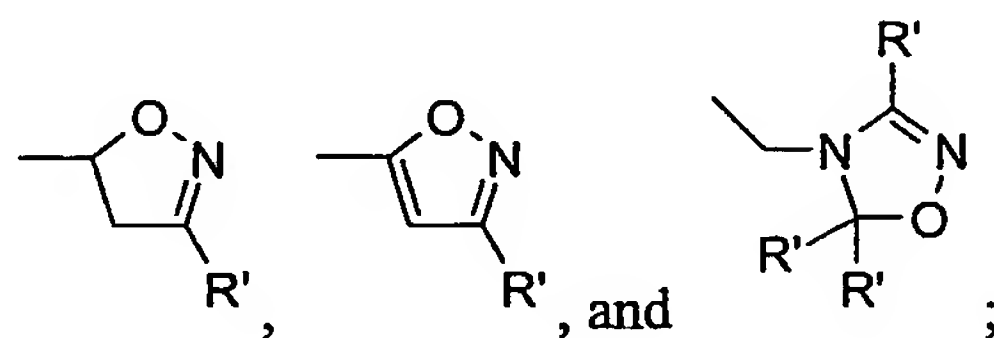
For certain embodiments, including any one of the above embodiments of Formulas V, VI, VII, VIII, IXa, IXb, IXc, and/or IXd, m is 0.

For certain embodiments, including any one of the above embodiments of Formulas I, I-1, II, III, IV, V, VI, VII, VIII, X, or IXa-d, X' is C₁₋₄ alkylene. For certain of these embodiments, X' is -CH₂-. For certain of these embodiments, X' is -CH₂CH₂-.

For certain embodiments, including any one of the above embodiments of Formulas I, I-1, II, III, IV, V, VI, VII, VIII, X, or IXa-d, R₁ is selected from the group consisting of:



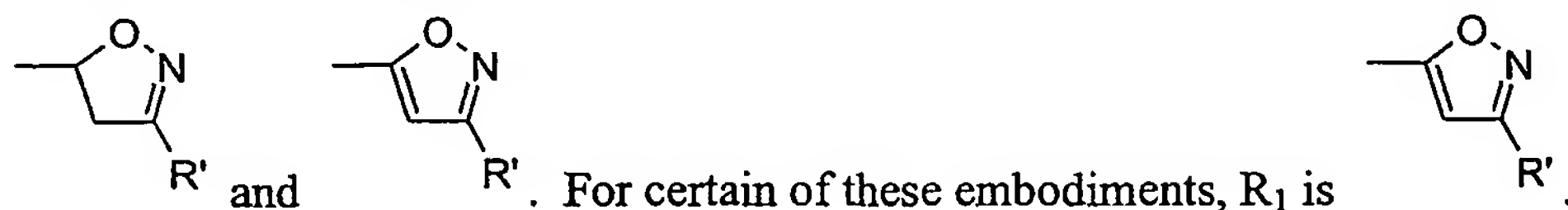
For certain embodiments, including any one of the above embodiments of Formulas I, I-1, II, III, IV, V, VI, VII, VIII, X, or IXa-d which does not exclude this definition, R₁ is selected from the group consisting of:



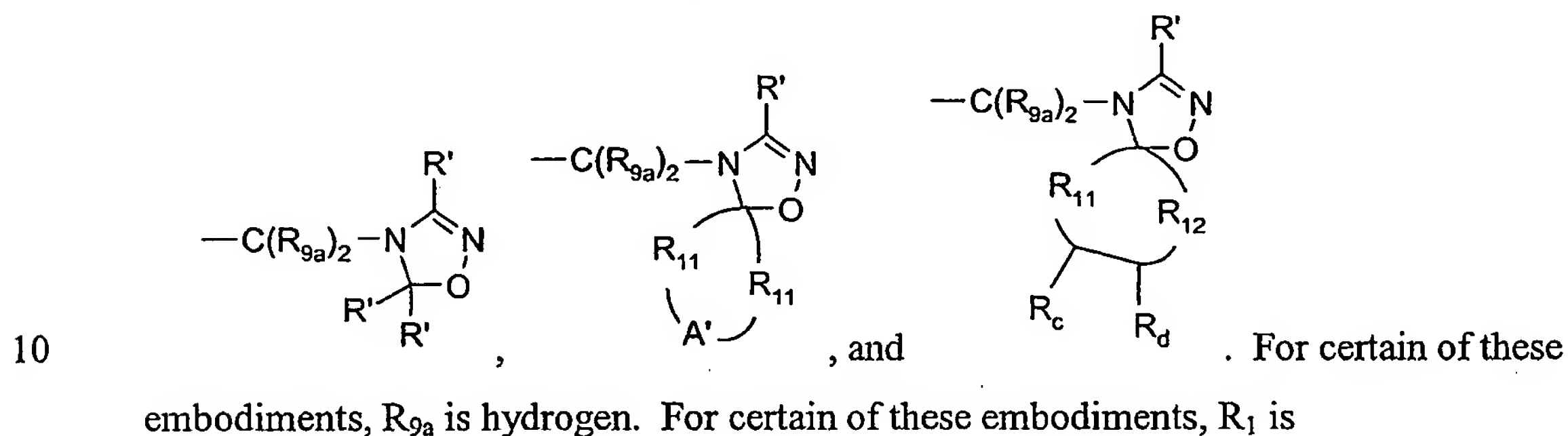
each R_a is independently selected from the group consisting of fluorine, alkyl, haloalkyl, alkoxy, and -N(R₉)₂; and

each R_8 is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, alkoxyalkylenyl, and arylalkylenyl.

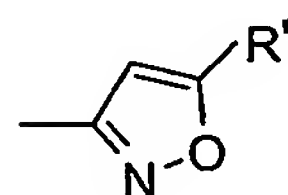
For certain embodiments, including any one of the above embodiments of Formulas I, I-1, II, III, IV, V, VI, VII, VIII, X, or IXa-d which does not exclude this
5 definition, R_1 is selected from the group consisting of



For certain embodiments, including any one of the above embodiments of Formulas I, I-1, II, III, IV, V, VI, VII, VIII, X, or IXa-d which does not exclude this
10 definition, R_1 is selected from the group consisting of



For certain embodiments, including any one of the above embodiments of Formulas I, I-1, II, III, IV, V, VI, VII, VIII, X, or IXa-d which does not exclude this
15 definition, R_1 is



For certain embodiments, including any one of the above embodiments of Formulas I, I-1, II, III, IV, V, VI, VII, VIII, X, or IXa-d, R' is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, aryl, and heteroaryl, each of which is unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of alkyl, alkoxy, halogen, and haloalkyl. For certain of these embodiments, R' is selected from the group consisting of methyl; butyl; phenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of fluorine and trifluoromethyl; and 3-pyridyl. For certain of these embodiments, R' is selected from the group consisting of methyl; phenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of fluorine and trifluoromethyl; and 3-pyridyl.

For certain embodiments, including any one of the above embodiments of Formulas I, I-1, II, III, IV, V, VI, VII, VIII, X, or IXa-d, R₂ is hydrogen; alkoxyalkylenyl; hydroxyalkylenyl; haloalkylenyl; heterocyclalkylenyl that is unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of methyl, hydroxy, hydroxymethyl, and dimethylamino; -R₄; -X-R₄; or -X-Y-R₄; wherein

X is C₁₋₂ alkylene optionally terminated by heterocyclylene;

Y is -S(O)₀₋₂-, -S(O)₂-N(R₈)-, -C(R₆)-, -C(R₆)-O-, -O-C(R₆)-, -O-C(O)-O-, -N(R₈)-Q-, -C(R₆)-N(R₈)-, -O-C(R₆)-N(R₈)-, or -C(R₆)-N(OR₉)-; wherein

R₈ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, arylalkylenyl, and hydroxyalkylenyl; and

R₄ is alkyl that is unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of hydroxy and cyano, aryl; or heterocyclyl that is unsubstituted or substituted by alkyl with the proviso that when Y is -C(R₆)-O- or -C(R₆)-N(R₈)-, then R₄ may also be hydrogen.

For certain embodiments, including any one of the above embodiments of Formulas I, I-1, II, III, IV, V, VI, VII, VIII, X, or IXa-d, R₂ is hydrogen, alkoxyalkylenyl, hydroxyalkylenyl, -R₄, -X-R₄, or -X-Y-R₄; wherein

X is C₁₋₂ alkylene;

Y is -S(O)₀₋₂-, -S(O)₂-N(R₈)-, -C(R₆)-, -C(R₆)-O-, -O-C(R₆)-, -O-C(O)-O-, -N(R₈)-Q-, -C(R₆)-N(R₈)-, -O-C(R₆)-N(R₈)-, or -C(R₆)-N(OR₉)-; and

R₄ is alkyl.

For certain of these embodiments, R_8 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and arylalkylenyl.

For certain embodiments, including any one of the above embodiments of Formulas I, I-1, II, III, IV, V, VI, VII, VIII, X, or IXa-d, R_2 is hydrogen, C_{1-4} alkyl, C_{1-4} alkyl-O- C_{1-4} alkylenyl, or hydroxy C_{1-4} alkylenyl. For certain of these embodiments, R_2 is methyl, ethyl, *n*-propyl, *n*-butyl, ethoxymethyl, 2-methoxyethyl, hydroxymethyl, or 2-hydroxyethyl.

For certain embodiments, including any one of the above embodiments of Formulas I, I-1, II, III, IV, V, VI, VII, VIII, X, or IXa-d which does not exclude this definition, R_2 is methyl, ethyl, *n*-propyl, *n*-butyl, ethoxymethyl, 2-methoxyethyl, hydroxymethyl, 2-hydroxyethyl, or fluoromethyl.

For certain embodiments, the present invention provides a pharmaceutical composition comprising a therapeutically effective amount of a compound or salt of any one of the above embodiments of Formulas I, I-1, II, III, IV, V, VI, VII, VIII, and IXa-d and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

For certain embodiments, the present invention provides a method of inducing cytokine biosynthesis in an animal comprising administering an effective amount of a compound or salt of any one of the above embodiments of Formulas I, I-1, II, III, IV, V, VI, VII, VIII, and IXa-d or a pharmaceutical composition of any one of the above embodiments of Formulas I, I-1, II, III, IV, V, VI, VII, VIII, and IXa-d to the animal.

For certain embodiments, the present invention provides a method of treating a viral disease in an animal in need thereof comprising administering a therapeutically effective amount of a compound or salt of any one of the above embodiments of Formulas I, I-1, II, III, IV, V, VI, VII, VIII, and IXa-d or a pharmaceutical composition of any one of the above embodiments of Formulas I, I-1, II, III, IV, V, VI, VII, VIII, and IXa-d to the animal.

For certain embodiments, the present invention provides a method of treating a neoplastic disease in an animal in need thereof comprising administering a therapeutically effective amount of a compound or salt of any one of the above embodiments of Formulas I, I-1, II, III, IV, V, VI, VII, VIII, and IXa-d or a pharmaceutical composition of any one of the above embodiments of Formulas I, I-1, II, III, IV, V, VI, VII, VIII, and IXa-d to the animal.

For certain embodiments, R_a is selected from the group consisting of halogen, alkyl, haloalkyl, alkoxy, and -N(R₉)₂.

For certain embodiments, R_a is selected from the group consisting of fluorine, alkyl, haloalkyl, alkoxy, and -N(R₉)₂.

5 For certain embodiments, R_b is selected from the group consisting of halogen, hydroxy, alkyl, haloalkyl, alkoxy, and -N(R₉)₂.

For certain embodiments, R_b is selected from the group consisting of halogen, hydroxy, alkyl, and alkoxy.

For certain embodiments, R_b is hydroxy.

10 For certain embodiments, R_e is selected from the group consisting of halogen, hydroxy, alkyl, alkenyl, haloalkyl, alkoxy, alkylthio, and -N(R₉)₂.

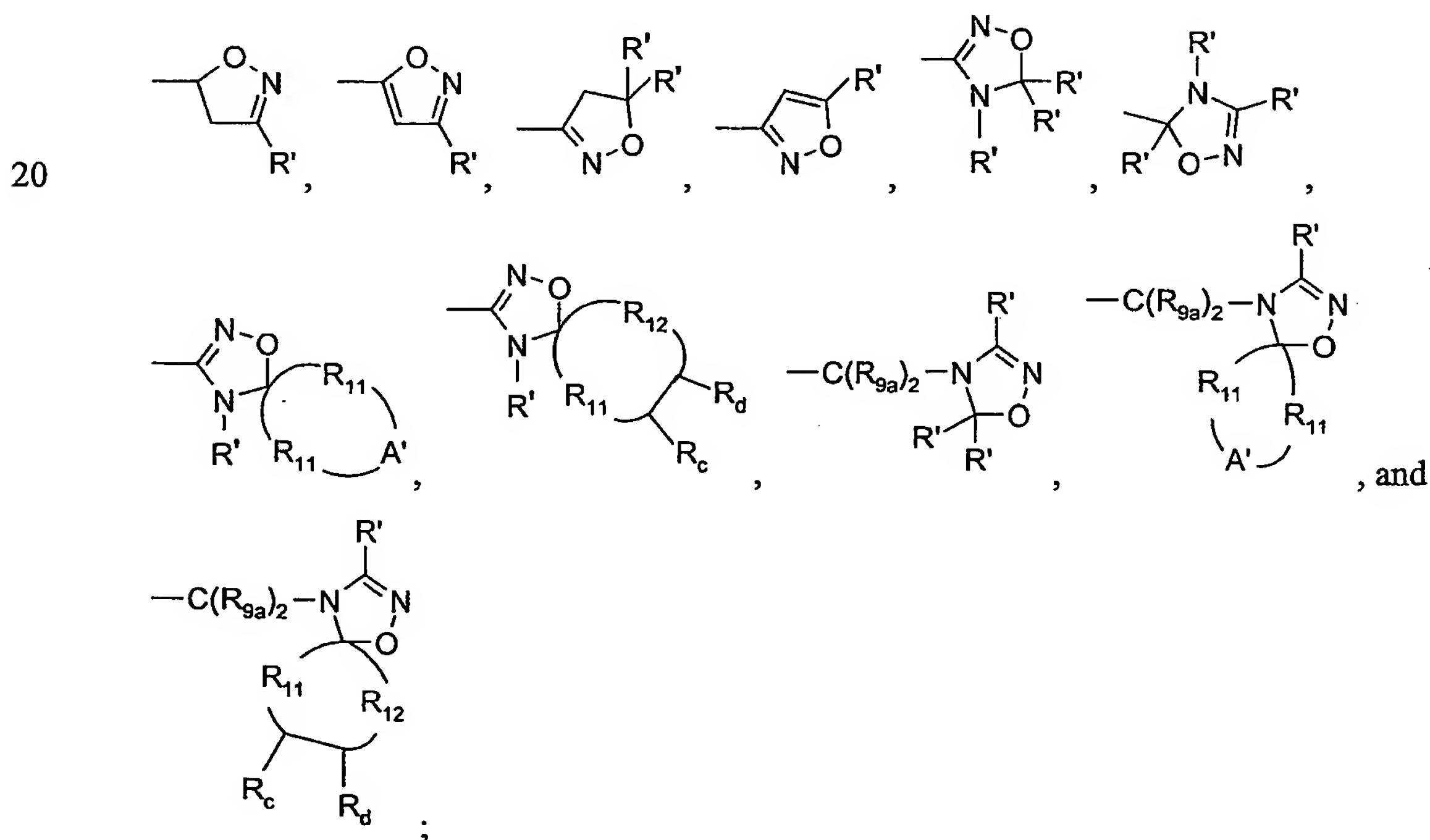
For certain embodiments, R_e is selected from the group consisting of halogen, hydroxy, alkyl, and alkoxy.

For certain embodiments, R_{A1} and R_{B1} are each independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halogen, alkyl, alkenyl, alkoxy, alkylthio, and $-N(R_9)_2$.

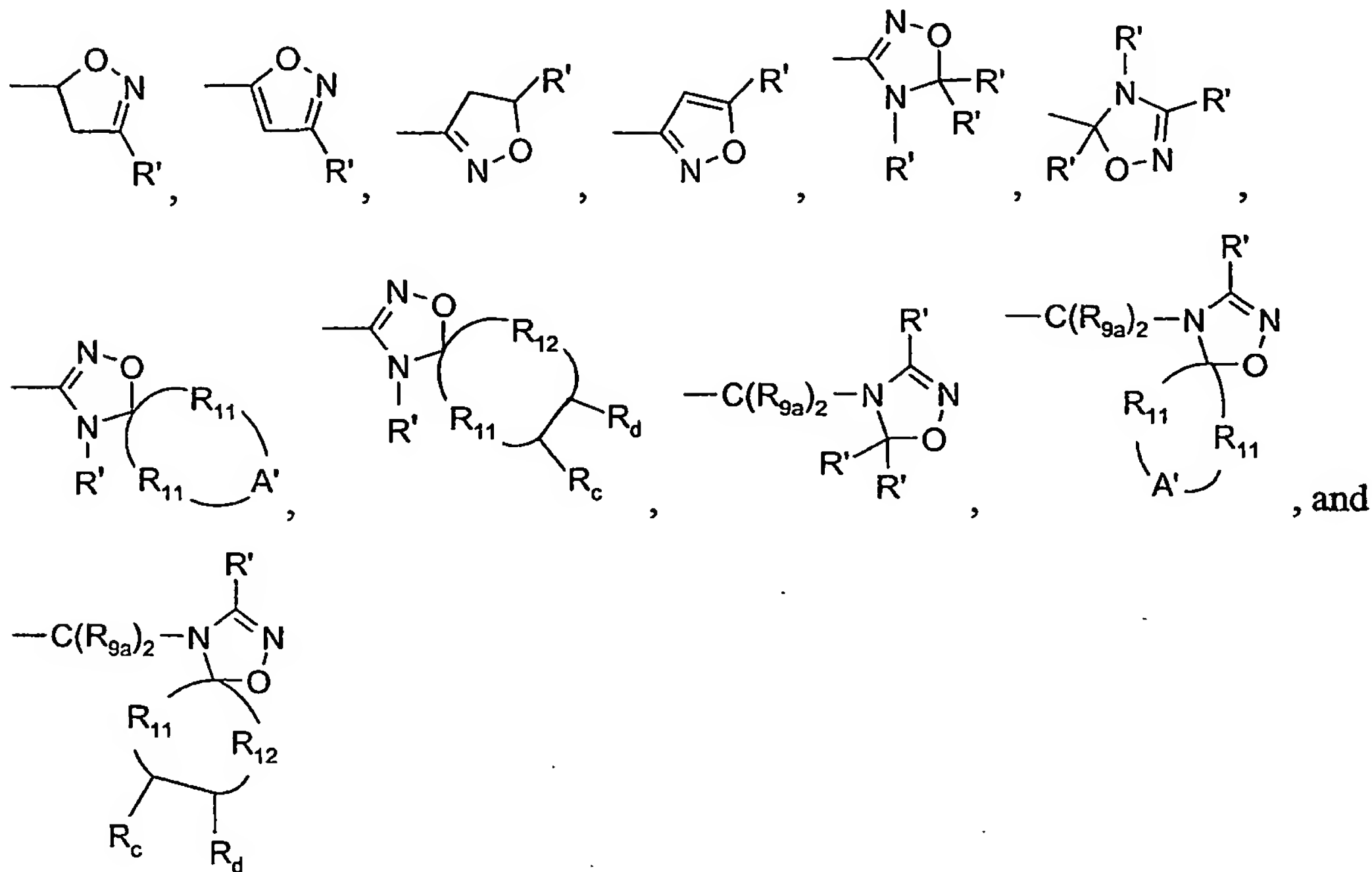
For certain embodiments, R_{A1} and R_{B1} are each independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl.

For certain embodiments, R_{A1} and R_{B1} are each methyl.

For certain embodiments, R₁ is selected from the group consisting of:

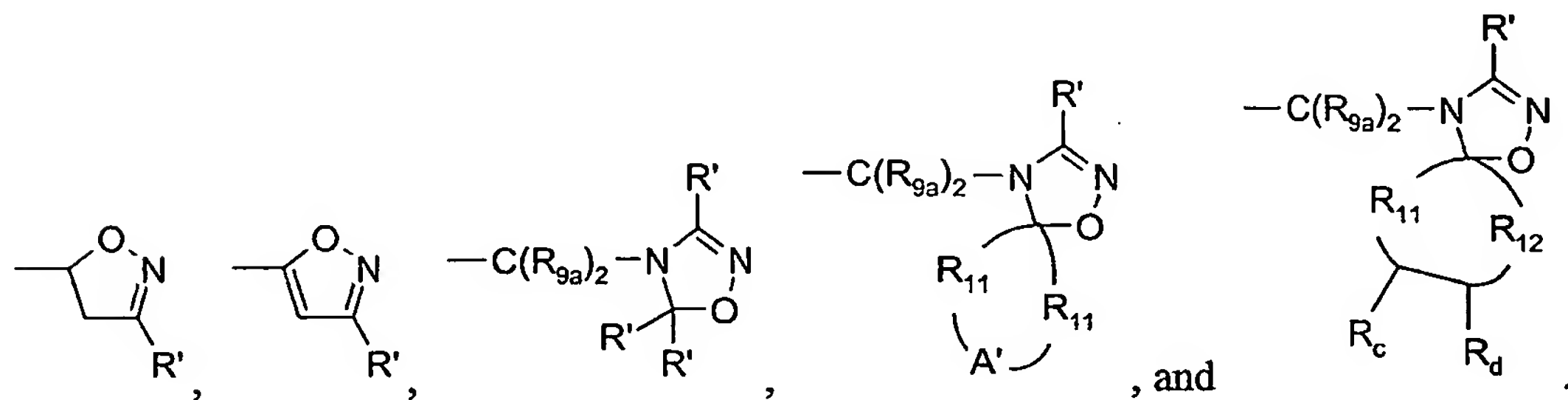


For certain embodiments, R₁ is selected from the group consisting of:

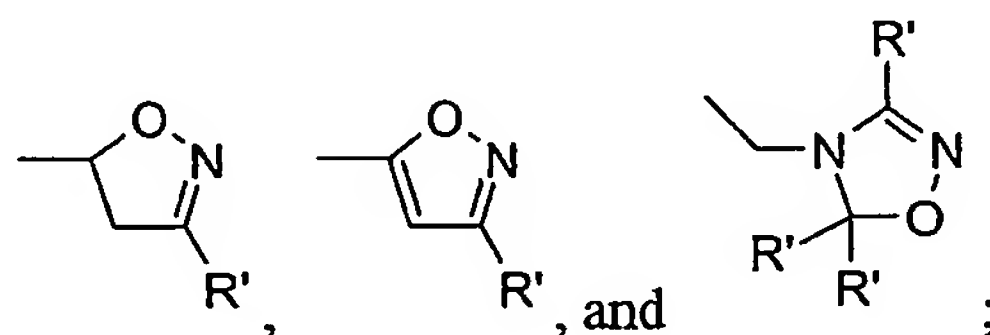


5

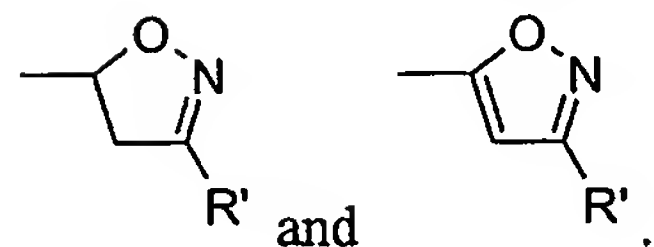
For certain embodiments, R₁ is selected from the group consisting of:



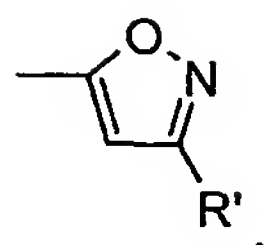
For certain embodiments, R₁ is selected from the group consisting of:



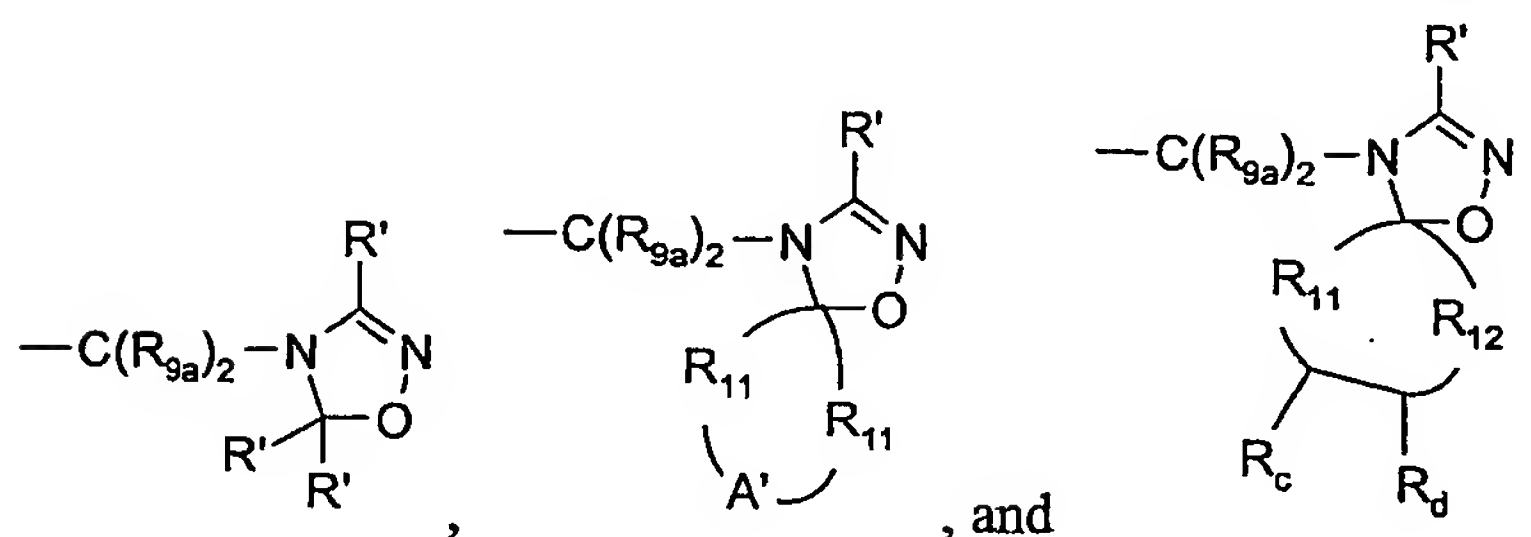
For certain embodiments, R₁ is selected from the group consisting of:



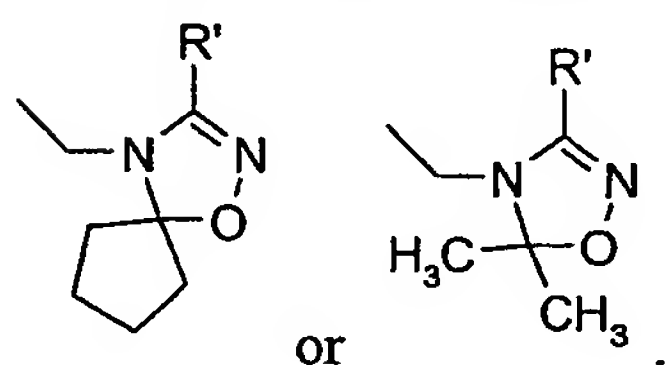
For certain embodiments, R_1 is



For certain embodiments, R_1 is selected from the group consisting of:

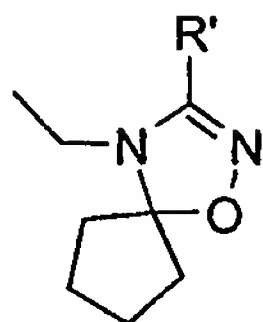


For certain embodiments, R_1 is

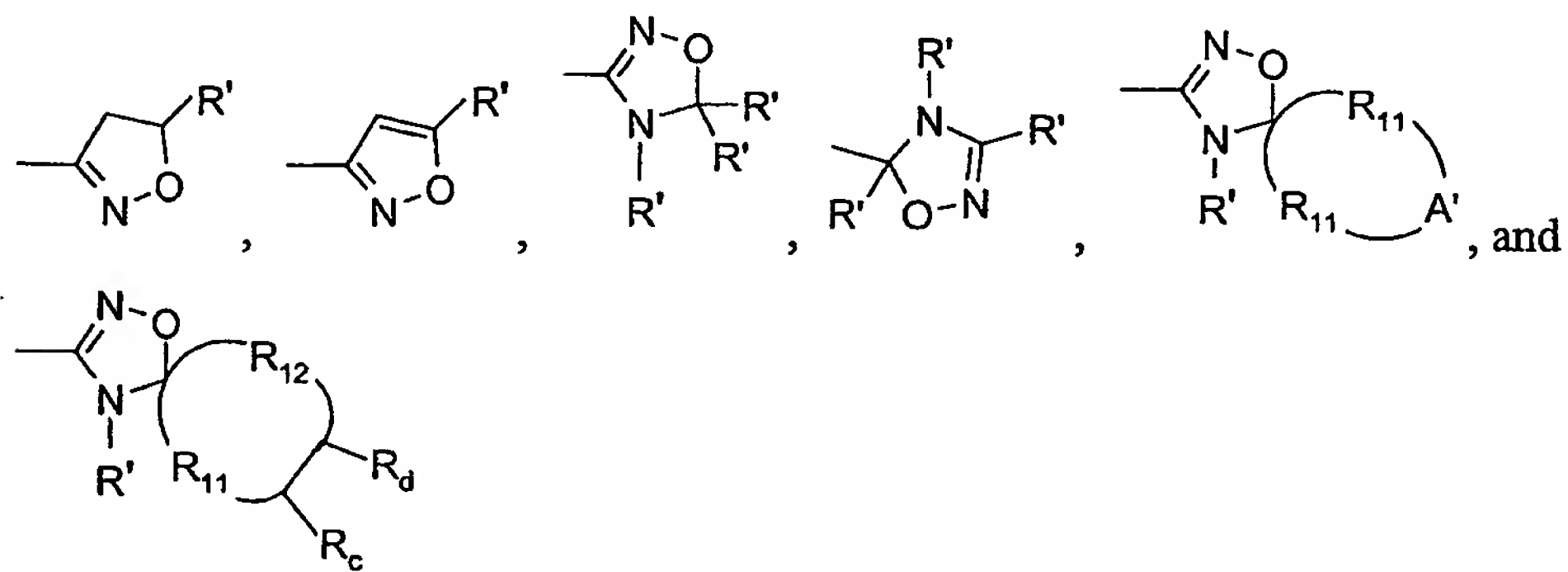


5

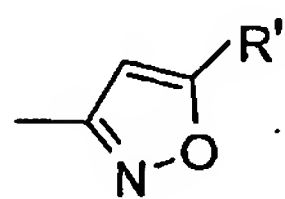
For certain embodiments, R_1 is



For certain embodiments, R_1 is selected from the group consisting of:



10



For certain embodiments, R_1 is

For certain embodiments, R_2 is selected from the group consisting of:

$-R_4$,

-X-R₄,
 -X-Y-R₄, and
 -X-R₅.

For certain embodiments, R₂ is hydrogen; alkoxyalkylenyl; hydroxyalkylenyl;
 5 haloalkylenyl; heterocyclalkylenyl that is unsubstituted or substituted by one or more
 substituents selected from the group consisting of methyl, hydroxy, hydroxymethyl, and
 dimethylamino; -R₄; -X-R₄; or -X-Y-R₄. In certain of these embodiments, X is
 C₁₋₂ alkylene optionally terminated by heterocyclene; Y is -S(O)₀₋₂-, -S(O)₂-N(R₈)-,
 -C(R₆)-, -C(R₆)-O-, -O-C(R₆)-, -O-C(O)-O-, -N(R₈)-Q-, -C(R₆)-N(R₈)-, -O-C(R₆)-N(R₈)-,
 10 or -C(R₆)-N(OR₉)-, and R₄ is alkyl that is unsubstituted or substituted by one or more
 substituents selected from the group consisting of hydroxy and cyano, aryl; or heterocycl
 that is unsubstituted or substituted by alkyl with the proviso that when Y is -C(R₆)-O- or
 -C(R₆)-N(R₈)-, then R₄ may also be hydrogen. In certain of these embodiments, R₈ is
 selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, arylalkylenyl, and
 15 hydroxyalkylenyl. In certain of these embodiments, R₈ is selected from the group
 consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and arylalkylenyl.

For certain embodiments, R₂ is hydrogen, alkoxyalkylenyl, hydroxyalkylenyl, -R₄,
 -X-R₄, or -X-Y-R₄; wherein: X is C₁₋₂ alkylene; Y is -S(O)₀₋₂-, -S(O)₂-N(R₈)-, -C(R₆)-,
 -C(R₆)-O-, -O-C(R₆)-, -O-C(O)-O-, -N(R₈)-Q-, -C(R₆)-N(R₈)-, -O-C(R₆)-N(R₈)-, or
 20 -C(R₆)-N(OR₉)-, and R₄ is alkyl. In certain of these embodiments, R₈ is selected from the
 group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, arylalkylenyl, and hydroxyalkylenyl. In certain of
 these embodiments, R₈ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and
 arylalkylenyl.

For certain embodiments, R₂ is hydrogen, C₁₋₄ alkyl, C₁₋₄ alkyl-O-C₁₋₄ alkylenyl, or
 25 hydroxyC₁₋₄ alkylenyl.

For certain embodiments, R₂ is methyl, ethyl, *n*-propyl, *n*-butyl, ethoxymethyl, 2-
 methoxyethyl, hydroxymethyl, or 2-hydroxyethyl.

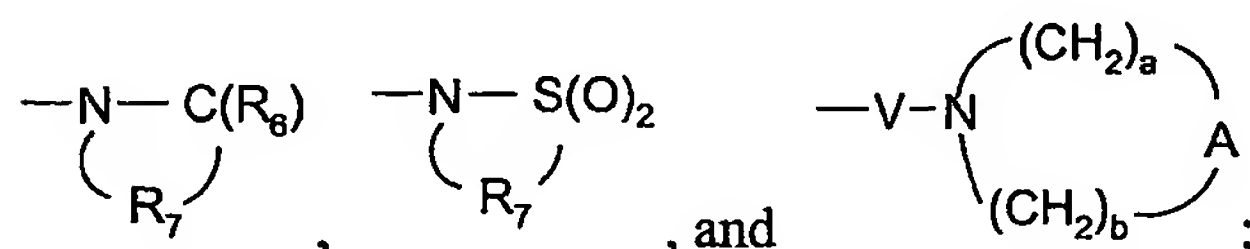
For certain embodiments, R₂ is methyl, ethyl, *n*-propyl, *n*-butyl, ethoxymethyl, 2-
 methoxyethyl, hydroxymethyl, 2-hydroxyethyl, or fluoromethyl.

30 For certain embodiments, R₄ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen,
 alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl; arylalkylenyl, aryloxyalkylenyl, alkylarylenyl, heteroaryl,
 heteroarylalkylenyl, heteroaryloxyalkylenyl, alkylheteroarylenyl, and heterocycl

wherein the alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, arylalkylenyl, aryloxyalkylenyl, alkylarylenyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkylenyl, heteroaryloxyalkylenyl, alkylheteroarylenyl, and heterocyclyl groups are unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents independently selected from the group consisting of alkyl, alkoxy, hydroxyalkyl, haloalkyl, haloalkoxy, halogen, nitro, hydroxy, mercapto, cyano, aryl, aryloxy, arylalkyleneoxy, heteroaryl, heteroaryloxy, heteroarylalkyleneoxy, heterocyclyl, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, (dialkylamino)alkyleneoxy, and in the case of alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, and heterocyclyl, oxo.

For certain embodiments, R_4 is alkyl.

For certain embodiments, R_5 is selected from the group consisting of:



For certain embodiments, R_6 is selected from the group consisting of =O and =S.

For certain embodiments, R_6 is =O.

For certain embodiments, R_7 is C_{2-7} alkylene.

For certain embodiments, R_8 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, alkoxyalkylenyl, hydroxyalkylenyl, and arylalkylenyl.

For certain embodiments, R_8 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, alkoxyalkylenyl, and arylalkylenyl.

For certain embodiments, R_8 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl.

For certain embodiments, R_8 is hydrogen.

For certain embodiments, R_9 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl.

For certain embodiments, R_{9a} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and C_{1-4} alkyl.

For certain embodiments, R_{9a} is hydrogen.

For certain embodiments, R_{9a} is methyl.

For certain embodiments, R_{10} is C_{3-8} alkylene.

For certain embodiments, R_{11} is C_{1-6} alkylene or C_{2-6} alkenylene, wherein the alkylene or alkenylene is optionally interrupted by one heteroatom; and wherein the total

number of atoms in the ring which includes R_{11} is 4 to 9. For certain of these embodiments, R_{11} is C_{1-6} alkylene. For certain of these embodiments, the total number of atoms in the ring which includes R_{11} is 5.

For certain embodiments, R_{12} is selected from the group consisting of a bond,
5 C_{1-5} alkylene, and C_{2-5} alkenylene, wherein the alkylene or alkenylene is optionally interrupted by one heteroatom; and wherein the total number of atoms in the ring which includes R_{12} is 4 to 9.

For certain embodiments, R' is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen,
alkyl, alkenyl, aryl, arylalkylenyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkylenyl, heterocyclyl,
10 heterocyclylalkylenyl, and alkyl, alkenyl, aryl, arylalkylenyl, heteroaryl,
heteroarylalkylenyl, heterocyclyl, or heterocyclylalkylenyl, substituted by one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of hydroxy, alkyl, haloalkyl, hydroxyalkyl, alkoxy, dialkylamino, $-S(O)_{0-2}$ -alkyl, $-S(O)_{0-2}$ -aryl, $-NH-S(O)_2$ -alkyl, $-NH-S(O)_2$ -aryl, haloalkoxy, halogen, nitrile, nitro, aryl, heteroaryl, heterocyclyl, aryloxy, arylalkyleneoxy,
15 $-C(O)-O$ -alkyl, $-C(O)-N(R_8)_2$, $-N(R_8)-C(O)$ -alkyl, $-O-(CO)$ -alkyl, and $-C(O)$ -alkyl.

For certain embodiments, R' is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, aryl, and heteroaryl, each of which is unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of alkyl, alkoxy, halogen, and haloalkyl.

For certain embodiments, R' is selected from the group consisting of methyl; butyl;
20 phenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of fluorine and trifluoromethyl; and 3-pyridyl.

For certain embodiments, R' is selected from the group consisting of methyl; phenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of fluorine and trifluoromethyl; and 3-pyridyl.

25 For certain embodiments, R' is methyl.

For certain embodiments, R_c and R_d are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halogen, hydroxy, alkyl, alkenyl, aryl, haloalkyl, alkoxy, alkylthio, and $-N(R_9)_2$; or R_c and R_d can join to form a fused aryl ring or fused 5-10 membered heteroaryl ring containing one to four heteroatoms.

30 For certain embodiments, R_c and R_d are each hydrogen.

For certain embodiments, R_c and R_d join to form a benzo ring.

For certain embodiments, A is selected from the group consisting of $-O-$, $-C(O)-$,

-S(O)₀₋₂-, -CH₂-, and -N(R₄)-

For certain embodiments, A is -O-.

For certain embodiments, A' is selected from the group consisting of -O-, -S(O)₀₋₂-, -N(-Q-R₄)-, and -C(R_{9a})₂-.

5 For certain embodiments, A' is -C(R_{9a})₂-.

For certain embodiments, Q is selected from the group consisting of a bond, -C(R₆)-, -C(R₆)-C(R₆)-, -S(O)₂-, and -S(O)₂-N(R₈)-.

For certain embodiments, Q is -C(O)-, -S(O)₂-, or -C(O)-NH-.

10 For certain embodiments, V is selected from the group consisting of -C(R₆)-, -O-C(R₆)-, and -S(O)₂-.

For certain embodiments, V is -C(O)-.

For certain embodiments, X is selected from the group consisting of alkylene, alkenylene, alkynylene, arylene, heteroarylene, and heterocyclylene wherein the alkylene, alkenylene, and alkynylene groups are optionally interrupted or terminated by arylene, heteroarylene or heterocyclylene and optionally interrupted by one or more -O- groups.

For certain embodiments, X is C₁₋₄ alkylene.

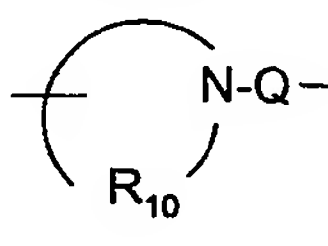
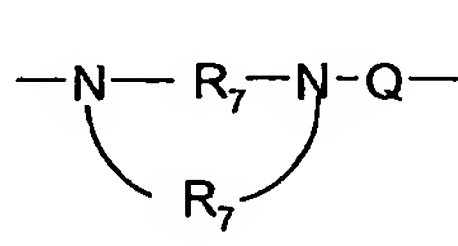
For certain embodiments, X is C₁₋₂ alkylene.

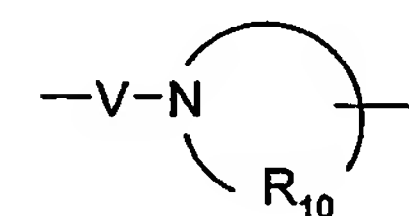
For certain embodiments, X' is selected from the group consisting of -CH(R₉)-, -CH(R₉)-alkylene-, and -CH(R₉)-alkenylene-.

20 For certain embodiments, X' is C₁₋₄ alkylene.

For certain embodiments, X' is -CH₂-.

For certain embodiments, Y is selected from the group consisting of -S(O)₀₋₂-, -S(O)₂-N(R₈)-, -C(R₆)-, -C(R₆)-O-, -O-C(R₆)-, -O-C(O)-O-, -N(R₈)-Q-, -C(R₆)-N(R₈)-,

-O-C(R₆)-N(R₈)-, -C(R₆)-N(OR₉)-, , , and

25 

For certain embodiments, Y is -S(O)₀₋₂-, -S(O)₂-N(R₈)-, -C(R₆)-, -C(R₆)-O-, -O-C(R₆)-, -O-C(O)-O-, -N(R₈)-Q-, -C(R₆)-N(R₈)-, -O-C(R₆)-N(R₈)-, or -C(R₆)-N(OR₉)-.

For certain embodiments, a and b are each independently an integer from 1 to 6 with the proviso that a + b is ≤ 7.

For certain embodiments, a and b are each independently 1 to 3.

For certain embodiments, a and b are each 2.

For certain embodiments, n is an integer from 0 to 4.

For certain embodiments, n is 0 or 1.

5 For certain embodiments, n is 0.

For certain embodiments, m is an integer from 0 to 3.

For certain embodiments, m is 0 or 1.

For certain embodiments, m is 0.

10 For certain embodiments of the compounds of Formulas I, I-1, II, III, IV, V, VI, VII, VIII, X, and IXa-d the $-NH_2$ group can be replaced by an $-NH-G$ group, as shown in the compound of Formula I-1, to form prodrugs. In such embodiments, G is selected from the group consisting of $-C(O)-R''$, α -aminoacyl, α -aminoacyl- α -aminoacyl, $-C(O)-O-R''$, $-C(O)-N(R''')R''$, $-C(=NY')-R''$, $-CH(OH)-C(O)-OY'$, $-CH(OC_{1-4} \text{ alkyl})Y_0$, $-CH_2Y_1$, and $-CH(CH_3)Y_1$. In some embodiments G is selected from the group consisting of $-C(O)-R''$, α -aminoacyl, α -aminoacyl- α -aminoacyl, and $-C(O)-O-R''$. Preferably, R'' and R''' are independently selected from the group consisting of C_{1-10} alkyl, C_{3-7} cycloalkyl, and benzyl, each of which may be unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, hydroxy, nitro, cyano, carboxy, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-4} alkoxy, aryl, heteroaryl, aryl C_{1-4} alkylenyl, heteroaryl C_{1-4} alkylenyl, $haloC_{1-4}$ alkylenyl, $haloC_{1-4}$ alkoxy, $-O-C(O)-CH_3$, $-C(O)-O-CH_3$, $-C(O)-NH_2$, $-O-CH_2-C(O)-NH_2$, $-NH_2$, and $-S(O)_2-NH_2$. R''' may also be hydrogen. Preferably, α -aminoacyl is an acyl group derived from an amino acid selected from the group consisting of racemic, D-, and L-amino acids. Preferably, Y' is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, C_{1-6} alkyl, and benzyl. Preferably, Y_0 is selected from the group consisting of C_{1-6} alkyl, carboxy C_{1-6} alkylenyl, amino C_{1-4} alkylenyl, mono- N - C_{1-6} alkylamino C_{1-4} alkylenyl, and di- N,N - C_{1-6} alkylamino C_{1-4} alkylenyl. Preferably, Y_1 is selected from the group consisting of mono- N - C_{1-6} alkylamino, di- N,N - C_{1-6} alkylamino, morpholin-4-yl, piperidin-1-yl, pyrrolidin-1-yl, and 4- C_{1-4} alkylpiperazin-1-yl.

30 For certain embodiments, including any one of the above embodiments containing $-NH-G$, G is $-C(O)-R''$, α -aminoacyl, α -aminoacyl- α -aminoacyl, or $-C(O)-O-R''$.

Preparation of the Compounds

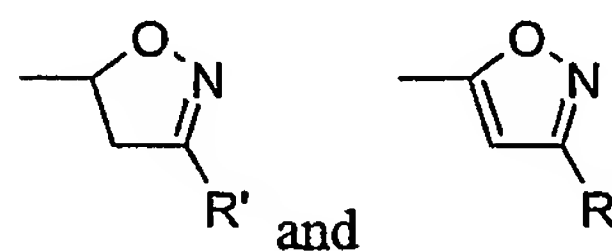
Compounds of the invention may be synthesized by synthetic routes that include processes analogous to those well known in the chemical arts, particularly in light of the description contained herein. The starting materials are generally available from commercial sources such as Aldrich Chemicals (Milwaukee, Wisconsin, USA) or are readily prepared using methods well known to those skilled in the art (e.g. prepared by methods generally described in Louis F. Fieser and Mary Fieser, *Reagents for Organic Synthesis*, v. 1-19, Wiley, New York, (1967-1999 ed.); Alan R. Katritzky, Otto Meth-Cohn, Charles W. Rees, *Comprehensive Organic Functional Group Transformations*, v 1-6, Pergamon Press, Oxford, England, (1995); Barry M. Trost and Ian Fleming, *Comprehensive Organic Synthesis*, v. 1-8, Pergamon Press, Oxford, England, (1991); or *Beilsteins Handbuch der organischen Chemie*, 4, Aufl. Ed. Springer-Verlag, Berlin, Germany, including supplements (also available via the Beilstein online database)).

For illustrative purposes, the reaction schemes depicted below provide potential routes for synthesizing the compounds of the present invention as well as key intermediates. For more detailed description of the individual reaction steps, see the EXAMPLES section below. Those skilled in the art will appreciate that other synthetic routes may be used to synthesize the compounds of the invention. Although specific starting materials and reagents are depicted in the reaction schemes and discussed below, other starting materials and reagents can be easily substituted to provide a variety of derivatives and/or reaction conditions. In addition, many of the compounds prepared by the methods described below can be further modified in light of this disclosure using conventional methods well known to those skilled in the art.

In the preparation of compounds of the invention it may sometimes be necessary to protect a particular functionality while reacting other functional groups on an intermediate. The need for such protection will vary depending on the nature of the particular functional group and the conditions of the reaction step. Suitable amino protecting groups include acetyl, trifluoroacetyl, *tert*-butoxycarbonyl (Boc), benzyloxycarbonyl, and 9-fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl (Fmoc). Suitable hydroxy protecting groups include acetyl and silyl groups such as the *tert*-butyl dimethylsilyl group. For a general description of protecting groups and their use, see T. W. Greene and P. G. M. Wuts, *Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis*, John Wiley & Sons, New York, USA, 1991.

Conventional methods and techniques of separation and purification can be used to isolate compounds of the invention or pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof, as well as various intermediates related thereto. Such techniques may include, for example, all types of chromatography (high performance liquid chromatography (HPLC), column chromatography using common absorbents such as silica gel, and thin layer chromatography, recrystallization, and differential (i.e., liquid-liquid) extraction techniques.

Compounds of the invention are prepared according to Reaction Scheme I, wherein R_a , R' , R_2 , X' , and n are as defined above; the bond represented by the dotted line can either be present or absent; and R_{1a} is a subset of R_1 that includes the rings:



, wherein R' is as defined above. In step (1) of Reaction Scheme I, an amine of Formula $NH_2-X'-CH=CH_2$ or $NH_2-X'-C\equiv C-H$ is combined with a 2,4-dichloro-3-nitroquinoline of Formula XV. This reaction is conveniently carried out by adding the amine to a solution of a compound of Formula XV in the presence of a base such as triethylamine. The reaction is carried out in a suitable solvent, such as dichloromethane, chloroform, or DMF and may be carried out at room temperature, a sub-ambient temperature such as $0^\circ C$, or an elevated temperature such as the reflux temperature of the solvent. Several compounds of Formula XV are known and can be made by known methods. See, for example, U.S. Patent No. 4,689,338 (Gerster) and 4,988,815 (André et al). Amines of the Formula $NH_2-X'-CH=CH_2$ or $NH_2-X'-C\equiv C-H$ are commercially available or can be readily prepared by known methods.

The resultant compound of Formula XVI is reduced in step (2) of Reaction Scheme I to provide a 2-chloroquinoline-3,4-diamine of Formula XVII. Step (2) is conveniently carried out using a one- or two-phase sodium dithionite reduction. The reaction is conveniently carried out using the conditions described by Park, K. K.; Oh, C. H.; and Joung, W. K.; *Tetrahedron Lett.*, 34, pp. 7445-7446 (1993) by adding sodium dithionite to a compound of Formula XVI in a mixture of dichloromethane and water at room temperature in the presence of potassium carbonate and ethyl viologen dibromide, ethyl viologen diiodide, or 1,1'-di-*n*-octyl-4,4'-bipyridinium dibromide. Alternatively, the reduction can be carried out by adding an aqueous solution of sodium dithionite to a

compound of Formula XVI in a suitable solvent or solvent mixture such as ethanol/acetonitrile.

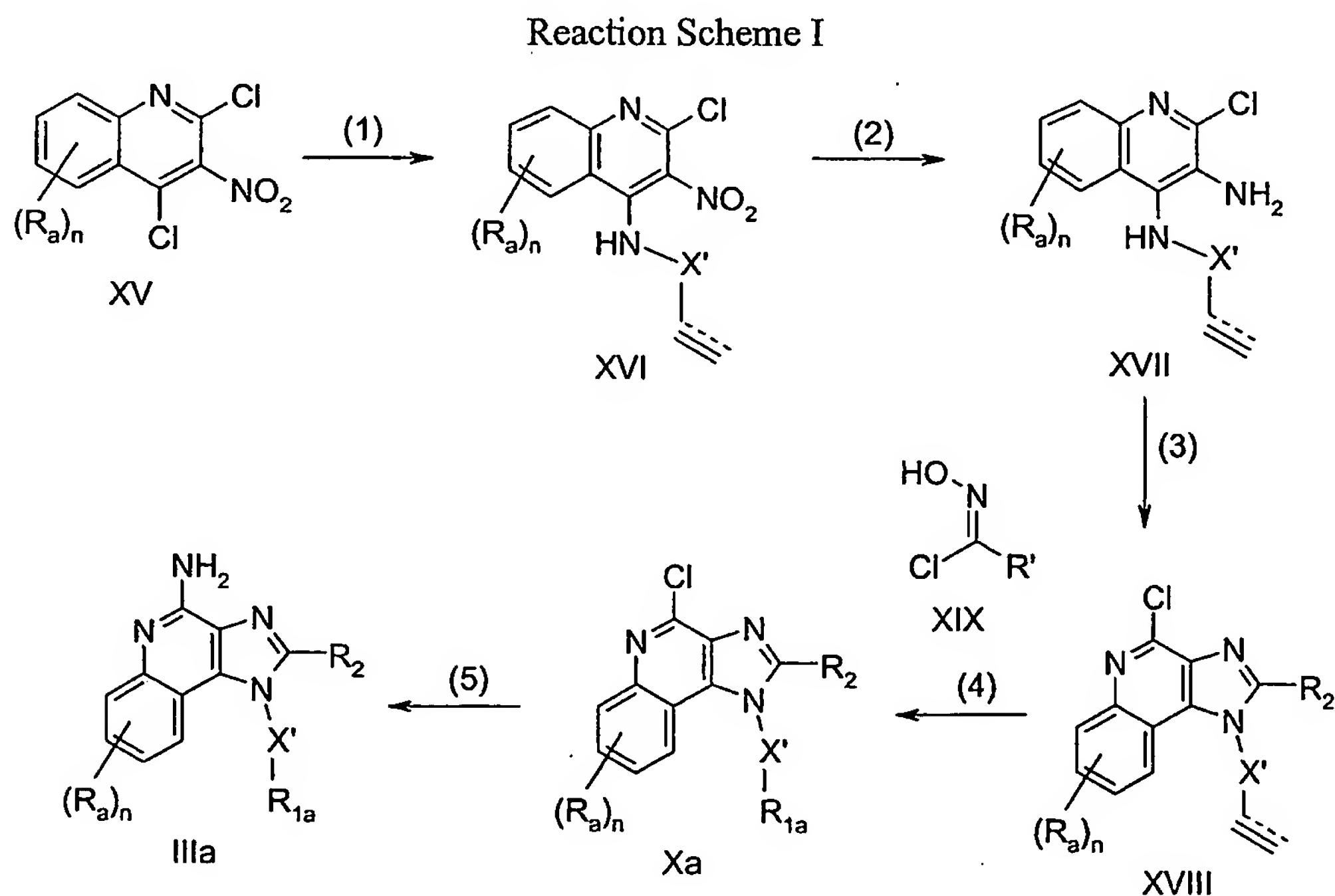
In step (3) of Reaction Scheme I, a 2-chloroquinoline-3,4-diamine of Formula XVII is treated with a carboxylic acid equivalent to provide a 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline of Formula XVIII. Suitable carboxylic acid equivalents include orthoesters of Formula $R_2C(O\text{-alkyl})_3$, 1,1-dialkoxyalkyl alkanoates of Formula $R_2C(O\text{-alkyl})_2(O\text{-C(O)-alkyl})$, and acid chlorides of Formula $R_2C(O)Cl$. The selection of the carboxylic acid equivalent is determined by the desired substituent at R_2 . For example, triethyl orthoformate will provide a compound where R_2 is hydrogen, and trimethyl orthovalerate will provide a compound where R_2 is a butyl group. The reaction is conveniently carried out by adding the carboxylic acid equivalent to a quinoline-3,4-diamine of Formula XVII in a suitable solvent such as toluene. Optionally, catalytic pyridine hydrochloride or pyridinium *p*-toluenesulfonate can be added. The reaction is carried out at a temperature high enough to drive off alcohol or water formed during the reaction. Conveniently, a Dean-Stark trap can be used to collect the volatiles.

Alternatively, step (3) can be carried out in two steps when an acid chloride of Formula $R_2C(O)Cl$ is used as the carboxylic acid equivalent. The first step is conveniently carried out by adding the acid chloride to a solution of a quinoline-3,4-diamine of Formula XVII in a suitable solvent such as dichloromethane to afford an amide. Optionally, a tertiary amine such as triethylamine, pyridine, or catalytic 4-dimethylaminopyridine (DMAP) can be added. The reaction can be carried out at or below room temperature. The amide product can be isolated and optionally purified using conventional techniques before it is heated and cyclized to provide a 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline of Formula XVIII. The cyclization reaction is conveniently carried out in a solvent such as ethanol or methanol or a solvent mixture such as ethanol/water in the presence of a base such as triethylamine, potassium carbonate, or sodium hydroxide and may be carried out at an elevated temperature, such as the reflux temperature of the solvent.

In step (4) of Reaction Scheme I, the alkene or alkyne group of a compound of Formula XVIII undergoes a cycloaddition reaction with a nitrile oxide formed from an α -chloroaldoxime of Formula XIX, to provide a isoxazole or dihydroisoxazole-substituted 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline of Formula Xa, a subgenus of Formula X. α -Chloroaldoximes of Formula XIX can be prepared by treating an aldoxime of Formula

$R'(H)C=N-OH$ with *N*-chlorosuccinimide in a suitable solvent such as *N,N*-dimethylformamide (DMF). The reaction may be carried out initially below room temperature, at 0 °C for example, and then heated at an elevated temperature in the range of 40 °C to 50 °C. Aldoximes of Formula $R'(H)C=N-OH$ are commercially available or
 5 can be prepared from aldehydes by methods well known to one skilled in the art. The resulting α -chloroaldoxime of Formula XIX can be isolated using conventional methods before it is combined with a compound of Formula XVIII in the presence of a base such as triethylamine to generate a nitrile oxide in situ and effect the cycloaddition reaction. The reaction with an α -chloroaldoxime can be carried out at room temperature in a suitable
 10 solvent such as dichloromethane.

In step (5) of Reaction Scheme I, a compound of Formula Xa is aminated to provide a 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine of Formula IIIa, a subgenus of Formulas I and III. The reaction is conveniently carried out by adding a solution of ammonia in a suitable solvent such as methanol to a compound of Formula Xa and heating the reaction
 15 at an elevated temperature such as 150 °C. The reaction may be carried out in a pressure vessel.



Compounds of the invention can be prepared according to Reaction Scheme II, wherein R_A , R_B , X' , R_2 , and R_{1a} are as defined above. In step (1) of Reaction Scheme II, a compound of Formula XX is reacted with an amino alcohol of the Formula $H_2N-X'-OH$ to form a compound of Formula XXI. The reaction is conveniently carried out according to the method described in step (1) of Reaction Scheme I. Many 2,4-dichloro-3-nitropyridines of the Formula XX are known and can be readily prepared using known synthetic methods. See, for example, Dellaria et al, U.S. Pat. No. 6,525,064 and the references cited therein. Many 2,4-dichloro-3-nitroquinolines are also known and can be prepared by known methods as described in Reaction Scheme I. Related routes to tetrahydroquinolines of Formula XXI are known; see, for example, U.S. Patent Nos. 5,352,784 (Nikolaides et al) and 6,670,372 (Charles et al).

In step (2) of Reaction Scheme II a compound of Formula XXI is reacted with an alkali metal azide to provide a tetrazole of Formula XXII. The reaction can be carried out by combining the compound of Formula XXI with an alkali metal azide, for example, sodium azide, in a suitable solvent such as acetonitrile/water, preferably 90/10 acetonitrile/water, in the presence of cerium (III) chloride, preferably cerium (III) chloride heptahydrate. Optionally, the reaction can be carried out with heating, for example, at the reflux temperature. Alternatively, the reaction can be carried out by combining the compound of Formula XXI with an alkali metal azide, for example, sodium azide, in a suitable solvent such as DMF and heating, for example in the range of 50 °C to 60 °C, optionally in the presence of ammonium chloride. Other related routes to imidazonaphthyridines of Formula XXII have been reported; see, for example, U.S. Patent No. 6,194,425 (Gerster et al).

In step (3) of Reaction Scheme II, the nitro group of the compound of Formula XXII is reduced to provide a diamine of Formula XXIII. The reduction can be carried out according to one of the methods described in step (2) of Reaction Scheme I. Alternatively, the reduction can be carried out by hydrogenation using a heterogeneous hydrogenation catalyst such as platinum on carbon. The hydrogenation is conveniently carried out in a Parr apparatus in a suitable solvent such as toluene, a lower alcohol such as isopropanol or ethanol, or mixtures thereof. Other suitable solvents include ethyl acetate and acetonitrile. The reaction can be carried out at room temperature.

In step (4) of Reaction Scheme II, a diamine of Formula XXIII is reacted with a carboxylic acid equivalent to provide a compound of Formula XXIV. The reaction can be carried out as described in step (3) of Reaction Scheme I. Some pyridines of Formula XXIV are known; see, for example, U.S. Patent No. 6,797,718 (Dellaria et al).

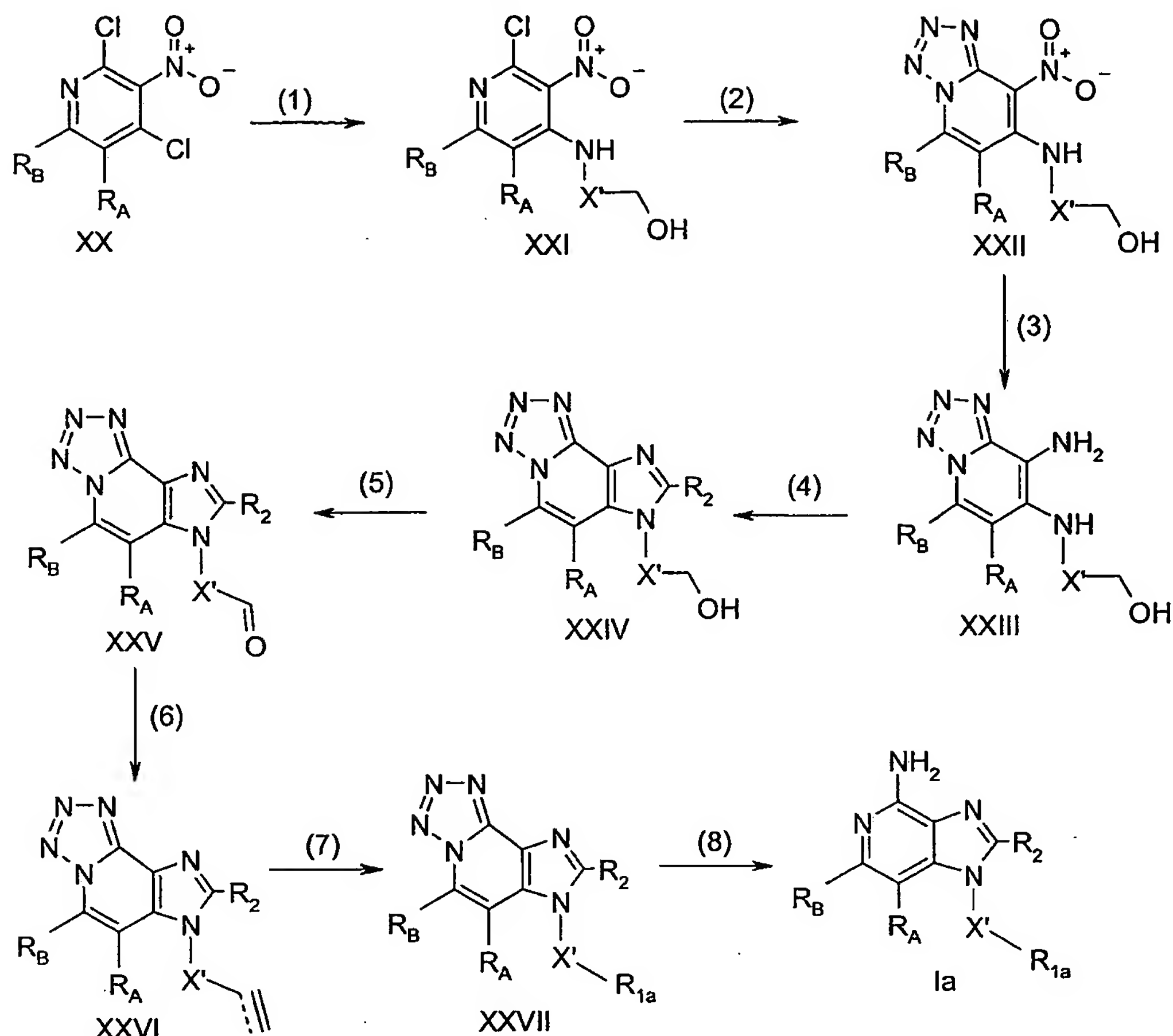
5 In step (5) of Reaction Scheme II, the alcohol of Formula XXIV is oxidized to an aldehyde-substituted compound of Formula XXV using conventional methods, for example, Swern oxidation conditions. The Swern oxidation is conveniently carried out by adding a compound of Formula XXIV followed by triethylamine to a mixture of oxalyl chloride and dimethylsulfoxide in a suitable solvent, such as dichloromethane. The
10 reaction can be carried out at sub-ambient temperatures, such as -78 °C.

In step (6) of Reaction Scheme II, an aldehyde-substituted compound of Formula XXV is converted to an alkenyl- or alkynyl-substituted compound of Formula XXVI. The conversion to an alkyne is conveniently carried out by adding diethyl 1-diazo-2-oxopropylphosphonate to the aldehyde-substituted compound of Formula XXV in the
15 presence of a mild base such as potassium carbonate. The reaction is carried out in a suitable solvent such as methanol or dichloromethane at room temperature. The aldehyde-substituted compound of Formula XXV can be converted to an alkenyl-substituted compound of Formula XXVI using synthetic methods well known to those skilled in the art; such methods include the Wittig reaction.

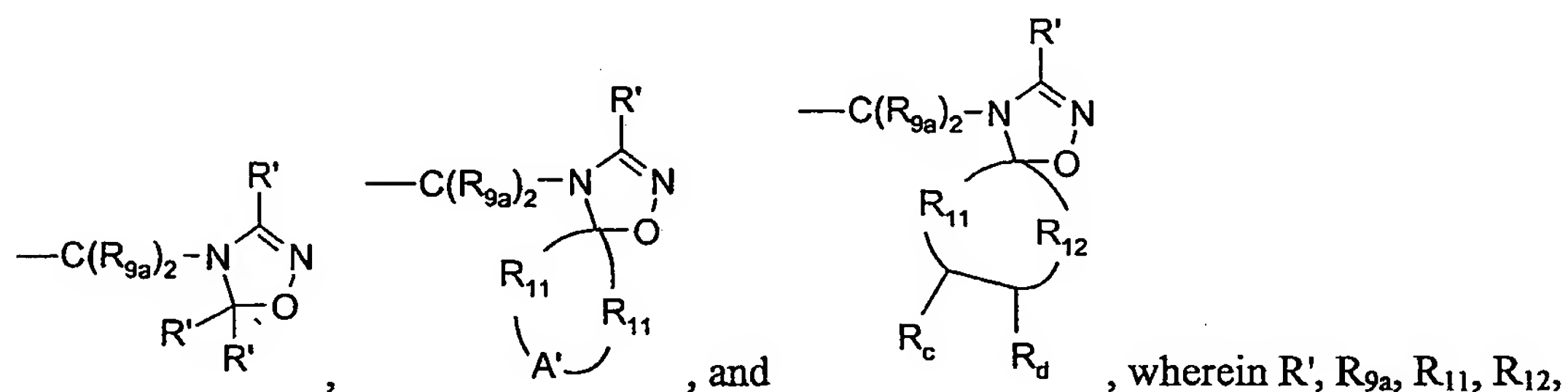
20 In step (7) of Reaction Scheme II, the alkene or alkyne dipolarophile of Formula XXVI undergoes a cycloaddition reaction with a nitrile oxide generated from an α -chloroaldoxime of Formula XIX. The reaction can be run according to the methods described in step (4) of Reaction Scheme I to provide a product of Formula XXVII.

In step (8) of Reaction Scheme II, the tetrazole ring is removed from a compound
25 of Formula XXVII by reaction with triphenylphosphine to form an *N*-triphenylphosphinyl intermediate. The reaction with triphenylphosphine can be run in a suitable solvent such as toluene or 1,2-dichlorobenzene under an atmosphere of nitrogen with heating, for example at the reflux temperature. The *N*-triphenylphosphinyl intermediate is then hydrolyzed to provide a compound of Formula Ia. The hydrolysis can be carried out by
30 general methods well known to those skilled in the art, for example, by heating in a lower alkanol such as methanol in the presence of an acid such as hydrochloric acid.

Reaction Scheme II

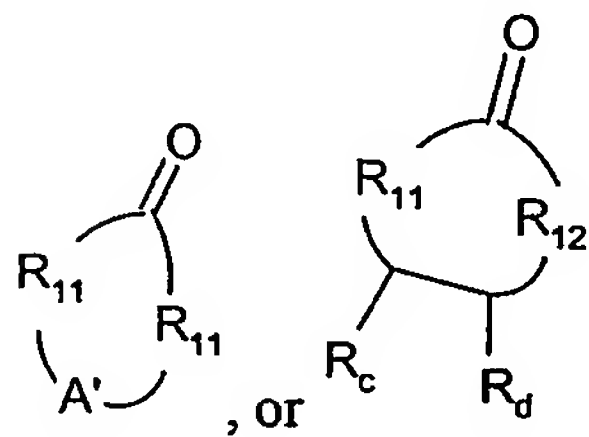


For certain embodiments, compounds of the invention are prepared according to Reaction Scheme III, wherein R_a , R_2 , X' , and n are as defined above, and R_{1b} is a subset of R_1 that includes the rings:



In step (1) of Reaction Scheme III, a 1-aminoalkyl-substituted imidazoquinoline of Formula XXVIII is converted to an imine by reaction with a ketone or aldehyde of Formula $(R')_2C=O$ and subsequently treated with an α -

chloroaldoxime of Formula XIX. The reaction is conveniently carried out by combining an aminoalkyl-substituted imidazoquinoline of Formula XXVIII with a ketone or aldehyde of Formula $(R')_2C=O$,

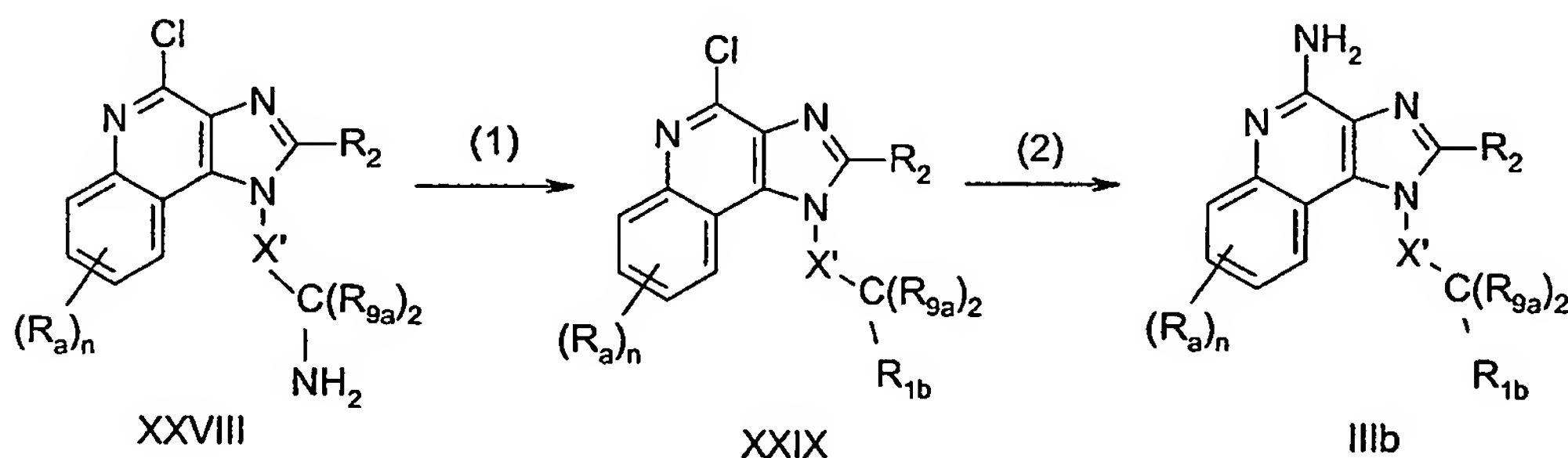


at room temperature in a suitable solvent such as dichloromethane. The reaction can optionally be carried out in the presence of magnesium sulfate. The resulting imine is then combined with an α -chloroaldoxime of Formula XIX according to the procedure described in step (4) of Reaction Scheme I. Some compounds of Formula XXVIII are known; see U.S. Patent No. 6,069,149 (Nanba et al). Others can be readily prepared by known methods.

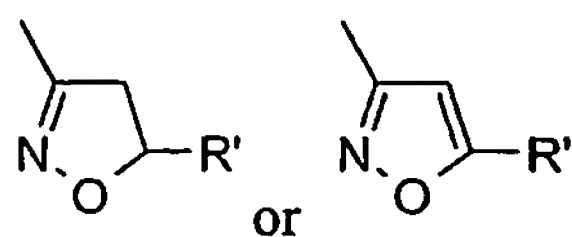
In step (2) of Reaction Scheme III, a 4-chloro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline is aminated to provide a heterocyclyl-substituted 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine of Formula IIIb. The reaction can be carried out according to the method described in step (5) of Reaction Scheme I.

15

Reaction Scheme III



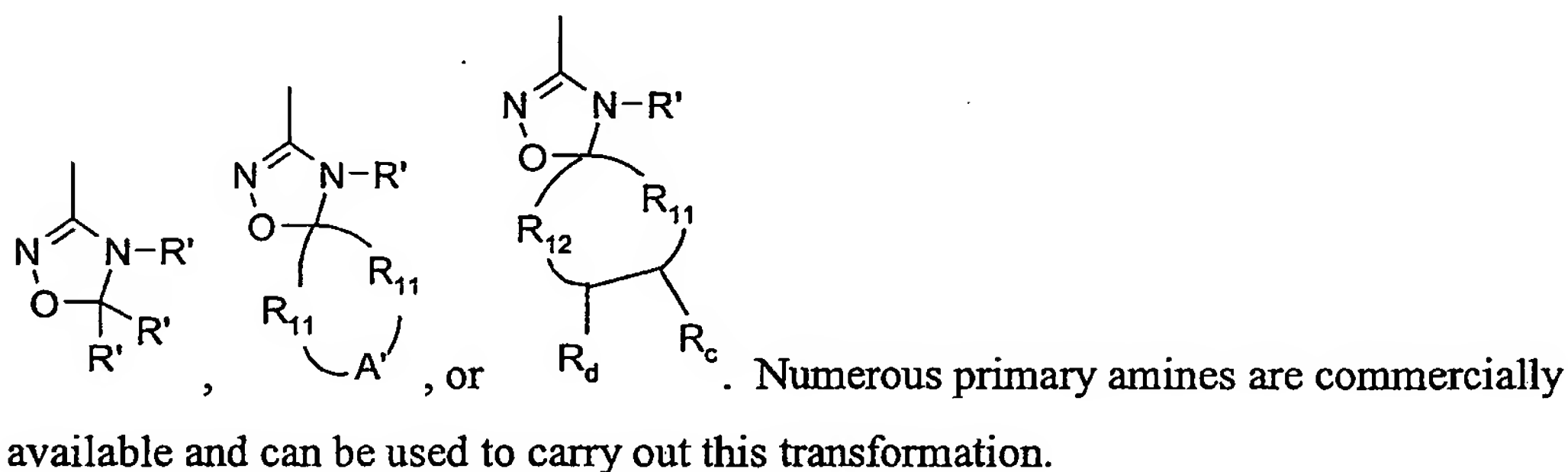
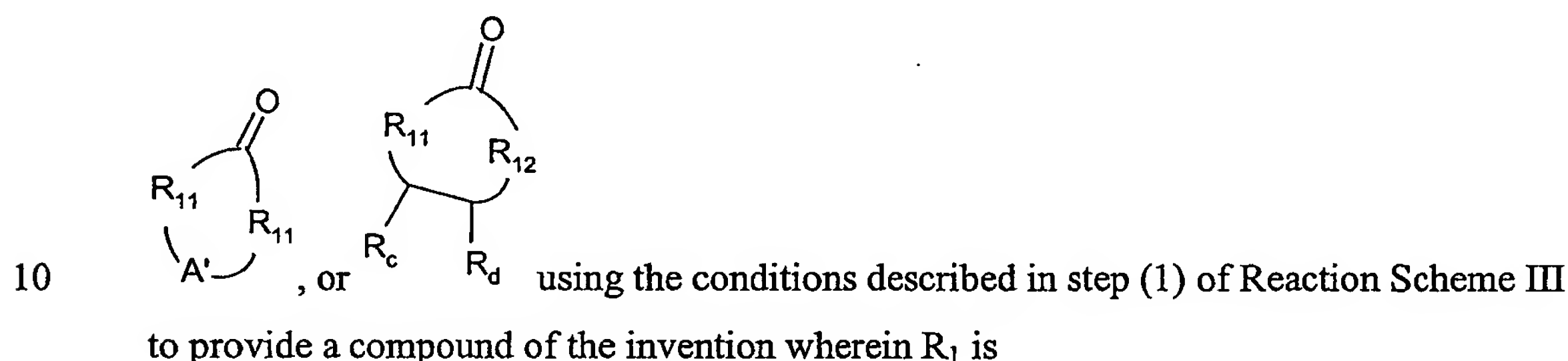
An aldehyde-substituted compound of Formula XXV, shown in Reaction Scheme II, can also be used to make compounds of the invention wherein R_1 is



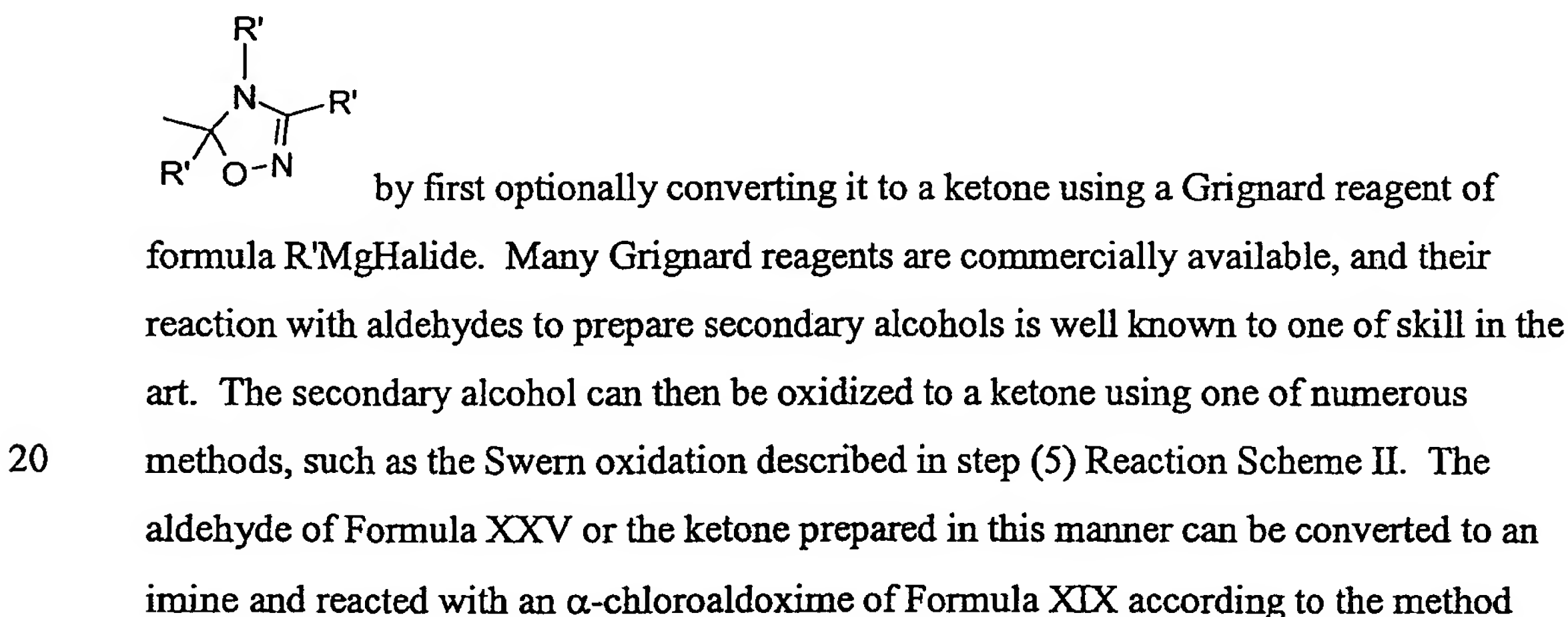
20

, wherein R' is as defined above. The transformation is conveniently carried out by converting an aldehyde of Formula XXV to an aldoxime using methods well known to one of skill in the art, for example, by reaction with

hydroxylamine hydrochloride in the presence of base such as aqueous sodium hydroxide in a suitable solvent such as ethanol, water, or mixtures thereof. The reaction can be run at room temperature. The aldoxime can then be converted to an α -chloroaldoxime and subsequently treated with triethylamine to generate a nitrile oxide in the presence of an alkene of formula $R'-CH=CH_2$ or an alkyne of formula $R'-C\equiv C-H$ according to the methods described in step (4) of Reaction Scheme I. Numerous alkenes and alkynes of these formulas are commercially available; others can be prepared by known methods. The α -chloroaldoxime prepared by this method can also be treated with an imine generated from an amine of formula $R'-NH_2$ and a compound of formula $(R')_2C=O$,



Aldehydes of Formula XXV can also be used to prepare compounds of the invention wherein R_1 is



described in step (1) of Reaction Scheme III. The method described in step (8) of Reaction Scheme II can be used after any of these alternative methods to provide a compound of Formula I.

Certain imidazonaphthyridines of the invention can be prepared according to Reaction Scheme IV, wherein R_b , X' , R_2 , R_{1a} , R' , and m are as defined above, and the bond represented by the dotted line can either be present or absent. Reaction Scheme IV begins with a 4-chloro-3-nitro[1,5]naphthyridine of Formula XXX. Compounds of Formula XXX and their preparation are known; see, for example, U.S. Patents Nos. 6,194,425 (Gerster) and 6,518,280 (Gerster). Steps (1), (2), (3), and (4) of Reaction Scheme IV can be carried out according to the methods described in steps (1), (4), (2), and (3), respectively, of Reaction Scheme I to provide a substituted 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*][1,5]naphthyridine of Formula XXXIV. Alternatively, step (3) of Reaction Scheme IV can be carried out by hydrogenation as described in step (3) of Reaction Scheme II.

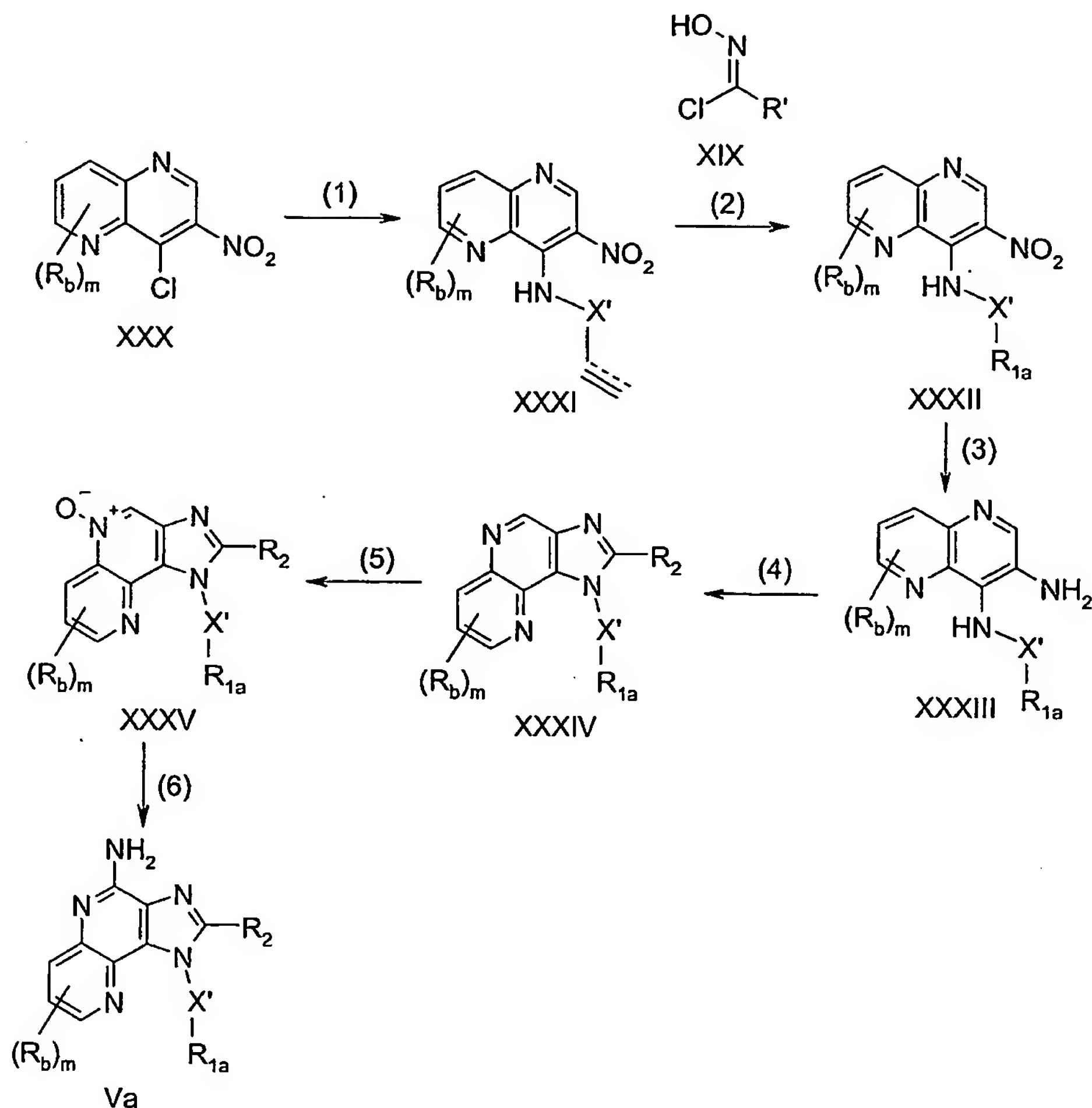
In step (5) of Reaction Scheme IV, a 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*][1,5]naphthyridine of Formula XXXIV is oxidized to provide a 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*][1,5]naphthyridine-5*N*-oxide of Formula XXXV using a conventional oxidizing agent capable of forming *N*-oxides. The reaction is conveniently carried out by adding 3-chloroperoxybenzoic acid to a solution of a compound of Formula XXXIV in a solvent such as dichloromethane or chloroform. The reaction can be carried out at room temperature.

In step (6) of Reaction Scheme IV, a 5*N*-oxide of Formula XXXV is aminated to provide a 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*][1,5]naphthyridin-4-amine of Formula Va, a subgenus of Formulas I and V. Step (6) can be carried out by the activation of an *N*-oxide of Formula XXXV by conversion to an ester and then reacting the ester with an aminating agent. Suitable activating agents include alkyl- or arylsulfonyl chlorides such as benzenesulfonyl chloride, methanesulfonyl chloride, or *p*-toluenesulfonyl chloride. Suitable aminating agents include ammonia, in the form of ammonium hydroxide, for example, and ammonium salts such as ammonium carbonate, ammonium bicarbonate, and ammonium phosphate. The reaction is conveniently carried out by adding ammonium hydroxide to a solution of the *N*-oxide of Formula XXXV in a suitable solvent such as dichloromethane or chloroform and then adding *p*-toluenesulfonyl chloride or benzenesulfonyl chloride. The reaction can be carried out at ambient temperature.

Steps (5) and (6) of Reaction Scheme IV may be carried out as a one-pot procedure by adding 3-chloroperoxybenzoic acid to a solution of a compound of Formula XXXIV in a solvent such as dichloromethane or chloroform and then adding ammonium hydroxide and *p*-toluenesulfonyl chloride or benzenesulfonyl chloride without isolating the *N*-oxide compound of Formula XXXV.

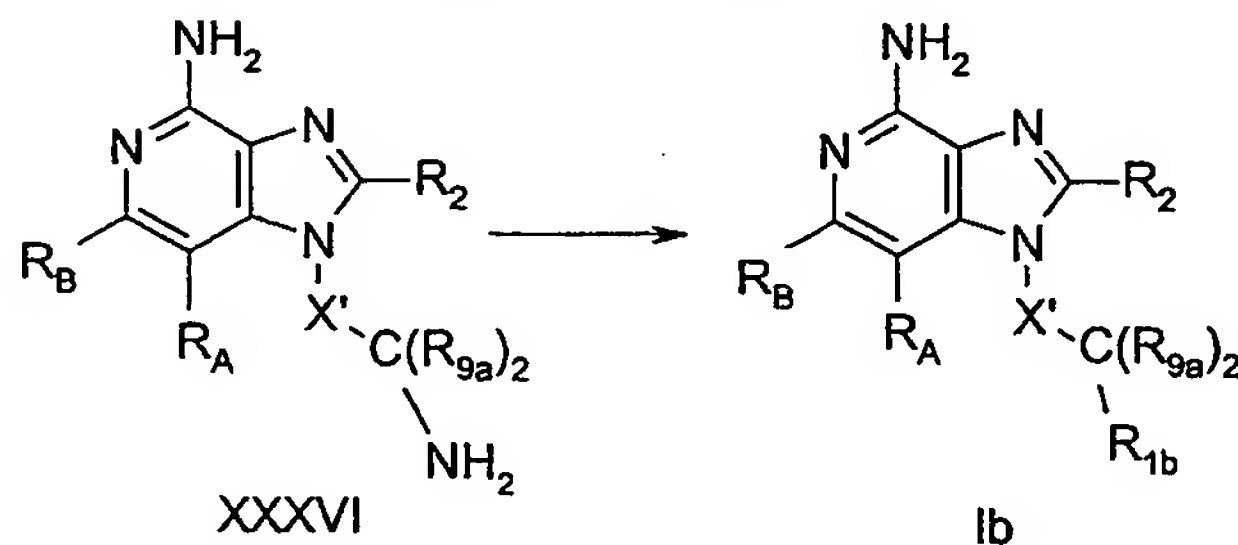
The amination reaction in step (6) of Reaction Scheme IV can alternatively be carried out by treating a 5*N*-oxide of Formula XXXV with trichloroacetyl isocyanate followed by hydrolysis of the resulting intermediate to provide a compound of Formula Va, a subgenus of Formulas I and V. The reaction is conveniently carried out in two steps by (i) adding trichloroacetyl isocyanate to a solution of a 5*N*-oxide of Formula XXXV in a solvent such as dichloromethane and stirring at ambient temperature to provide an isolable amide intermediate. In step (ii), a solution of the intermediate in methanol is treated with a base such as sodium methoxide or ammonium hydroxide at ambient temperature.

Reaction Scheme IV



For certain embodiments, compounds of the invention can be prepared according to Reaction Scheme V, wherein R_A , R_B , X' , R_2 , R_{9a} , and R_{1b} are as defined above. In Reaction Scheme V, an aminoalkyl-substituted compound of Formula XXXVI is converted to a heterocyclyl-substituted compound of Formula Ib according to the method described in step (1) of Reaction Scheme III. Many compounds of Formula XXXVI are known, including 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolines and 6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolines in U.S. Patent Nos. 6,451,810 (Coleman et al) and 6,677,349 (Griesgraber), 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*][1,5]naphthyridines in U.S. Patents No. 6,194,425 (Gerster), and 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridines in U.S. Patents No. 6,545,016 (Dellaria et al).

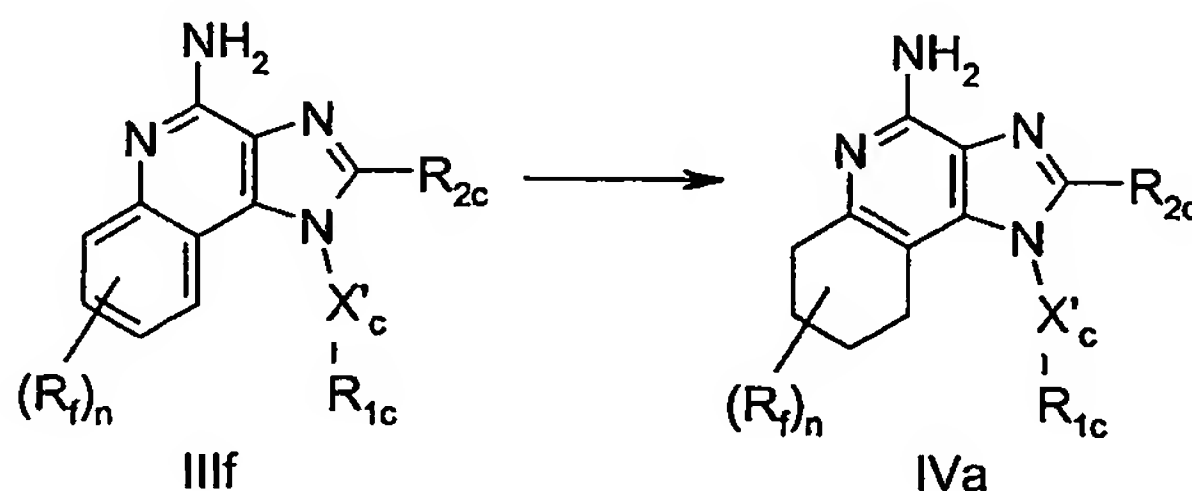
Reaction Scheme V



Compounds of the invention can also be prepared according to Reaction Scheme VI, wherein n is as defined above; R_f is alkyl, alkoxy, or $-N(R_9)_2$; X'_c is $-\text{CH}(R_9)-$ or $-\text{CH}(R_9)-\text{alkylene}-$; and R_{2c} and R_{1c} are subsets of R_2 and R_1 as defined above that do not include those substituents that one skilled in the art would recognize as being susceptible to reduction under the acidic hydrogenation conditions of the reaction. These susceptible groups include, for example, alkenyl and alkynyl groups and groups bearing nitro substituents.

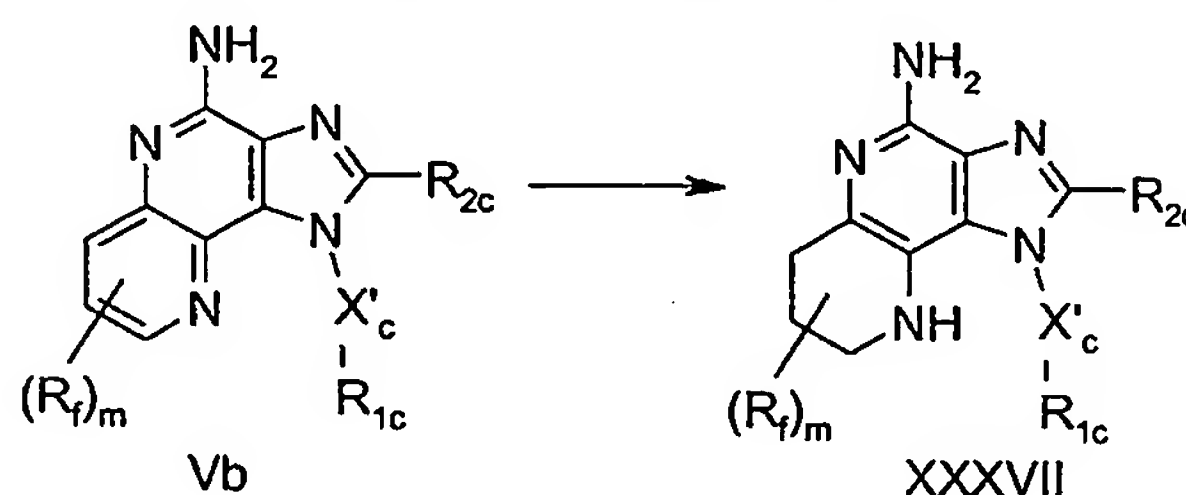
As shown in Reaction Scheme VI, an 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline of Formula IIIf, prepared according to the methods described in any of Reaction Schemes I through III and V, is reduced to a 6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine of Formula IVa, a subgenus of Formulas I and IV. The reaction is conveniently carried out under heterogeneous hydrogenation conditions by adding platinum (IV) oxide to a solution of the compound of Formula IIIf in trifluoroacetic acid and placing the reaction under hydrogen pressure. The reaction can be carried out on a Parr apparatus at room temperature.

Reaction Scheme VI



Compounds of the invention can also be prepared according to Reaction Scheme VII, wherein R_{1c} , R_{2c} , R_f , X'_c , and m are as defined above. In Reaction Scheme VII, a 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*][1,5]naphthyridin-4-amine of Formula Vb, prepared as described in any one of Reaction Schemes II, IV, and V is reduced to a 6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*][1,5]naphthyridin-4-amine of Formula XXXVII, a subgenus of Formulas I and IXa. The reaction is conveniently carried out using the conditions described in Reaction Scheme VI.

Reaction Scheme VII



Imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridines of the invention can be prepared according to Reaction Scheme VIII, wherein R_{A1} , R_{B1} , X' , R' , R_2 , and R_{1a} are as defined above, the bond represented by the dotted line can either be present or absent, and Bn is benzyl or *p*-methoxybenzyl. In step (1) of Reaction Scheme VIII, a 2,4-dichloro-3-nitropyridine of Formula XXXVIII is reacted with an amine of Formula $\text{NH}_2\text{-X}'\text{-CH=CH}_2$ or $\text{NH}_2\text{-X}'\text{-C}\equiv\text{C-H}$ as described in step (1) of Reaction Scheme I. Many 2,4-dichloro-3-nitropyridines of Formula XXXVIII are known as referenced in Reaction Scheme II.

In step (2) of Reaction Scheme VIII, the chloro group in a pyridine of Formula XXXIX is displaced by an amine of Formula HN(Bn)_2 to provide a pyridine of Formula XL. The displacement is conveniently carried out by combining an amine of Formula HN(Bn)_2 and a compound of Formula XXXIX in a suitable solvent such as toluene or xylenes in the presence of a base such as triethylamine and heating at an elevated temperature such as the reflux temperature of the solvent.

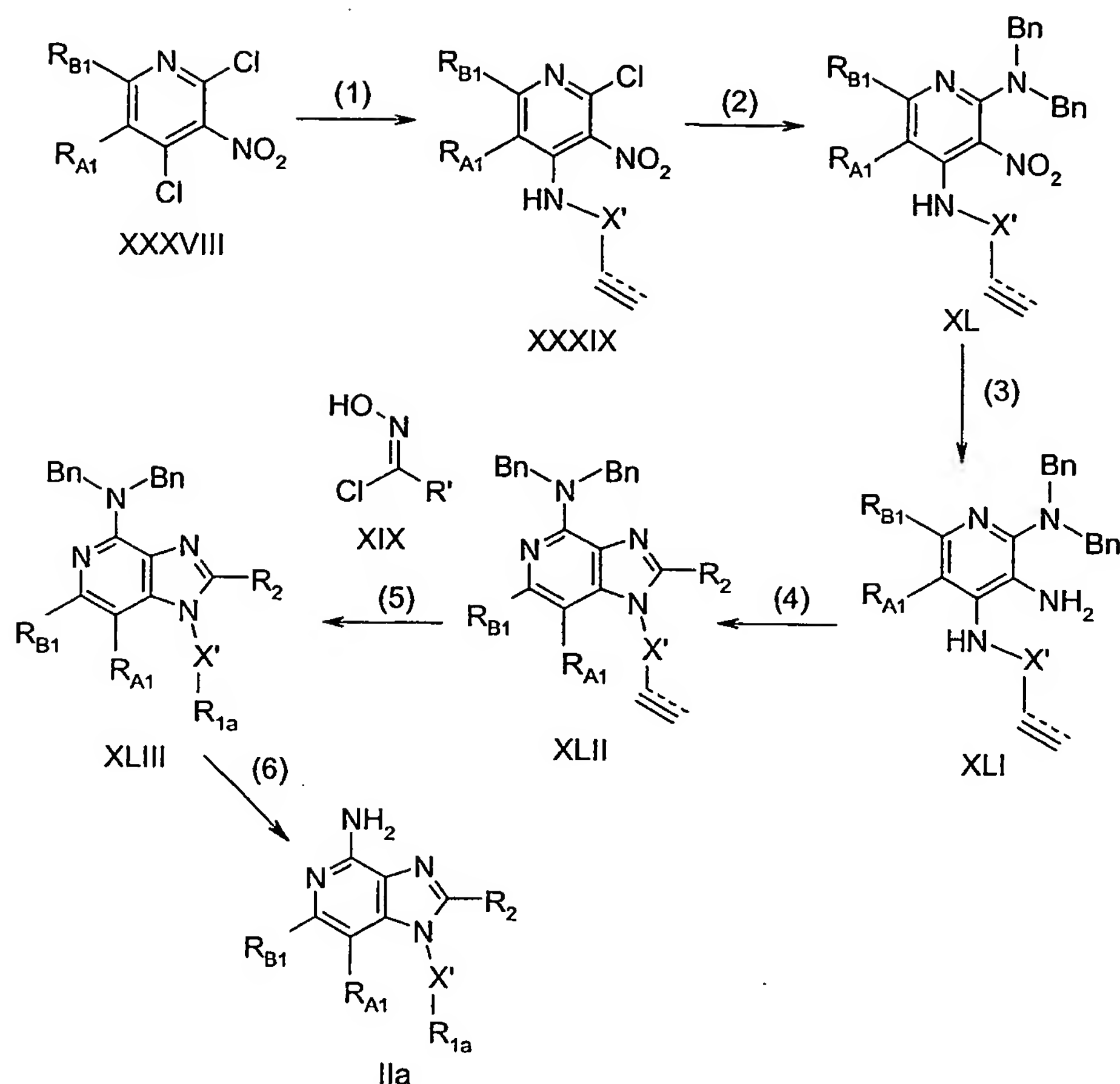
In step (3) of Reaction Scheme VIII, a compound of Formula XL is reduced to provide a pyridine-2,3,4-triamine of Formula XLI. The reduction can be carried out as described in step (2) of Reaction Scheme I. The reaction can be carried out using alternative methods as described in U.S. Patent No. 5,395,937 (Nikolaides et al).

In step (4) of Reaction Scheme VIII, a quinoline-2,3,4-triamine of Formula XLI is cyclized to a 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridine of Formula XLII. The reaction is carried out according to one of the methods described in step (3) of Reaction Scheme I.

5 In step (5) of Reaction Scheme VIII, the alkene or alkyne dipolarophile of Formula XLII undergoes a cycloaddition reaction with a nitrile oxide generated from a α -chloroaldoxime of Formula XIX. The reaction can be run according to the methods described in step (4) of Reaction Scheme I to provide a product of Formula XLIII.

10 In step (6) of Reaction Scheme VIII, the protecting groups are removed from the 4-amine of a pyridine of Formula XLIII to provide a substituted 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine of Formula IIa, a subgenus of Formulas I and II. The deprotection is conveniently carried out on a Parr apparatus under hydrogenolysis conditions using a suitable heterogeneous catalyst such as palladium on carbon in a solvent such as ethanol. The reaction can also be carried out by adding trifluoroacetic acid to a compound of Formula XLIII and stirring at room temperature or heating at an elevated temperature such
15 as 50 °C to 70 °C.

Reaction Scheme VIII



For some embodiments, tetrahydroquinolines of the invention can be prepared according to Reaction Scheme IX, wherein R_f , X'_c , R_{2c} , R_{1a} , and n are as defined above; Boc is a *tert*-butoxycarbonyl group; and PG is a hydroxy protecting group. In step (1) of Reaction Scheme I, the hydroxy group of a substituted quinoline of Formula XLIV is protected using conventional techniques to provide a substituted quinoline of Formula XLV. A number of suitable protecting groups can be used; in particular, protecting groups that would survive the reduction in step (2) are preferred. Suitable protecting groups include but are not limited to silyl groups such as the *tert*-butyldimethylsilyl group. The reaction is conveniently carried out by treating the hydroxy-substituted compound of Formula XLIV with *tert*-butyldimethylsilyl chloride in the presence of a base such as triethylamine and catalytic DMAP. The reaction can be carried out in a suitable solvent such as pyridine or dichloromethane at an elevated temperature such as 60 °C.

Compounds of Formula XLIV are available from the method described in step (1) of Reaction Scheme II.

5 In steps (2) and (3) of Reaction Scheme IX, the nitro group of a substituted quinoline of Formula XLV is first reduced to a 2-chloroquinolin-3,4-diamine of Formula XLVI, which is then cyclized to a 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline of Formula XLVII. Steps (2) and (3) of Reaction Scheme IX can be carried out as described in steps (2) and (3) of Reaction Scheme I.

10 In steps (4) and (5) of Reaction Scheme IX, a 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline of Formula XLVII is first aminated as described in step (5) of Reaction Scheme I to provide a 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine of Formula XLVIII, which is then reduced to a 6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine of Formula XLIX according to the method described in Reaction Scheme VI.

15 In step (6) of Reaction Scheme IX, the 4-amine of a 6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine of Formula XLIX is protected with suitable protecting groups such as Boc groups. The protection reaction is conveniently carried out by combining a tetrahydro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine of Formula XLIX with di-*tert*-butyl dicarbonate in the presence of base, such as triethylamine, catalytic DMAP, or a combination thereof. The reaction can be carried out at room temperature in a suitable solvent such as toluene. Other protecting groups can be installed in this step using known
20 synthetic methods.

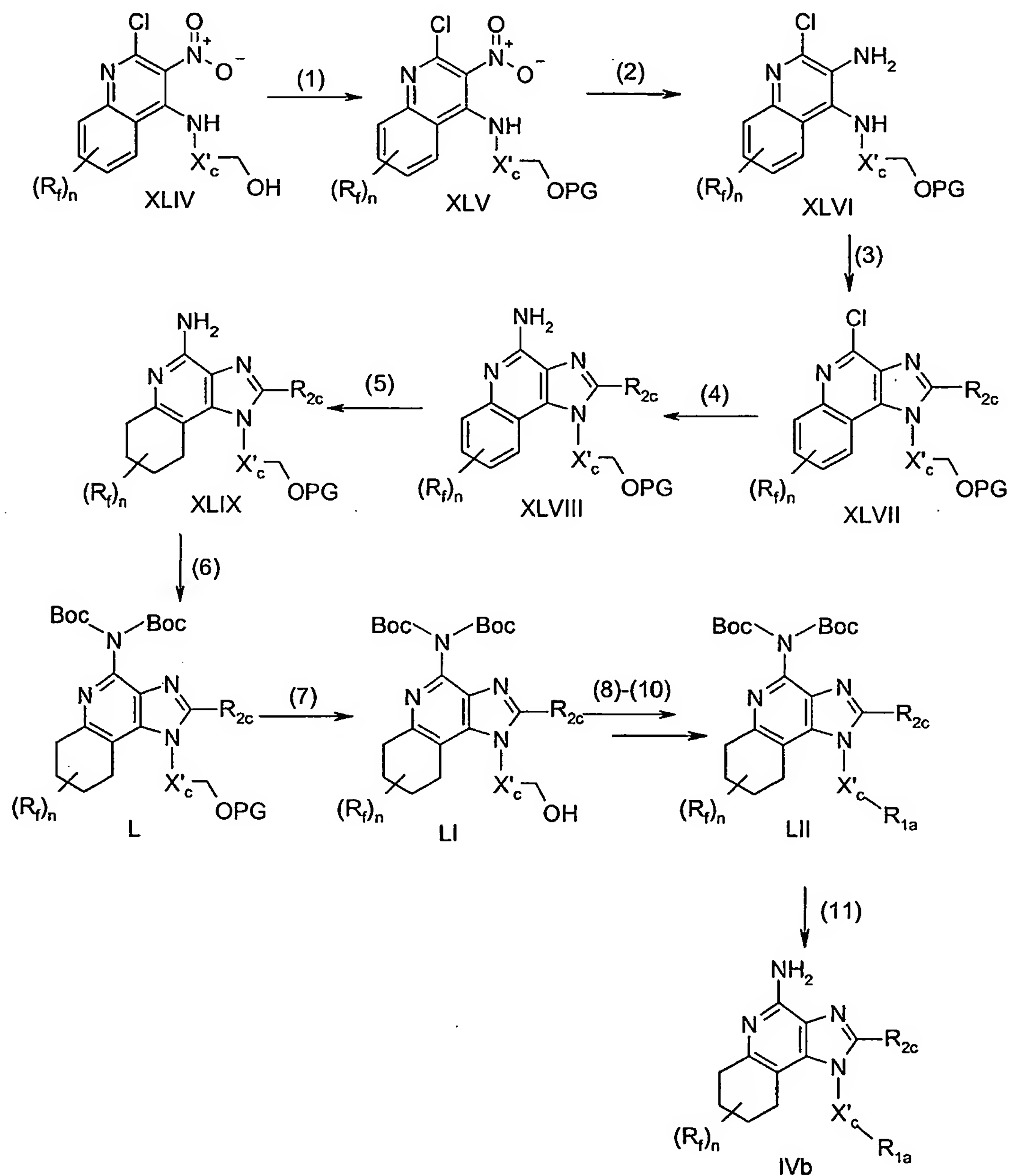
In step (7) of Reaction Scheme IX, the hydroxy protecting group on a tetrahydro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline of Formula L is removed to reveal the hydroxy group in a product of Formula LI. The deprotection reaction can be carried out using a variety of conventional methods, depending on the protecting group used. When PG is a silyl group
25 such as *tert*-butyldimethylsilyl, the deprotection can be carried out by adding tetrabutylammonium fluoride to a compound of Formula L in a suitable solvent such as tetrahydrofuran (THF). The reaction can be carried out at a sub-ambient temperature, such as -78 °C, and then warmed to room temperature.

30 Steps (8), (9), and (10) of Reaction Scheme IX can be carried out according to the methods described above in steps (5), (6), and (7) of Reaction Scheme II to provide a tetrahydro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline of Formula LII, which is then deprotected to provide a tetrahydro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine of Formula IVb, a subgenus of

Formulas I and IV. The removal of Boc protecting groups is conveniently carried out under acidic conditions by adding hydrogen chloride in ethanol to a compound of Formula LII in a suitable solvent such as ethanol. The reaction can be run at room temperature or at an elevated temperature such as 60 °C.

5

Reaction Scheme IX



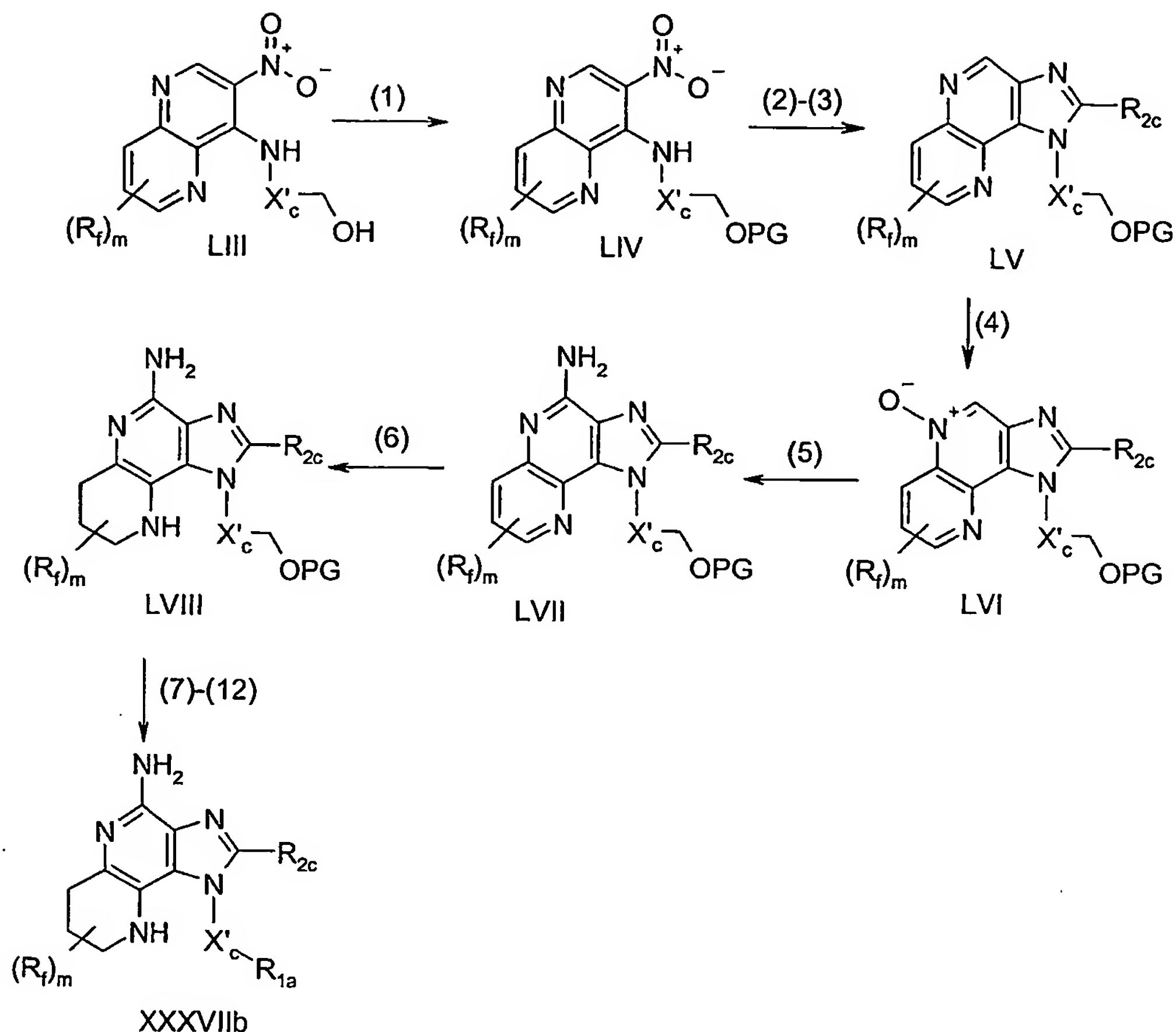
For some embodiments, tetrahydronaphthyridines of the invention can be prepared according to Reaction Scheme X, wherein R_f , X'_c , R_{2c} , R_{1a} , PG, and m are as defined above. Steps (1) through (3) of Reaction Scheme X can be carried out according to the methods described in steps (1) through (3) of Reaction Scheme IX, starting with a
5 [1,5]naphthyridine of Formula LIII. Some compounds of Formula LIII are known; others can be prepared according to known methods. See, for example, International Publication No. WO2005/018551.

In steps (4) and (5) of Reaction Scheme X, a 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*][1,5]naphthyridine of Formula LV is first oxidized to a 5*N*-oxide of Formula LVI, which is aminated to yield
10 a 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*][1,5]naphthyridin-4-amine of Formula LVII. Steps (4) and (5) of Reaction Scheme X can be carried out as described in steps (5) and (6) of Reaction Scheme IV.

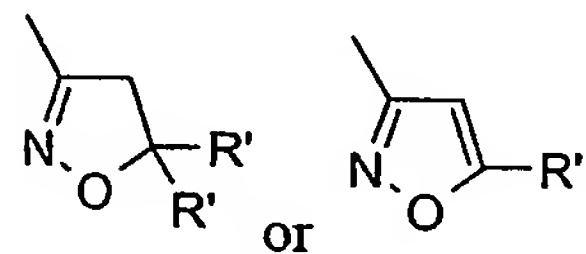
In step (6) of Reaction Scheme X, a 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*][1,5]naphthyridin-4-amine of Formula LVII is reduced to a 6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*][1,5]naphthyridin-4-amine of Formula LVIII, conveniently under the conditions described in Reaction Scheme VI.
15

Steps (7) through (12) of Reaction Scheme X can be carried out according to the methods described in steps (6) through (11) of Reaction Scheme IX, respectively, to provide a 6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*][1,5]naphthyridin-4-amine of Formula
20 XXVIIb, a subgenus of Formulas I and IXa.

Reaction Scheme X



For some embodiments, compounds of the invention can be prepared according to Reaction Scheme XI, wherein R_a , X' , R_2 , and n are as defined above; PG_1 is a nitrogen protecting group; R_{1d} is a subset of R_1 that includes the rings:



, wherein R' is as defined above. In step (1) of Reaction Scheme XI, an aldehyde of Formula LIX is converted to an aldoxime of Formula LX using conventional methods. For example, an aldehyde of Formula LIX can be combined with hydroxylamine hydrochloride in the presence of base such as triethylamine in a suitable solvent such as dichloromethane. The reaction can be run at room temperature. Aldehydes of Formula LIX can be prepared using conventional methods. For example,

phthalimidoacetaldehyde diethyl acetal is a commercially available compound that can be treated with acid to provide an aldehyde of Formula LX.

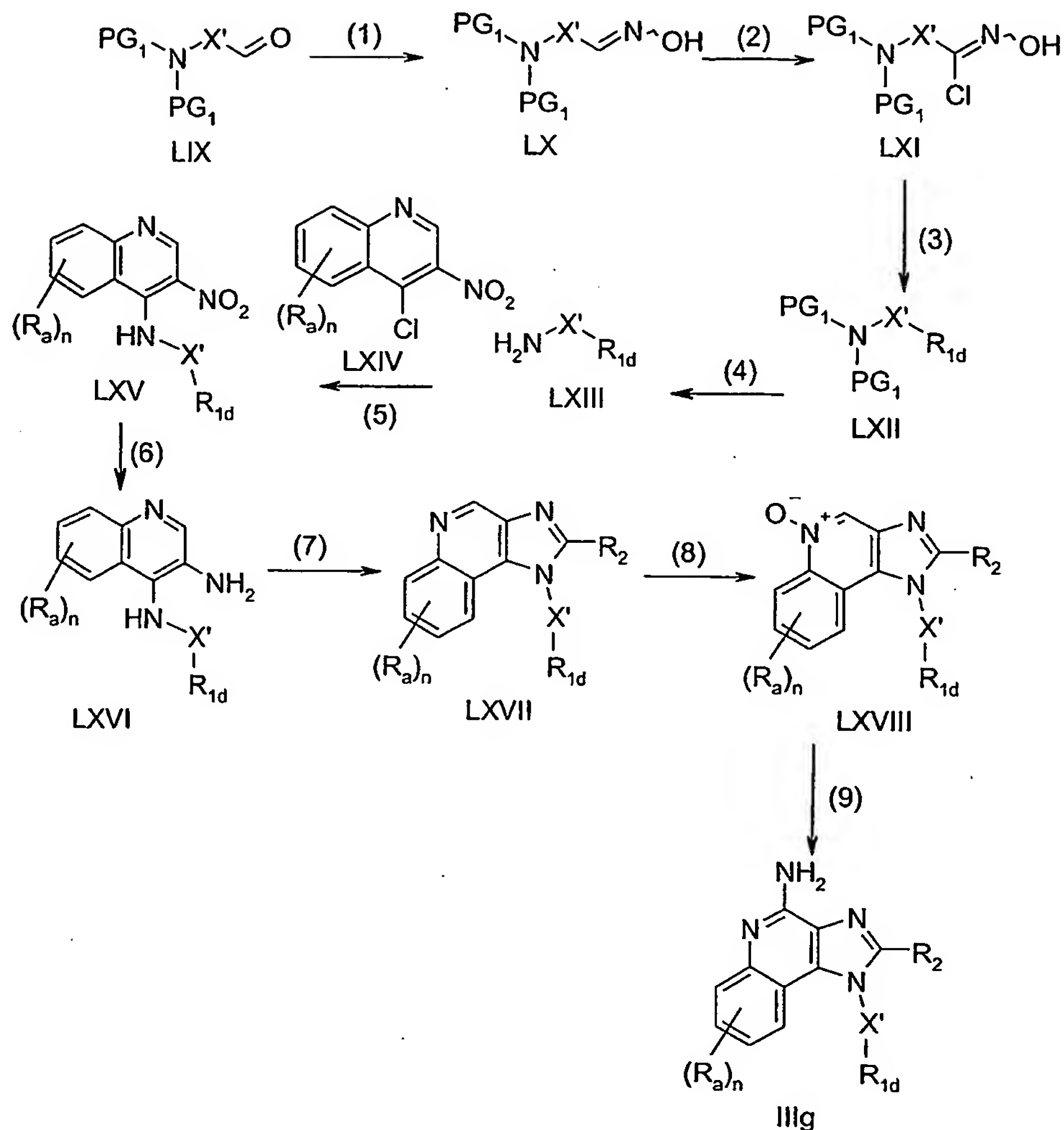
In step (2) of Reaction Scheme XI, an aldoxime of Formula LX is converted to an α -chloroaldoxime of Formula LXI according to the method described in step (4) of Reaction Scheme I. The α -chloroaldoxime of Formula LXI is converted in step (3) of Reaction Scheme XI to an isoxazole or dihydroisoxazole-substituted compound of Formula LXII by treatment with a base such as triethylamine to generate a nitrile oxide in the presence of an alkene of formula $R'-CH=CH_2$ or an alkyne of formula $R'-C\equiv C-H$ according to the methods described in step (4) of Reaction Scheme I. Numerous alkenes and alkynes of these formulas are commercially available; others can be prepared by known methods.

In step (4) of Reaction Scheme XI, the protecting groups are removed from a compound of Formula LXII to provide an amino-substituted isoxazole or dihydroisoxazole for Formula LXIII. The deprotection may be carried out in a variety of ways depending on the identity of the protecting group. For example, when a phthalimide protecting group is used, the deprotection can be carried out by combining a compound of Formula LXII with hydrazine or hydrazine hydrate in a suitable solvent such as ethanol or solvent mixture such as ethanol/THF. The reaction can be carried out at room temperature or at an elevated temperature such as the reflux temperature of the solvent.

In step (5) of Reaction Scheme XI, a 4-chloro-3-nitroquinoline of Formula LXIV is combined with an amine of Formula LXIII according to the method described in step (1) of Reaction Scheme I. In steps (6) and (7) of Reaction Scheme XI, the nitro group of a substituted quinoline of Formula LXV is first reduced to a quinolin-3,4-diamine of Formula LXVI, which is then cyclized to a 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline of Formula LXVII. Steps (6) and (7) of Reaction Scheme XI can be carried out as described in step (3) of Reaction Scheme II and step (3) of Reaction Scheme I, respectively.

In steps (8) and (9) of Reaction Scheme XI, a 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline of Formula LXVII is first oxidized to a 5*N*-oxide of Formula LXVIII, which is aminated to yield a 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine of Formula IIIg, a subgenus of Formulas I and III. Steps (8) and (9) of Reaction Scheme XI can be carried out as described in steps (5) and (6) of Reaction Scheme IV.

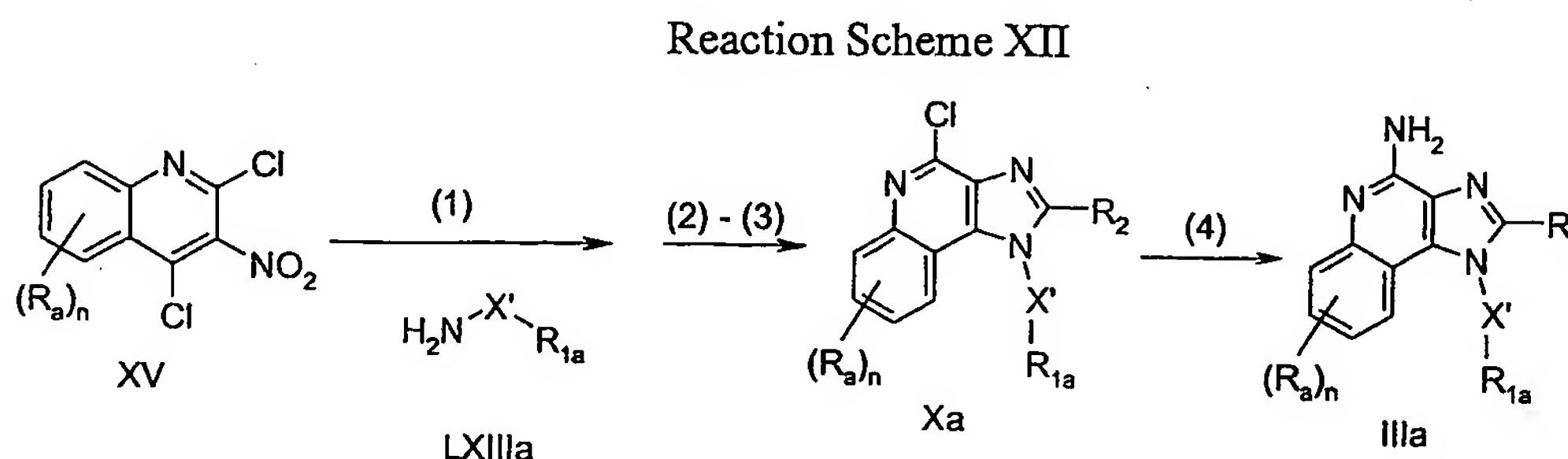
Reaction Scheme XI



For some embodiments, compounds of the invention can be prepared according to Reaction Scheme XII, wherein R_a , X' , R_{1a} , R_2 , and n are as defined above. In step (1) of Reaction Scheme XII, a 2,4-dichloro-3-nitroquinoline of Formula XV is combined with an amine of Formula LXIIIa according to the method described in step (1) of Reaction Scheme I. Amines of Formula LXIIIa can be prepared in two steps from a protected amino-substituted alkene or protected amino-substituted alkyne. In the first step, the alkene or alkyne group can be reacted with an α -chloroaldoxime of Formula XIX according to the method described in step (4) of Reaction Scheme I, and the resulting isoxazole or dihydroisoxazole is then deprotected to provide an amino of Formula LXIIIa. Some protected amino-substituted alkenes and protected amino-substituted alkynes are

commercially available, such as *N*-(3-butyryl)phthalimide; others can be prepared by known methods. Steps (2), (3), and (4) of Reaction Scheme XII can then be carried out according to the methods described in step (3) of Reaction Scheme II, and step (3) and step (5) of Reaction Scheme I, respectively, to provide a compound of Formula IIIa.

5



Synthetic transformations can be made at the R_2 position in many of the compounds shown in Reaction Schemes I through X, if, for example, the carboxylic acid or equivalent thereof used in step (3) of Reaction Scheme I, IX, or X, or step (4) of Reaction Scheme II, IV, or VIII contains a protected hydroxy or amino group. Some acid chlorides of this type are commercially available; others can be prepared by known synthetic methods. A protected hydroxy or amino group thus installed at the R_2 position can then be deprotected by a variety of methods well known to one of skill in the art. For example, hydroxyalkylenyl group is conveniently introduced at the R_2 position by the dealkylation of a methoxy- or ethoxyalkylenyl group, which can be installed by using a methoxy- or ethoxy-substituted carboxylic acid equivalent, for example, methoxyacetyl chloride, 2-methoxypropionyl chloride, or ethoxyacetyl chloride, in step (3) of Reaction Scheme I or the analogous steps in the other Reaction Schemes. The dealkylation can be carried out by treating a compound wherein R_2 is an alkoxyalkylenyl group with boron tribromide in a suitable solvent such as dichloromethane at a sub-ambient temperature such as 0 °C. Alternatively, acetoxyacetyl chloride can be used in step (3) of Reaction Scheme I, and hydrolysis of the ester group to reveal a hydroxy group can be carried out by conventional methods. The resulting hydroxy group may then be oxidized to an aldehyde or carboxylic acid using conventional methods or converted to a leaving group such as, for example, a chloro group using thionyl chloride or a trifluoromethanesulfonate group using trifluoromethanesulfonic anhydride. The resulting leaving group can then be

displaced by a variety of nucleophiles. Sodium azide can be used as the nucleophile to install an azide group, which can then be reduced to an amino group using heterogeneous hydrogenation conditions. An amino group at the R₂ position can be converted to an amide, sulfonamide, sulfamide, or urea using conventional methods. A leaving group at R₂, such as a chloro or trifluoromethanesulfonate group, can also be displaced with a secondary amine, a substituted phenol, or a mercaptan in the presence of a base such as potassium carbonate, triethylamine, or *N,N*-diisopropylethylamine in a suitable solvent such as *N,N*-dimethylacetamide (DMA) or DMF. For examples of these and other methods used to install a variety of groups at the R₂ position, see U.S. Patent No. 5,389,640 (Gerster et al.). A hydroxyalkylenyl group at the R₂ position can also be converted to a fluoroalkylenyl group by treating a hydroxy-substituted compound with (diethylamino)sulfur trifluoride (DAST) in a suitable solvent such as dichloromethane at a sub-ambient temperature, such as -78 °C. These synthetic transformations may conveniently be carried out as the last steps in the synthesis.

Compounds of the invention can also be prepared using variations of the synthetic routes shown in Reaction Schemes I through XI that would be apparent to one of skill in the art. For example, the cycloaddition reaction described in step (4) of Reaction Scheme I may be carried out on a compound of Formula XVI or Formula XXXIX so that the order of steps in Reaction Schemes I and VIII is analogous to the order of steps in Reaction Scheme IV. In another example, a 4-chloro-3-nitro[1,5]naphthyridine of Formula XXX can be used instead of a 4-chloro-3-nitroquinoline of Formula LXIV in Reaction Scheme XI to provide naphthyridine compounds of the invention. Compounds of the invention can also be prepared using the synthetic routes described in the EXAMPLES below.

Prodrugs can be prepared in a variety of ways. For example, a compound wherein R₂ is -X-OH (e.g. hydroxyalkyl) can be converted into a prodrug wherein R₂ is, for example, -X-O-C(R₆)-R₄, -X-O-C(R₆)-O-R₄, or -X-O-C(R₆)-N(R₈)-R₄, wherein X, R₄, R₆, and R₈ are as defined above, using methods known to one skilled in the art. In addition, a compound wherein R_b is hydroxy may also be converted to an ester, an ether, a carbonate, or a carbamate. For any of these compounds containing an alcohol functional group, a prodrug can be formed by the replacement of the hydrogen atom of the alcohol group with a group such as C₁₋₆ alkanoyloxymethyl, 1-(C₁₋₆ alkanoyloxy)ethyl, 1-methyl-1-(C₁₋₆ alkanoyloxy)ethyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxycarbonyloxymethyl, *N*-(C₁₋₆ alkoxycarbonyl)aminomethyl,

succinoyl, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, α -aminoC₁₋₄ alkanoyl, arylacyl, -P(O)(OH)₂, -P(O)(O-C₁₋₆ alkyl)₂, C₁₋₆ alkoxy carbonyl, C₁₋₆ alkyl carbamoyl, and α -aminoacyl or α -aminoacyl- α -aminoacyl, where each α -aminoacyl group is independently selected from racemic, D, and L-amino acids. For compounds containing an alcohol functional group, particularly useful prodrugs are esters made from carboxylic acids containing one to six carbon atoms, unsubstituted or substituted benzoic acid esters, or esters made from naturally occurring L-amino acids.

Prodrugs can also be made from a compound containing an amino group by conversion of the amino group to a functional group such as an amide, carbamate, urea, amidine, or another hydrolyzable group using conventional methods. A prodrug of this type can be made by the replacement of a hydrogen atom in an amino group, particularly the amino group at the 4-position, with a group such as -C(O)-R', α -aminoacyl, α -aminoacyl- α -aminoacyl, -C(O)-O-R', -C(O)-N(R'')-R', -C(=NY')-R', -CH(OH)-C(O)-OY', -CH(OC₁₋₄ alkyl)Y₀, -CH₂Y₁, or -CH(CH₃)Y₁; wherein R' and R'' are each independently C₁₋₁₀ alkyl, C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, or benzyl, each of which may be unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, hydroxy, nitro, cyano, carboxy, C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₁₋₄ alkoxy, aryl, heteroaryl, arylC₁₋₄ alkylenyl, heteroarylC₁₋₄ alkylenyl, haloC₁₋₄ alkylenyl, haloC₁₋₄ alkoxy, -O-C(O)-CH₃, -C(O)-O-CH₃, -C(O)-NH₂, -O-CH₂-C(O)-NH₂, -NH₂, and -S(O)₂-NH₂, with the proviso that R'' may also be hydrogen; each α -aminoacyl group is independently selected from racemic, D, or L-amino acids; Y' is hydrogen, C₁₋₆ alkyl, or benzyl; Y₀ is C₁₋₆ alkyl, carboxyC₁₋₆ alkylenyl, aminoC₁₋₄ alkylenyl, mono-N-C₁₋₆ alkylaminoC₁₋₄ alkylenyl, or di-N,N-C₁₋₆ alkylaminoC₁₋₄ alkylenyl; and Y₁ is mono-N-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, di-N,N-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, morpholin-4-yl, piperidin-1-yl, pyrrolidin-1-yl, or 4-C₁₋₄ alkylpiperazin-1-yl. For compounds containing an amine functional group, particularly useful prodrugs are amides derived from carboxylic acids containing one to ten carbon atoms, amides derived from amino acids, and carbamates containing one to ten carbon atoms.

Pharmaceutical Compositions and Biological Activity

Pharmaceutical compositions of the invention contain a therapeutically effective amount of a compound or salt of the invention as described above in combination with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

The terms "a therapeutically effective amount" and "effective amount" mean an amount of the compound or salt sufficient to induce a therapeutic or prophylactic effect, such as cytokine induction, immunomodulation, antitumor activity, and/or antiviral activity. Although the exact amount of active compound or salt used in a pharmaceutical composition of the invention will vary according to factors known to those of skill in the art, such as the physical and chemical nature of the compound or salt, the nature of the carrier, and the intended dosing regimen, it is anticipated that the compositions of the invention will contain sufficient active ingredient to provide a dose of about 100 nanograms per kilogram (ng/kg) to about 50 milligrams per kilogram (mg/kg), preferably about 10 micrograms per kilogram ($\mu\text{g/kg}$) to about 5 mg/kg, of the compound or salt to the subject. A variety of dosage forms may be used, such as tablets, lozenges, capsules, parenteral formulations, syrups, creams, ointments, aerosol formulations, transdermal patches, transmucosal patches and the like.

The compounds or salts of the invention can be administered as the single therapeutic agent in the treatment regimen, or the compounds or salts of the invention may be administered in combination with one another or with other active agents, including additional immune response modifiers, antivirals, antibiotics, antibodies, proteins, peptides, oligonucleotides, etc.

Compounds or salts of the invention have been shown to induce the production of certain cytokines in experiments performed according to the test set forth below. These results indicate that the compounds or salts are useful as immune response modifiers that can modulate the immune response in a number of different ways, rendering them useful in the treatment of a variety of disorders.

Cytokines whose production may be induced by the administration of compounds or salts of the invention generally include interferon- α (IFN- α) and/or tumor necrosis factor- α (TNF- α) as well as certain interleukins (IL). Cytokines whose biosynthesis may be induced by compounds or salts of the invention include IFN- α , TNF- α , IL-1, IL-6, IL-10 and IL-12, and a variety of other cytokines. Among other effects, these and other cytokines can inhibit virus production and tumor cell growth, making the compounds or salts useful in the treatment of viral diseases and neoplastic diseases. Accordingly, the invention provides a method of inducing cytokine biosynthesis in an animal comprising administering an effective amount of a compound or salt or composition of the invention

to the animal. The animal to which the compound or salt or composition is administered for induction of cytokine biosynthesis may have a disease as described *infra*, for example a viral disease or a neoplastic disease, and administration of the compound or salt may provide therapeutic treatment. Alternatively, the compound or salt may be administered to the animal prior to the animal acquiring the disease so that administration of the compound or salt may provide a prophylactic treatment.

In addition to the ability to induce the production of cytokines, compounds or salts of the invention can affect other aspects of the innate immune response. For example, natural killer cell activity may be stimulated, an effect that may be due to cytokine induction. The compounds or salts may also activate macrophages, which in turn stimulate secretion of nitric oxide and the production of additional cytokines. Further, the compounds or salts may cause proliferation and differentiation of B-lymphocytes.

Compounds or salts of the invention can also have an effect on the acquired immune response. For example, the production of the T helper type 1 (T_H1) cytokine IFN- γ may be induced indirectly and the production of the T helper type 2 (T_H2) cytokines IL-4, IL-5 and IL-13 may be inhibited upon administration of the compounds or salts.

Whether for prophylaxis or therapeutic treatment of a disease, and whether for effecting innate or acquired immunity, the compound or salt or composition may be administered alone or in combination with one or more active components as in, for example, a vaccine adjuvant. When administered with other components, the compound or salt and other component or components may be administered separately; together but independently such as in a solution; or together and associated with one another such as (a) covalently linked or (b) non-covalently associated, e.g., in a colloidal suspension.

Conditions for which compounds or salts identified herein may be used as treatments include, but are not limited to:

(a) viral diseases such as, for example, diseases resulting from infection by an adenovirus, a herpesvirus (e.g., HSV-I, HSV-II, CMV, or VZV), a poxvirus (e.g., an orthopoxvirus such as variola or vaccinia, or molluscum contagiosum), a picornavirus (e.g., rhinovirus or enterovirus), an orthomyxovirus (e.g., influenzavirus), a paramyxovirus (e.g., parainfluenzavirus, mumps virus, measles virus, and respiratory syncytial virus (RSV)), a coronavirus (e.g., SARS), a papovavirus (e.g., papillomaviruses, such as those that cause genital warts, common warts, or plantar warts), a hepadnavirus (e.g., hepatitis B

virus), a flavivirus (e.g., hepatitis C virus or Dengue virus), or a retrovirus (e.g., a lentivirus such as HIV);

(b) bacterial diseases such as, for example, diseases resulting from infection by bacteria of, for example, the genus *Escherichia*, *Enterobacter*, *Salmonella*, *Staphylococcus*,
5 *Shigella*, *Listeria*, *Aerobacter*, *Helicobacter*, *Klebsiella*, *Proteus*, *Pseudomonas*,
Streptococcus, *Chlamydia*, *Mycoplasma*, *Pneumococcus*, *Neisseria*, *Clostridium*, *Bacillus*,
Corynebacterium, *Mycobacterium*, *Campylobacter*, *Vibrio*, *Serratia*, *Providencia*,
Chromobacterium, *Brucella*, *Yersinia*, *Haemophilus*, or *Bordetella*;

(c) other infectious diseases, such chlamydia, fungal diseases including but not
10 limited to candidiasis, aspergillosis, histoplasmosis, cryptococcal meningitis, or parasitic
diseases including but not limited to malaria, pneumocystis carinii pneumonia,
leishmaniasis, cryptosporidiosis, toxoplasmosis, and trypanosome infection;

(d) neoplastic diseases, such as intraepithelial neoplasias, cervical dysplasia,
actinic keratosis, basal cell carcinoma, squamous cell carcinoma, renal cell carcinoma,
15 Kaposi's sarcoma, melanoma, leukemias including but not limited to myelogenous
leukemia, chronic lymphocytic leukemia, multiple myeloma, non-Hodgkin's lymphoma,
cutaneous T-cell lymphoma, B-cell lymphoma, and hairy cell leukemia, and other cancers;

(e) T_H2 -mediated, atopic diseases, such as atopic dermatitis or eczema,
eosinophilia, asthma, allergy, allergic rhinitis, and Ommen's syndrome;

20 (f) certain autoimmune diseases such as systemic lupus erythematosus, essential
thrombocythaemia, multiple sclerosis, discoid lupus, alopecia areata; and

(g) diseases associated with wound repair such as, for example, inhibition of keloid
formation and other types of scarring (e.g., enhancing wound healing, including chronic
wounds).

25 Additionally, a compound or salt of the present invention may be useful as a
vaccine adjuvant for use in conjunction with any material that raises either humoral and/or
cell mediated immune response, such as, for example, live viral, bacterial, or parasitic
immunogens; inactivated viral, tumor-derived, protozoal, organism-derived, fungal, or
bacterial immunogens; toxoids; toxins; self-antigens; polysaccharides; proteins;
30 glycoproteins; peptides; cellular vaccines; DNA vaccines; autologous vaccines;
recombinant proteins; and the like, for use in connection with, for example, BCG, cholera,
plague, typhoid, hepatitis A, hepatitis B, hepatitis C, influenza A, influenza B,

parainfluenza, polio, rabies, measles, mumps, rubella, yellow fever, tetanus, diphtheria, hemophilus influenza b, tuberculosis, meningococcal and pneumococcal vaccines, adenovirus, HIV, chicken pox, cytomegalovirus, dengue, feline leukemia, fowl plague, HSV-1 and HSV-2, hog cholera, Japanese encephalitis, respiratory syncytial virus, rotavirus, papilloma virus, yellow fever, and Alzheimer's Disease.

Compounds or salts of the present invention may be particularly helpful in individuals having compromised immune function. For example, compounds or salts may be used for treating the opportunistic infections and tumors that occur after suppression of cell mediated immunity in, for example, transplant patients, cancer patients and HIV patients.

Thus, one or more of the above diseases or types of diseases, for example, a viral disease or a neoplastic disease may be treated in an animal in need thereof (having the disease) by administering a therapeutically effective amount of a compound or salt of the invention to the animal.

An amount of a compound or salt effective to induce cytokine biosynthesis is an amount sufficient to cause one or more cell types, such as monocytes, macrophages, dendritic cells and B-cells to produce an amount of one or more cytokines such as, for example, IFN- α , TNF- α , IL-1, IL-6, IL-10 and IL-12 that is increased (induced) over a background level of such cytokines. The precise amount will vary according to factors known in the art but is expected to be a dose of about 100 ng/kg to about 50 mg/kg, preferably about 10 μ g/kg to about 5 mg/kg. The invention also provides a method of treating a viral infection in an animal and a method of treating a neoplastic disease in an animal comprising administering an effective amount of a compound or salt or composition of the invention to the animal. An amount effective to treat or inhibit a viral infection is an amount that will cause a reduction in one or more of the manifestations of viral infection, such as viral lesions, viral load, rate of virus production, and mortality as compared to untreated control animals. The precise amount that is effective for such treatment will vary according to factors known in the art but is expected to be a dose of about 100 ng/kg to about 50 mg/kg, preferably about 10 μ g/kg to about 5 mg/kg. An amount of a compound or salt effective to treat a neoplastic condition is an amount that will cause a reduction in tumor size or in the number of tumor foci. Again, the precise amount will vary according to factors

known in the art but is expected to be a dose of about 100 ng/kg to about 50 mg/kg, preferably about 10 µg/kg to about 5 mg/kg.

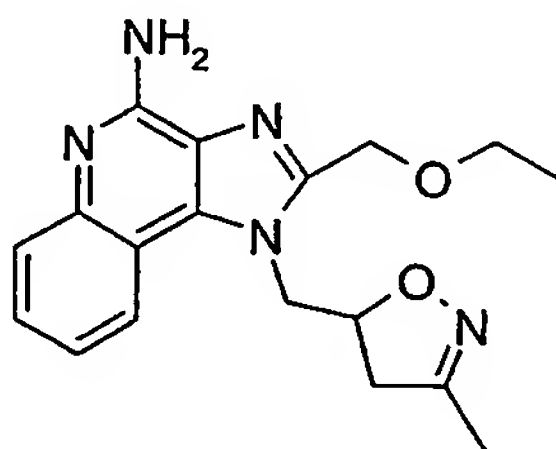
In addition to the formulations and uses described specifically herein, other formulations, uses, and administration devices suitable for compounds of the present invention are described in, for example, International Publication Nos. WO 03/077944 and
5 WO 02/036592, U.S. Patent No. 6,245,776, and U.S. Publication Nos. 2003/0139364, 2003/185835, 2004/0258698, 2004/0265351, 2004/076633, and 2005/0009858.

10 Objects and advantages of this invention are further illustrated by the following examples, but the particular materials and amounts thereof recited in these examples, as well as other conditions and details, should not be construed to unduly limit this invention.

EXAMPLES

Example 1

2-(Ethoxymethyl)-1-[(3-methyl-4,5-dihydroisoxazol-5-yl)methyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-
c]quinolin-4-amine



Part A

Triethylamine (17.0 mL, 123 mmol) was added to a 0 °C solution of 2,4-dichloro-3-nitroquinoline (20.0 g, 82.3 mmol) in dichloromethane (350 mL) followed by the dropwise addition of allylamine (5.90 mL, 78.2 mmol). The solution was allowed to stir and warm to room temperature overnight. The solvent was evaporated under reduced
25 pressure and the resulting orange solid was suspended in water (300 mL). Solid sodium carbonate was added to adjust the pH to 10-11 and the suspension was stirred for 2 hours at 0 °C. A yellow solid was isolated by filtration and dried under vacuum overnight to

yield *N*-allyl-2-chloro-3-nitroquinolin-4-amine (21.7 g) that contained small amounts of an impurity and water.

Part B

An aqueous solution (200 mL) of potassium carbonate (55.3 g, 400 mmol) and
5 sodium dithionate (62.7 g, 360 mmol) was added dropwise over 30 minutes to a mixture of
N-allyl-2-chloro-3-nitroquinolin-4-amine (21.0 g, 79.9 mmol) and ethyl viologen
dibromide (1.80 g, 4.80 mmol) in dichloromethane (320 mL) and water (40 mL) under a
nitrogen atmosphere. The dark blue-green mixture was stirred rapidly and was heated at
reflux overnight. The mixture was transferred to a separatory funnel and the layers were
10 separated. The aqueous layer was extracted with dichloromethane. The combined organic
layers were filtered through CELITE filter agent, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered,
and concentrated to a dark oil. The crude product was purified by suction filter
chromatography (silica gel, gradient elution from 3:1 to 1:3 hexanes/ethyl acetate, then 4:1
dichloromethane/ethyl acetate) to afford pure product *N*⁴-allyl-2-chloroquinoline-3,4-
15 diamine (12.06 g) along with some impure product (3.10 g).

Part C

Ethoxyacetyl chloride (8.80 g, 71.8 mmol) was added dropwise to a solution of *N*⁴-
allyl-2-chloroquinoline-3,4-diamine (15.2 g, 65.3 mmol) in acetonitrile (300 mL) at room
temperature. After 45 minutes, the reaction mixture was filtered and an orange solid
20 (approximately 17 g) was isolated. The solid was dissolved in a solution of ethanol (240
mL) and water (80 mL). Sodium hydroxide (3.92 g, 98.0 mmol) was added and the
solution was heated at reflux for 2 hours. The ethanol was removed under reduced
pressure and the remaining aqueous solution was extracted several times with
dichloromethane. The combined organic layers were dried over magnesium sulfate,
25 filtered, and concentrated to an orange solid. The solid was triturated with ethyl acetate
and isolated by filtration to yield 6 g of a pale yellow solid. The filtrate was concentrated
and purified by suction filter chromatography (silica gel with 97:3
dichloromethane/methanol as the eluent) to yield an additional 5 g of product. The
material was combined to provide 11 g of 1-allyl-4-chloro-2-(ethoxymethyl)-1*H*-
30 imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline.

Part D

To a 0 °C solution of acetaldehyde oxime (1.22 mL, 20.0 mmol) in *N,N*-dimethylformamide (DMF, 20 mL) was added *N*-chlorosuccinimide (2.67 g, 20.0 mmol) over a period of 10 minutes. After 15 minutes, the solution was warmed to 50 °C for 1 hour. After cooling to room temperature, the solution was partitioned between ice water and ethyl acetate. The aqueous layer was extracted with two additional portions of ethyl acetate. The combined organic layers were washed with water and brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated to provide *N*-hydroxyethanimidoyl chloride as a pale yellow oil.

Part E

Triethylamine (1.04 mL, 7.46 mmol) was added to a 0 °C solution of 1-allyl-4-chloro-2-(ethoxymethyl)-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline (1.50 g, 4.97 mmol) and *N*-hydroxyethanimidoyl chloride (581 mg, 6.21 mmol) in dichloromethane (80 mL). The reaction solution was allowed to warm slowly to room temperature and stir overnight under a nitrogen atmosphere. After 20 hours, the solution was washed with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate and brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated. The crude product was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, elution with 98:2 dichloromethane/methanol) to yield 4-chloro-2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-[(3-methyl-4,5-dihydroisoxazol-5-yl)methyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline (1.34 g) as a white solid.

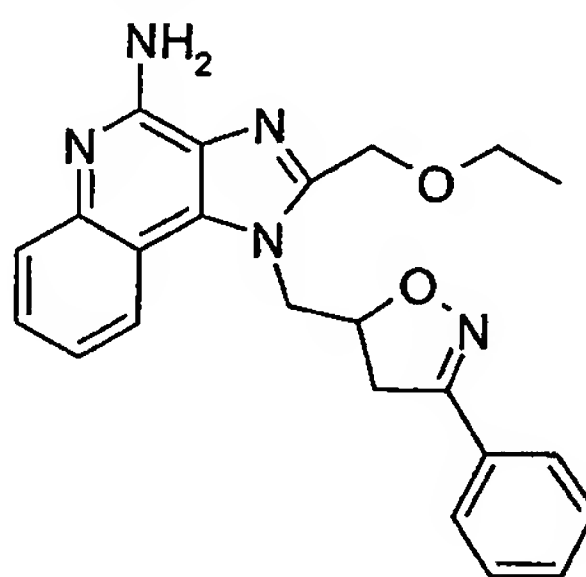
Part F

4-Chloro-2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-[(3-methyl-4,5-dihydroisoxazol-5-yl)methyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline (1.30 g, 3.62 mmol) was treated with a solution of 7 M ammonia in methanol (60 mL), and the mixture was sealed in a pressure vessel and heated at 150 °C for 24 hours. The volatiles were removed under reduced pressure, and the residue was partitioned between saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate and dichloromethane. The aqueous layer was extracted with two additional portions of dichloromethane. The combined organic layers were washed with brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated. The crude product was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, gradient elution using 98:2 to 96:4 dichloromethane/methanol) to afford 2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-[(3-methyl-4,5-dihydroisoxazol-5-yl)methyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine (1.10 g) as a white solid that was crystallized from acetonitrile to provide white needles, mp 204-205 °C.

¹H NMR (300 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.90 (dd, *J* = 8.2, 0.8 Hz, 1H), 7.83 (dd, *J* = 8.4, 0.9 Hz, 1H), 7.53 (dt, *J* = 7.1, 1.3 Hz, 1H), 7.32 (dt, *J* = 8.2, 1.2 Hz, 1H), 5.46 (br s, 2H), 5.14 (m, 1H), 4.96 (d, *J* = 12.7 Hz, 1H), 4.88 (dd, *J* = 15.4, 7.7 Hz, 1H), 4.81 (d, *J* = 12.7 Hz, 1H), 4.72 (dd, *J* = 15.4, 4.4 Hz, 1H), 3.62 (q, *J* = 7.0 Hz, 2H), 3.12 (dd, *J* = 16.9, 10.6 Hz, 1H), 2.86 (dd, *J* = 17.2, 6.5 Hz, 1H), 2.01 (s, 3H), 1.24 (t, *J* = 7.0 Hz, 3H);
MS (APCI) *m/z* 340 (*M* + H⁺);
Anal. calcd for C₁₈H₂₁N₅O₂: C, 63.70; H, 6.24; N, 20.63. Found: C, 63.44; H, 6.15; N, 21.00.

Example 2

2-(Ethoxymethyl)-1-[(3-phenyl-4,5-dihydroisoxazol-5-yl)methyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine



Part A

N-Hydroxybenzenecarboximidoyl chloride (13.7 g) was prepared according to the method described in Part D of Example 1 by reacting benzaldehyde oxime (11.5 g, 94.9 mmol) in DMF (20 mL) with *N*-chlorosuccinimide (12.6 g, 94.9 mmol) and was obtained as a white solid. Triethylamine (0.69 mL, 4.97 mmol) was added to a solution of *N*-hydroxybenzenecarboximidoyl chloride (644 mg, 4.14 mmol) and 1-allyl-4-chloro-2-(ethoxymethyl)-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline (prepared as described in Part C of Example 1, 1.00 g, 3.32 mmol) in dichloromethane (50 mL) at room temperature. The solution was stirred overnight and then was washed with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated. The crude product was purified by flash chromatography on silica gel to afford 4-chloro-2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-[(3-phenyl-4,5-dihydroisoxazol-5-yl)methyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline as a pale yellow solid (1.19 g).

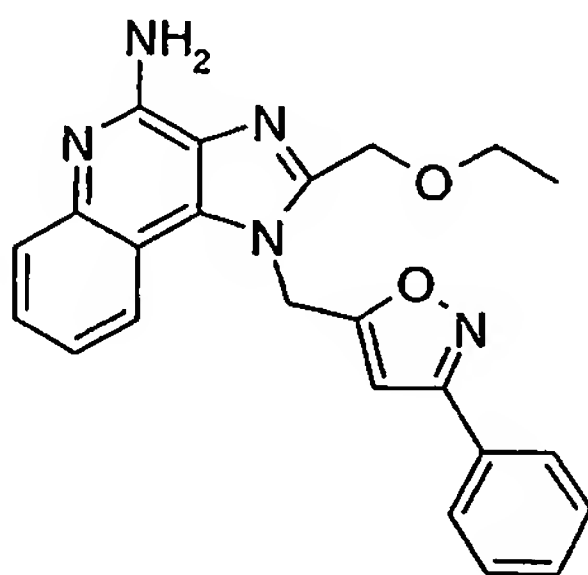
Part B

4-Chloro-2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-[(3-phenyl-4,5-dihydroisoxazol-5-yl)methyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline (1.50 g, 3.56 mmol) was treated with a solution of 7 M ammonia in methanol (30 mL) at 140 °C for 15 hours according to the method described in Part F of Example 1. Chloroform was used in the work-up procedure instead of dichloromethane. The crude product was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, elution with 97:3 dichloromethane/methanol) to afford 2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-[(3-phenyl-4,5-dihydroisoxazol-5-yl)methyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine (1.17 g) as a yellow solid. Recrystallization afforded white needles, mp 235-237 °C.

- ¹H NMR (300 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.97 (dd, *J* = 8.2, 0.9 Hz, 1H), 7.84 (dd, *J* = 8.4, 1.0 Hz, 1H), 7.67-7.64 (m, 2H), 7.53 (ddd, *J* = 8.4, 7.1, 1.3 Hz, 1H), 7.46-7.38 (m, 3H), 7.31 (ddd, *J* = 8.2, 7.1, 1.3 Hz, 1H), 5.41 (br s, 2H), 5.37-5.34 (m, 1H), 5.02-4.77 (m, 4H), 3.59 (q, *J* = 7.0 Hz, 2H), 3.53 (m, 1H), 3.34 (dd, *J* = 16.8, 6.3 Hz, 1H), 1.18 (t, *J* = 7.0 Hz, 3H); MS (APCI) *m/z* 402 (*M* + H⁺);
- Anal. calcd for C₂₃H₂₃N₅O₂: C, 68.81; H, 5.77; N, 17.44. Found: C, 68.71; H, 5.91; N, 17.44.

Example 3

2-(Ethoxymethyl)-1-[(3-phenylisoxazol-5-yl)methyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine



Part A

- Propargylamine (25 mL, 0.36 mol) was added dropwise over a period of five minutes to a 4.5 °C solution of 2,4-dichloro-3-nitroquinoline (84.4 g, 0.347 mol) and triethylamine (73 mL, 0.52 mol) in dichloromethane (1.2 L). After one hour, the solution was allowed to warm to room temperature. After several days, the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure and the resulting solid was triturated with water and isolated by filtration. The solid was rinsed with water and toluene (500 mL), then was dissolved in

dichloromethane and toluene and concentrated under reduced pressure to remove residual water. The solid was dissolved in methanol and ether and concentrated under reduced pressure to afford 2-chloro-3-nitro-*N*-prop-2-ynylquinolin-4-amine as yellow-brown solid (79.5 g) that contained some impurities and was used without further manipulation.

5 Part B

An aqueous solution (1.5 L) of sodium dithionate (265 g, 1.52 mol) was added to a solution of 2-chloro-3-nitro-*N*-prop-2-ynylquinolin-4-amine (79.3 g, 0.303 mol) in ethanol (750 mL) and acetonitrile (950 mL). A fine white precipitate formed within seconds. The reaction was worked-up after thin layer chromatography (TLC) analysis of the reaction mixture indicated that the reaction was complete. The solids were removed by filtration and the filter cake was rinsed with dichloromethane. The filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to remove the volatiles, leaving an aqueous solution that was extracted with several portions of dichloromethane. The organic layers were combined, washed with brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated to yield 2-chloro-*N*⁴-prop-2-ynylquinoline-3,4-diamine (43.5 g) that was approximately 60% pure and was used without further purification.

15 Part C

Ethoxyacetyl chloride (89%, 28 g, 0.20 mol) was added dropwise to a solution of 2-chloro-*N*⁴-prop-2-ynylquinoline-3,4-diamine (43.5 g, 0.188 mol) and triethylamine (39 mL, 0.28 mol) in dichloromethane (600 mL) at 6 °C. After two hours, the reaction mixture was diluted with dichloromethane and washed with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate. The aqueous layer was back-extracted with dichloromethane three times. The organic layers were combined and washed twice with water and brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting brown solid was triturated with toluene with heating. A fine tan solid was isolated by filtration, rinsed with diethyl ether, and dried to yield *N*-[2-chloro-4-(prop-2-ynylamino)quinolin-3-yl]-2-ethoxyacetamide (47.2 g).

25 Part D

A solution of *N*-[2-chloro-4-(prop-2-ynylamino)quinolin-3-yl]-2-ethoxyacetamide (26.7 g, 84.0 mmol) and triethylamine (17.5 mL, 126 mmol) in ethanol (250 mL) was heated at 60 °C for 1.7 days. Additional triethylamine (17.5 mL) was added and the solution was heated at 60 °C for two more days. The volatiles were removed under

reduced pressure and the resulting white solid was triturated with water, isolated by filtration, and dried to provide 4-chloro-2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-prop-2-ynyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline (24.2 g, 96%).

Part E

5 *N*-Hydroxybenzenecarboximidoyl chloride (prepared as described in Part A of Example 2, 1.72 g, 10.5 mmol) was added to a solution of 4-chloro-2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-prop-2-ynyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline (3.00 g, 10.0 mmol) and triethylamine (1.70 mL, 12.0 mmol) in dichloromethane (40 mL). The solution was heated at reflux under a nitrogen atmosphere for 3.5 hours and additional *N*-hydroxybenzenecarboximidoyl
10 chloride (0.1 g) was added. The solution was heated at reflux for one hour more, then was allowed to cool to room temperature and was diluted with dichloromethane. The solution was transferred to a separatory funnel and was washed with water and brine, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated. The crude product was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, gradient elution from 4:1 to 3:2 hexanes/ethyl acetate) to
15 provide pure 4-chloro-2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-[(3-phenylisoxazol-5-yl)methyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline (1.48 g).

Part F

 4-Chloro-2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-[(3-phenylisoxazol-5-yl)methyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline (1.48 g, 3.53 mmol) was treated with a solution of 7 M ammonia in methanol
20 (25 mL) at 150 °C for 17 hours. The volatiles were removed under reduced pressure and the resulting oil was diluted with dichloromethane and 1 M hydrochloric acid. A white solid formed and 50% aqueous sodium hydroxide was added to dissolve the solid. The aqueous layer was separated and extracted with dichloromethane. The organic layers were combined, washed with brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated to
25 an oil. Upon treatment of the oil with diethyl ether, a solid formed. The solid was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, eluting with a mixture of 95% dichloromethane and 5% of a solution of 80% chloroform, 18% methanol, and 2% NH₄OH (CMA)) followed by several recrystallizations from acetonitrile to provide 2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-[(3-phenylisoxazol-5-yl)methyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine (0.505 g) as a white
30 powder, mp 215.0-216.0 °C.

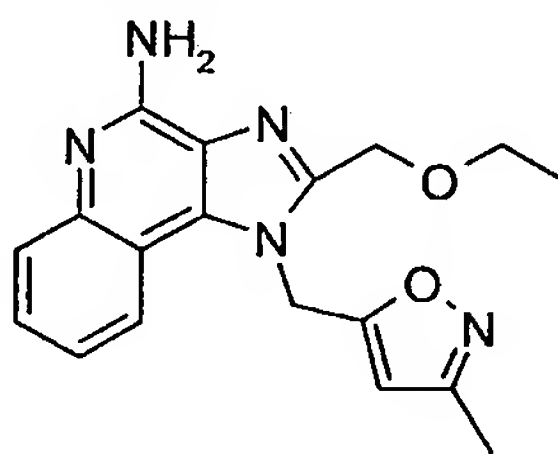
^1H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO- d_6) δ 7.98 (d, $J = 7.6$ Hz, 1H), 7.79 (m, 2H), 7.61 (d, $J = 7.5$ Hz, 1H), 7.38-7.43 (m, 4H), 7.17 (t, $J = 7.5$, 1H), 6.85 (s, 1H), 6.69 (s, 2H), 6.15 (s, 2H), 4.88 (s, 2H), 3.50 (q, $J = 6.9$, 2H), 0.99 (t, $J = 6.9$ Hz, 3H);

MS (APCI) m/z 400 ($M + H$) $^+$;

5 Anal. calcd for $\text{C}_{23}\text{H}_{21}\text{N}_5\text{O}_2$: C, 69.16; H, 5.30; N, 17.53. Found: C, 69.29; H, 5.22; N, 17.65.

Example 4

2-(Ethoxymethyl)-1-[(3-methylisoxazol-5-yl)methyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine



10

Part A

N-Hydroxyethanimidoyl chloride (prepared as described in Part D of Example 1, 2.10 g, 22.5 mmol) was added to a solution of 4-chloro-2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-prop-2-ynyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline (prepared as described in Part D of Example 3, 5.39 g, 18.0 mmol) and triethylamine (3.70 mL, 27.0 mmol) in dichloromethane (60 mL). The solution was heated at reflux for 16 hours and then was concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude product was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, gradient elution from 7:3 to 2:3 hexanes/ethyl acetate) to provide 4-chloro-2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-[(3-methylisoxazol-5-yl)methyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline (4.21 g) as a white solid.

20

Part B

A slurry of 4-chloro-2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-[(3-methylisoxazol-5-yl)methyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline (4.21 g, 11.8 mmol) in a solution of 7 M ammonia in methanol (50 mL) was heated at 150 °C for 22 hours in a Parr pressure vessel. The volatiles were removed under reduced pressure and the resulting solid was triturated with water. A tan solid was isolated and purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, gradient elution from 9:1 to 1:1 chloroform/CMA) to yield 43.2 mg of pure 2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-[(3-methylisoxazol-5-yl)methyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine as a white powder, mp 178.0-180.0 °C.

25

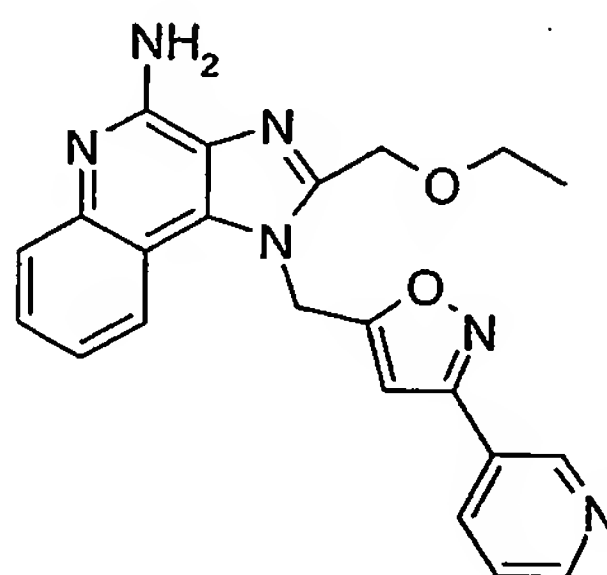
¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 7.93 (d, *J* = 7.5 Hz, 1H), 7.60 (d, *J* = 7.5 Hz, 1H), 7.41 (t, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 7.16 (t, *J* = 7.0 Hz, 1H), 6.69 (s, 2H), 6.10 (s, 1H), 6.04 (s, 2H), 4.83 (s, 2H), 3.48 (q, *J* = 7.0 Hz, 2H), 2.11 (s, 3 H), 1.05 (t, *J* = 7.0, 3H);

MS (APCI) *m/z* 338 (M + H)⁺;

5 Anal. calcd for C₁₈H₁₉N₅O₂: C, 64.08; H, 5.68; N, 20.76. Found: C, 63.74; H, 5.43; N, 20.42.

Example 5

2-(Ethoxymethyl)-1-[(3-pyridin-3-ylisoxazol-5-yl)methyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-
10 amine



Part A

3-Pyridinecarboxaldehyde oxime was prepared by treating 3-
pyridinecarboxaldehyde (10 mL, 106 mmol) with hydroxylamine hydrochloride (8.10 g,
15 117 mmol) and 50% aqueous sodium hydroxide (2 mL) in ethanol (100 mL) and water
(200 mL) for 17 hours. The solution was adjusted to pH 14 with the addition of 50%
(w/w) aqueous sodium hydroxide. The solution was extracted with several portions of
dichloromethane. The combined organic layers were washed with brine, dried over
magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to yield 8.3 g of a
20 white solid. The aqueous layers were combined and back-extracted with chloroform (5 x
1 L) to yield additional product. The total amount of 3-pyridinecarboxaldehyde oxime
obtained was 12.24 g.

Part B

N-Chlorosuccinimide (1.09 g, 8.19 mmol) was added to a 6 °C solution of 3-
25 pyridinecarboxaldehyde oxime (1.00 g, 8.19 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (THF) (25 mL).
The solution was heated at 50 °C for 2 h. 4-Chloro-2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-prop-2-ynyl-1*H*-
imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline (prepared as described in Part D of Example 3, 1.96 g, 6.55

mmol) and triethylamine (1.70 mL, 12.3 mmol) were added to the reaction, which was heated at 50 °C for 17 hours. The volatiles were removed under reduced pressure and the residue was partitioned between dichloromethane and saturated aqueous potassium carbonate. The aqueous layer was extracted multiple times with dichloromethane and chloroform. The organic layers were combined, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated. The crude product was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, gradient elution with 1:1 to 1:4 hexanes/ethyl acetate) to yield 4-chloro-2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-[(3-pyridin-3-ylisoxazol-5-yl)methyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline (1.52 g).

Part C

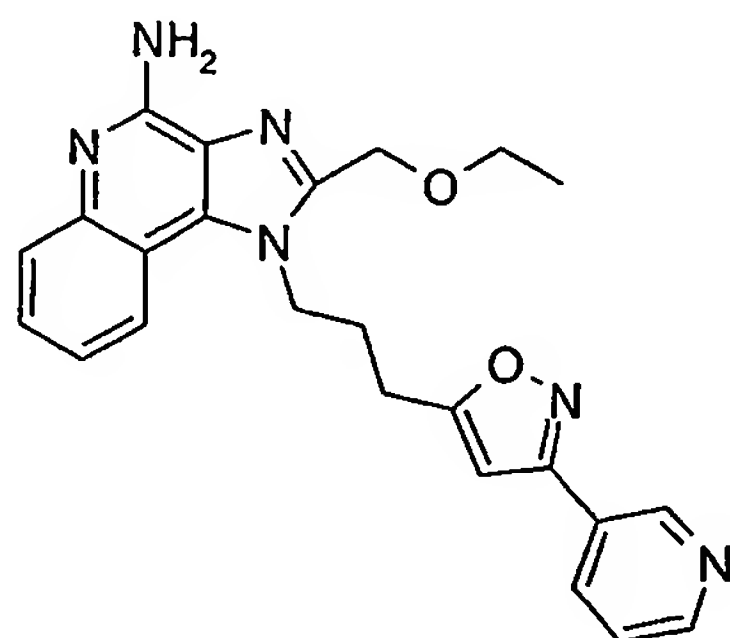
A slurry of 4-chloro-2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-[(3-pyridin-3-ylisoxazol-5-yl)methyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline (1.52 g, 3.62 mmol) in a solution of 7 M ammonia in methanol (15 mL) was heated at 150 °C for 20 hours in a Parr pressure vessel. The volatiles were removed under reduced pressure and the resulting residue was partitioned between dichloromethane and 1 M aqueous sodium hydroxide. The aqueous layer was extracted with several portions of dichloromethane. The organic phases were combined, washed with brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude product was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, gradient elution 10% to 30% CMA/chloroform) to yield 2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-[(3-pyridin-3-ylisoxazol-5-yl)methyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine (653 mg, 45%) as white powder that was dried under vacuum at 70 °C, mp 240.0-242.0 °C. ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 8.99 (d, *J* = 1.7 Hz, 1H), 8.64 (dd, *J* = 3.2, 1.6 Hz, 1H), 8.16-8.20 (m, 1H), 7.97 (d, *J* = 7.5 Hz, 1H), 7.61 (d, *J* = 7.4 Hz, 1H), 7.41-7.50 (m, 2H), 7.17 (t, *J* = 7.0 Hz, 1H), 6.97 (s, 1H), 6.17 (s, 2H), 5.75 (s, 2H), 4.88 (s, 2H), 3.50 (q, *J* = 7.0 Hz, 2H), 0.98 (t, *J* = 7.0, 3H);

MS (APCI) *m/z* 401 (M + H)⁺;

Anal. calcd for C₂₂H₂₀N₆O₂•0.1CH₂Cl₂: C, 64.91; H, 4.98; N, 20.55. Found: C, 64.70; H, 4.95; N, 20.70.

Example 6

2-(Ethoxymethyl)-1-[3-(3-pyridin-3-ylisoxazol-5-yl)propyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine



5 Part A

p-Toluenesulfonyl chloride (21.4 g, 112 mmol) was added slowly to a stirred solution of 4-pentyn-1-ol (11.5 mL, 124 mmol) and triethylamine (17.2 mL, 124 mmol) in dichloromethane (100 mL) at room temperature. After 22 hours, the solution was diluted with dichloromethane, washed with water, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated. The crude product was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, gradient elution from 95:5 to 85:15 hexanes/ethyl acetate) to afford the product pent-4-ynyl 4-methylbenzenesulfonate (23.4 g, 87%) as a colorless oil.

Part B

A mixture of pent-4-ynyl 4-methylbenzenesulfonate (23.4 g, 98.2 mmol) and sodium azide (16.6 g, 255 mmol) in DMF (80 mL) was heated at 60 °C for 3.5 hours. The reaction was allowed to cool to room temperature and water was added until the remaining sodium azide dissolved. The solution was extracted with several portions of diethyl ether. The combined organic layers were washed with water, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated to an oil. The oil was dissolved in diethyl ether (80 mL) and cooled to 0 °C. Triphenylphosphine (25.8 g, 98.2 mmol) was added and gas evolution was observed. After 19 hours, water (10 mL) and tetrahydrofuran (50 mL) were added and the mixture was stirred for 20 hours at room temperature. The mixture was partitioned between 1 M hydrochloric acid (400 mL) and dichloromethane (400 mL). The aqueous phase was washed with dichloromethane. The aqueous phase was concentrated under reduced pressure to a white solid that was crystallized from ethanol/water to yield pent-4-yn-1-amine hydrochloride as a white powder (8.15 g).

Part C

Pent-4-yn-1-amine hydrochloride (5.48 g, 45.8 mmol) was added to a 6 °C solution of 2,4-dichloro-3-nitroquinoline (10.6 g, 43.6 mmol) and triethylamine (15.2 mL, 109 mmol) in dichloromethane (100 mL). After 30 minutes, the solution was allowed to warm to room temperature. After 5 hours, the volatiles were removed under reduced pressure and the solid residue was triturated with water and isolated by filtration. The filter cake was rinsed with water and toluene and was allowed to dry for several days to yield 2-chloro-3-nitro-*N*-pent-4-ynylquinolin-4-amine as an orange solid (13.16 g).

Part D

An aqueous solution (125 mL) of sodium dithionate (38.0 g, 218 mmol) was added to a solution of 2-chloro-3-nitro-*N*-pent-4-ynylquinolin-4-amine (12.64 g, 43.63 mmol) in ethanol (15 mL) and acetonitrile (130 mL). A fine white precipitate formed within seconds. After 2.5 hours, the volatiles were removed under reduced pressure leaving a yellow aqueous mixture that was diluted with water (1 L) and washed with dichloromethane (250 mL x 3). The organic layers were combined, washed with water and brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated to yield 2-chloro-*N*⁴-pent-4-ynylquinoline-3,4-diamine as an amber oil (8.10 g) that was used without further purification.

Part E

Ethoxyacetyl chloride (96%, 4.40 g, 34.3 mmol) was added to a 6 °C solution of 2-chloro-*N*⁴-pent-4-ynylquinoline-3,4-diamine (8.10 g, 31.2 mmol) and triethylamine (6.50 mL, 46.8 mmol) in dichloromethane (100 mL). Additional ethoxyacetyl chloride (3.0 g) was added after 45 minutes until all the starting material had been consumed. The solution was diluted with dichloromethane and washed with saturated aqueous potassium carbonate, water, and brine, dried over potassium carbonate, filtered, and concentrated to afford *N*-[2-chloro-4-(pent-4-ynylamino)quinolin-3-yl]-2-ethoxyacetamide as a pale yellow solid (10.23 g).

Part F

A solution of *N*-[2-chloro-4-(pent-4-ynylamino)quinolin-3-yl]-2-ethoxyacetamide (10.23 g, 29.58 mmol) and 6 M aqueous potassium carbonate (7.40 mL, 44.4 mmol) in 9:1 ethanol/water (100 mL) was heated at 50°C for 16 hours. The volatiles were removed under reduced pressure and the resulting slurry was partitioned between ethyl acetate and

water. The organic phase was washed with water (2 x) and brine (2 x), dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated to afford 4-chloro-2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-pent-4-ynyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline as a slightly impure tan solid (9.5 g).

Part G

5 4-Chloro-2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-pent-4-ynyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline (3.65 g, 11.1 mmol) was converted to 4-chloro-2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-[3-(3-pyridin-3-ylisoxazol-5-yl)propyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline (1.78 g, 36%) following the method described in Parts A and B of Example 5.

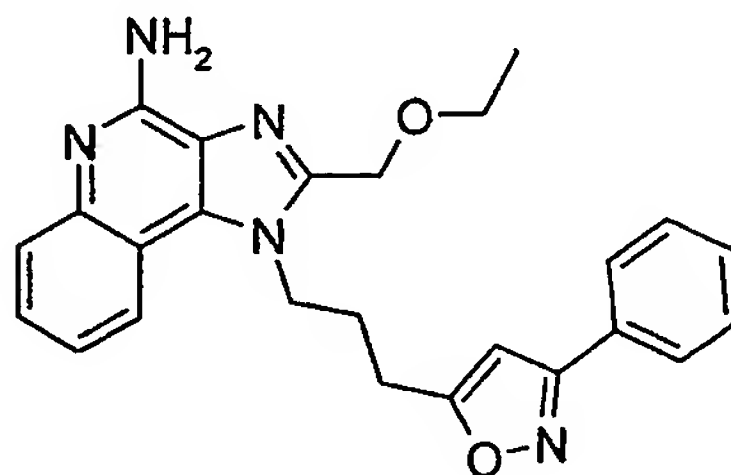
Part H

10 A slurry of 4-chloro-2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-[3-(3-pyridin-3-ylisoxazol-5-yl)propyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline (1.78 g, 3.97 mmol) in a solution of 7 M ammonia in methanol (20 mL) was heated at 150 °C for 20 hours in a Parr pressure vessel. The volatiles were removed under reduced pressure and the resulting oil was partitioned between dichloromethane and 1 M KOH. The aqueous layer was extracted with
15 dichloromethane. The organic layers were combined, washed with water and brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated. The crude product was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, gradient elution from 9:1 to 4:1 chloroform/CMA). After concentration of the appropriate fractions, a white solid was obtained. The white solid was triturated with diethyl ether and dried at 80 °C under vacuum to provide 2-
20 (ethoxymethyl)-1-[3-(3-pyridin-3-ylisoxazol-5-yl)propyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine as a white powder, mp 199.0-200.0 °C.

¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 8.99 (d, *J* = 2.5 Hz, 1H), 8.66 (dd, *J* = 3.2, 1.7 Hz, 1H), 8.13 (dt, *J* = 8.2, 1.9 Hz, 1H), 7.83 (t, *J* = 8.0 Hz, 2H), 7.51 (t, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 1 H), 7.40 (m, 1 H), 7.29 (t, *J* = 7.0 Hz, 1 H), 6.44 (s, 1H), 5.45 (s, 2H), 4.80 (s, 2H), 4.68 (t, *J* = 7.9 Hz, 2H), 3.61 (q, *J* = 7.0 Hz, 2H), 3.06 (t, *J* = 7.3 Hz, 2H), 2.47 (m, 2H), 1.23 (t, *J* = 7.0, 3H);
25 MS (APCI) *m/z* 429 (M + H)⁺;

Anal. calcd for C₂₄H₂₄N₆O₂•0.4 H₂O: C, 66.16; H, 5.74; N, 19.29. Found: C, 66.53; H, 5.70; N, 18.93.

Example 7

2-(Ethoxymethyl)-1-[3-(3-phenylisoxazol-5-yl)propyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine

5 Part A

N-Hydroxybenzenecarboximidoyl chloride (prepared as described in Part A of Example 2, 2.61 g, 16.8 mmol) was added to a solution of 4-chloro-2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-pent-4-ynyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline (prepared as described in Part F of Example 6, 2.90 g, 8.39 mmol) and triethylamine (3.50 mL, 25.2 mmol) in dichloromethane at 6 °C. The solution was heated at 50 °C under a nitrogen atmosphere for 4 hours. The solution was diluted with dichloromethane, transferred to a separatory funnel, washed with water and brine, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated to an oil. The oil was triturated with hexanes and the solvent was decanted. The oil was triturated with diethyl ether and a solid formed that was isolated by filtration to provide 4-chloro-2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-[3-(3-phenylisoxazol-5-yl)propyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline (1.98 g). The filtrate was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, gradient elution from 7:3 to 1:1 hexanes/ethyl acetate) to provide an additional 0.24 g of product. The total amount of 4-chloro-2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-[3-(3-phenylisoxazol-5-yl)propyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline isolated was 2.22 g.

20 Part B

A mixture of 4-chloro-2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-[3-(3-phenylisoxazol-5-yl)propyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline (2.22 g, 4.97 mmol) in a solution of 7 M ammonia in methanol (25 mL) was heated at 150 °C for 17 hours in a Parr pressure vessel. The volatiles were removed under reduced pressure and the resulting solid was triturated with 1 M aqueous sodium hydroxide and isolated by filtration. The crude product was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, gradient elution from 10% to 20% CMA in chloroform). The appropriate fractions were combined and concentrated to yield a solid that was triturated with hot diethyl ether and 9:1 dichloromethane/methanol (10 mL). The final material was

dried at 80 °C under vacuum to yield 2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-[3-(3-phenylisoxazol-5-yl)propyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine (954 mg) as a white powder, mp 171.0-172.0 °C.

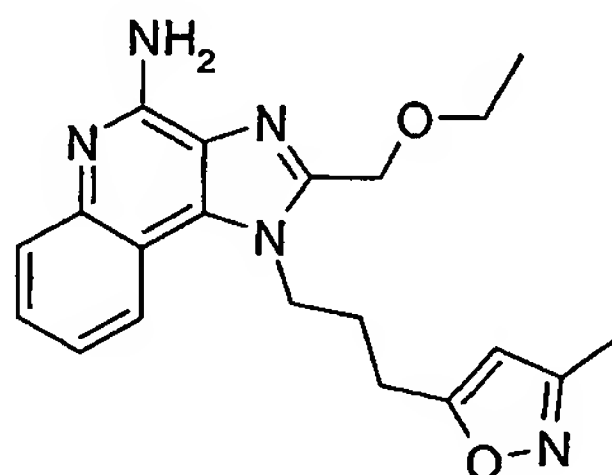
¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 7.99 (d, *J* = 7.7 Hz, 1H), 7.83-7.85 (m, 2H), 7.62 (d, *J* = 7.4 Hz, 1H), 7.46-7.52 (m, 3H), 7.46 (t, *J* = 8.1 Hz, 1H), 7.21 (t, *J* = 7.0 Hz, 1H), 6.90 (s, 1H), 6.60 (s, 2H), 4.77 (s, 2H), 4.68 (t, *J* = 7.8 Hz, 2H), 3.53 (q, *J* = 7.0 Hz, 2H), 3.09 (t, *J* = 7.4 Hz, 2H), 2.30 (m, 2H), 1.12 (t, *J* = 7.0 Hz, 3H);

MS (APCI) *m/z* 428 (M + H)⁺;

Anal. calcd for C₂₅H₂₅N₅O₂: C, 70.24; H, 5.89; N, 16.38. Found: C, 69.97; H, 6.02; N, 16.52.

Example 8

2-(Ethoxymethyl)-1-[3-(3-methylisoxazol-5-yl)propyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine



Part A

In the presence of triethylamine (5.2 mL, 10.7 mmol) in a solution of THF (50 mL), 4-chloro-2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-pent-4-ynyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline (prepared as described in Part F of Example 6, 3.50 g, 10.7 mmol) was reacted with *N*-hydroxyethanimidoyl chloride that was generated from acetaldehyde oxime (1.90 g, 32.1 mmol) and *N*-chlorosuccinimide (4.30 g, 32.1 mmol) using the method described in Part B of Example 5. The crude product was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, gradient elution with 4:1 to 2:3 hexanes/ethyl acetate). The appropriate fractions were combined and concentrated to provide a solid that was triturated with diethylether. The solid was isolated by filtration and dried to yield 4-chloro-2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-[3-(3-methylisoxazol-5-yl)propyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline (1.87 g) as a white solid.

Part B

4-Chloro-2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-[3-(3-methylisoxazol-5-yl)propyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline (1.87 g, 4.86 mmol) was treated with a solution of 7 M ammonia in methanol (20 mL) according to the procedure described in Part C of Example 5. The crude product was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, gradient elution from 5% to 20% CMA in chloroform). The appropriate fractions were combined and concentrated to yield a solid that was triturated with 9:1 dichloromethane/methanol. The final material was dried under vacuum to yield 2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-[3-(3-methylisoxazol-5-yl)propyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine (1.29 mg) as a white powder, mp 163.0-164.0 °C.

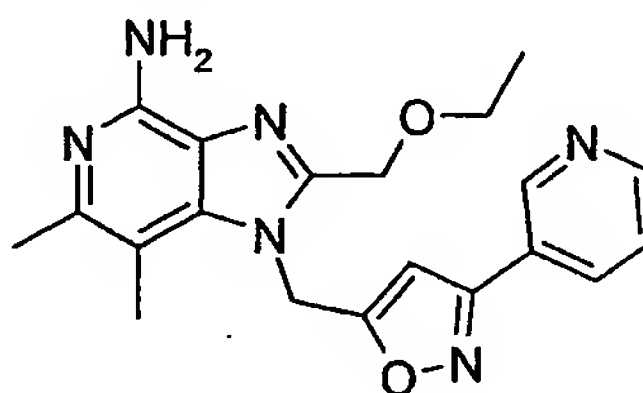
¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 7.95 (d, *J* = 8.1 Hz, 1H), 7.62 (d, *J* = 7.6 Hz, 1H), 7.44 (t, *J* = 7.4 Hz, 1H), 7.22 (t, *J* = 7.5 Hz, 1H), 6.59 (s, 2H), 6.18 (s, 1H), 4.75 (s, 2H), 4.62 (t, *J* = 7.7 Hz, 2H), 3.53 (q, *J* = 7.0 Hz, 2H), 2.96 (t, *J* = 7.4 Hz, 2H), 2.23 (m, 5H), 1.14 (t, *J* = 7.0 Hz, 3H);

MS (APCI) *m/z* 366 (*M* + *H*)⁺;

Anal. calcd for C₂₀H₂₃N₅O₂: C, 65.74; H, 6.34; N, 19.16. Found: C, 65.41; H, 6.41; N, 19.15.

Example 9

2-(Ethoxymethyl)-6,7-dimethyl-1-[(3-pyridin-3-ylisoxazol-5-yl)methyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine



Part A

To dichloromethane (10 mL) at -78 °C was added dimethylsulfoxide (0.37 mL, 5.17 mmol) and oxalyl chloride (0.33 mL, 3.79 mmol). After several minutes, a solution of 2-[8-(ethoxymethyl)-5,6-dimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetraazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl]ethanol (prepared as described in U.S. Patent No. 6,797,718, 1.00 g, 3.44 mmol) in dichloromethane (40 mL) was added dropwise followed by triethylamine (1.5 mL, 10.3 mmol). The mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and more dichloromethane (80 mL) was added. The solution was transferred to a separatory funnel

and washed with saturated aqueous potassium carbonate, water, and brine. The aqueous layers were combined and back-extracted with dichloromethane. The organic phases were combined, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to yield the product [8-(ethoxymethyl)-5,6-dimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetraazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl]acetaldehyde as a tan solid (0.86 g).

Part B

Diethyl 1-diazo-2-oxopropylphosphonate (0.90 g, 3.6 mmol) was prepared by the method of Bestmann, H. J. *et al.*, *Synlett*, pp. 521-522 (1996) and added to a mixture of [8-(ethoxymethyl)-5,6-dimethyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetraazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridin-7-yl]acetaldehyde (0.86 g, 3.0 mmol) and potassium carbonate (0.82 g, 6.0 mmol) in methanol (10 mL) at room temperature. After 2.5 hours, the reaction was filtered and the filter cake was rinsed with a mixture of dichloromethane and methanol. The filtrate was diluted with dichloromethane and washed with water (2 x) and brine (2 x). The aqueous phases were combined and back-extracted with dichloromethane. The organic portions were combined, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated. The yellow solid was triturated with diethyl ether and dried under vacuum to provide the slight impure product 8-(ethoxymethyl)-5,6-dimethyl-7-prop-2-ynyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetraazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridine (0.442 g) that was used without further purification.

Part C

In the presence of triethylamine (0.50 mL, 3.4 mmol), 8-(ethoxymethyl)-5,6-dimethyl-7-prop-2-ynyl-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetraazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridine (0.442 g, 1.55 mmol) was reacted with *N*-hydroxypyridine-3-carboximidoyl chloride generated from 3-pyridinecarboxyaldehyde oxime (prepared as described in Part A of Example 5, 0.38 g, 3.11 mmol) and *N*-chlorosuccinimide (0.42 g, 3.11 mmol) in THF (5 mL) using the method described in Part B of Example 5. After purification by flash chromatography (silica gel, elution with 95:5 dichloromethane/methanol) and trituration in diethyl ether, the product 8-(ethoxymethyl)-5,6-dimethyl-7-[(3-pyridin-3-ylisoxazol-5-yl)methyl]-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetraazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridine was obtained (0.171 g) as a white powder.

Part D

A mixture of 8-(ethoxymethyl)-5,6-dimethyl-7-[(3-pyridin-3-ylisoxazol-5-yl)methyl]-7*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]tetraazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridine (0.1712 g, 0.423 mmol) and triphenylphosphine (0.120 g, 0.466 mmol) in toluene (2 mL) was heated at reflux for five

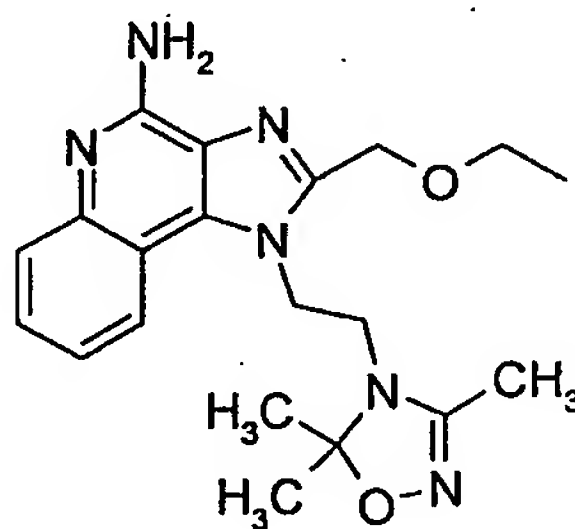
days. The solvent was removed and the resulting brown solvent was dissolved in 1 M hydrogen chloride in methanol (5 mL). The solution was heated at reflux for four hours and then concentrated to an oil. The oil was dissolved in hot water. A precipitate formed and was isolated by filtration. The filtrate was washed five times with dichloromethane and then adjusted to pH 14 with 50% (w/w) aqueous sodium hydroxide, resulting in a brown precipitate. The mixture was extracted with several portions of dichloromethane that were combined, washed with water and brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated. The resulting white solid was triturated with diethyl ether and dried to yield 2-(ethoxymethyl)-6,7-dimethyl-1-[(3-pyridin-3-ylisoxazol-5-yl)methyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine as a white powder, mp 189.0-191.0 °C.

¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 9.04 (d, *J* = 1.5 Hz, 1H), 8.66 (dd, *J* = 3.2, 1.6 Hz, 1H), 8.23 (dt, *J* = 8.0, 1.8 Hz, 1H), 7.48-7.52 (m, 1H), 6.92 (s, 1H), 5.91 (s, 2H), 5.86 (s, 2H), 4.74 (s, 2H), 3.45 (q, *J* = 7.0 Hz, 2H), 2.30 (s, 3H), 2.28 (s, 3H), 0.97 (t, *J* = 7.0 Hz, 3H); MS (APCI) *m/z* 379 (M + H)⁺;

Anal. calcd for C₂₀H₂₂N₆O₂: C, 63.48; H, 5.86; N, 22.21. Found: C, 63.20; H, 6.03; N, 21.94.

Example 10

2-Ethoxymethyl-1-[2-(3,5,5-trimethyl-1,2,4-oxadiazol-4(5*H*)-yl)ethyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine



Part A

1,2-Diaminoethane (7.55 mL, 113 mmol) was added to a 0 °C solution of 2,4-dichloro-3-nitroquinoline (28.9 g, 119 mmol) and triethylamine (24.9 mL, 179 mmol) in dichloromethane (600 mL). The solution was allowed to warm slowly to room temperature and stir for 20 hours. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure and 5% aqueous Na₂CO₃ (300 mL) was added. The resulting slurry was stirred vigorously at 0

°C for four hours. A yellow solid was isolated by vacuum filtration and dried under vacuum. The solid was purified by suction filter chromatography (silica gel, gradient elution from 98:2 to 93:7 dichloromethane/methanol) to provide the product *N*-(2-chloro-3-nitroquinolin-4-yl)ethane-1,2-diamine (16.0 g) that contained a small amount of an impurity.

Part B

Triethylamine (3.12 mL, 22.4 mmol) was added to a slurry of *N*-(2-chloro-3-nitroquinolin-4-yl)ethane-1,2-diamine (3.00 g, 11.2 mmol) in dichloromethane (80 mL). A solution of di-*tert*-butyl carbonate (2.95 g, 13.5 mmol) in dichloromethane (20 mL) was added over 5 minutes to the slurry. The solution was stirred at room temperature for three hours and then was partitioned between dichloromethane and saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate. The aqueous layer was extracted with dichloromethane. The organic layers were combined and washed with brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated to an orange solid. The crude product was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, 3:1 hexanes/ethyl acetate as the eluent) to afford *tert*-butyl 2-[(2-chloro-3-nitroquinolin-4-yl)amino]ethylcarbamate (3.70 g) as a bright yellow solid.

Part C

A solution of Na₂S₂O₄ (10.3 g, 50.4 mmol) in water (40 mL) was added to a solution of *tert*-butyl 2-[(2-chloro-3-nitroquinolin-4-yl)amino]ethylcarbamate (3.70 g, 10.1 mmol). A white solid precipitated immediately and after 30 min the precipitate was removed by filtration. The filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure, was diluted with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate, and was extracted with dichloromethane three times. The combined organic layers were washed with brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated to a pale yellow oil. Purification by flash chromatography (silica gel, gradient elution with 2:1 to 1:1 hexanes/ethyl acetate) afforded *tert*-butyl 2-[(3-amino-2-chloroquinolin-4-yl)amino]ethylcarbamate (2.14 g) as a colorless oil.

Part D

A solution of ethoxyacetyl chloride (857 mg, 6.99 mmol) in acetonitrile (5 mL) was added to solution of *tert*-butyl 2-[(3-amino-2-chloroquinolin-4-yl)amino]ethylcarbamate (2.14 g, 6.35 mmol) in acetonitrile (20 mL). After five minutes, the solution was cooled in an ice bath and a white precipitate began to form. After one

hour, the precipitate was isolated by filtration and dried under vacuum to afford the hydrochloride salt of *tert*-butyl 2-({2-chloro-3-[(ethoxyacetyl)amino]quinolin-4-yl}amino)ethylcarbamate (2.50 g).

Part E

5 To a solution of the hydrochloride salt of *tert*-butyl 2-({2-chloro-3-[(ethoxyacetyl)amino]quinolin-4-yl}amino)ethylcarbamate (2.50 g, 5.44 mmol) in 9:1 ethanol/water (50 mL) was added a solution of potassium carbonate (1.12 g, 8.16 mmol) in water (5 mL). The solution was heated to 50 °C for five hours. The solution was concentrated under reduced pressure and the residue was partitioned between saturated
10 aqueous sodium bicarbonate and dichloromethane. The aqueous layer was extracted with two additional portions of dichloromethane. The combined organic layers were washed with brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated to a pale yellow solid that was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, gradient elution from 1:1 to 4:1 ethyl acetate/hexane) to afford the *tert*-butyl 2-(4-chloro-2-ethoxymethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-
15 c]quinolin-1-yl)ethylcarbamate as a white solid (1.55 g).

Part F

A solution of *tert*-butyl 2-(4-chloro-2-ethoxymethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-1-yl)ethylcarbamate (1.55 g, 3.83 mmol) in a solution of 4 M hydrogen chloride in dioxane (15 mL) was stirred at room temperature for two hours. An aqueous solution of 2 M
20 sodium hydroxide was added to adjust the reaction to pH 13. The solution was extracted with several portions of dichloromethane. The combined organic layers were washed with brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated. The crude product was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, gradient elution from 97:3 to 97:5 dichloromethane/methanol) to afford 2-(4-chloro-2-ethoxymethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-
25 c]quinolin-1-yl)ethylamine (760 mg) as a white solid.

Part G

A mixture of 2-(4-chloro-2-ethoxymethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-1-yl)ethylamine (760 mg, 2.49 mmol) and magnesium sulfate in 9:1 dichloromethane/acetone was stirred at room temperature for four hours. The mixture was
30 filtered and the filtrate was concentrated. The residue was dissolved in dichloromethane (20 mL) and added to *N*-hydroxyethanimidoyl chloride (3.11 mmol). The *N*-hydroxyethanimidoyl chloride was prepared as follows: to a 0 °C solution of acetaldehyde

oxime (184 mg, 3.11 mmol) in DMF (10 mL) was added *N*-chlorosuccinimide (415 mg, 3.11 mmol) over a period of five minutes. After 15 minutes, the solution was warmed to 50 °C for one hour. The solution was partitioned between water and ethyl acetate. The aqueous layer was extracted with two additional portions of ethyl acetate. The combined organic layers were washed with water and brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated to provide *N*-hydroxyethanimidoyl chloride as a pale yellow oil. The dichloromethane solution from above was cooled in an ice bath and triethylamine (0.52 mL, 3.73 mmol) was added, resulting in the formation of a white precipitate. The mixture was allowed to warm slowly to room temperature and stir overnight. The solution was washed with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate and brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated. The crude product was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, gradient elution from 98:2 to 96:4 dichloromethane/methanol) to yield 4-chloro-2-ethoxymethyl-1-[2-(3,5,5-trimethyl-1,2,4-oxadiazol-4(5*H*)-yl)ethyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline (680 mg) as a white solid.

Part H

A slurry of 4-chloro-2-ethoxymethyl-1-[2-(3,5,5-trimethyl-1,2,4-oxadiazol-4(5*H*)-yl)ethyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline (670 mg, 1.67 mmol) in a solution of 7 M ammonia in methanol (20 mL) was sealed in a pressure vessel and heated to 150 °C. After 15 hours, the volatiles were removed under reduced pressure and the residue was partitioned between saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate and dichloromethane. The aqueous layer was extracted with two additional portions of dichloromethane. The combined organic layers were washed with brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated. The crude product was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, gradient elution from 97:3 to 95:5 dichloromethane/methanol) to afford 2-ethoxymethyl-1-[2-(3,5,5-trimethyl-1,2,4-oxadiazol-4(5*H*)-yl)ethyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine (350 mg) as a white solid that was recrystallized from acetonitrile to give white needles, mp 204-205 °C.

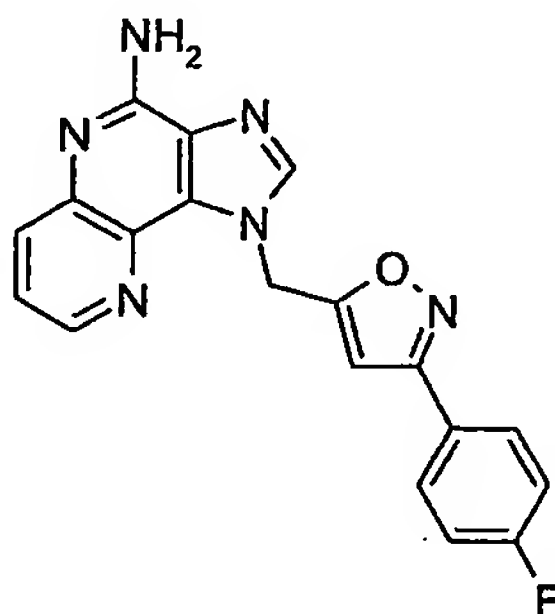
¹H NMR (300 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.96 (dd, *J* = 8.2, 1.0 Hz, 1H), 7.86 (dd, *J* = 8.4, 1.0 Hz, 1H), 7.57 (ddd, *J* = 8.4, 7.1, 1.3 Hz, 1H), 7.35 (ddd, *J* = 8.3, 7.1, 1.3 Hz, 1H), 5.46 (br s, 2H), 4.83 (s, 2H), 4.80 (t, *J* = 6.9 Hz, 2H), 3.66-3.57 (m, 4H), 1.85 (s, 3H), 1.39 (s, 6H), 1.25 (t, *J* = 7.0 Hz, 3H);

MS (APCI) *m/z* 383 (*M* + *H*⁺);

Anal. calcd for $C_{20}H_{26}N_6O_2$: C, 62.81; H, 6.85; N, 21.97. Found: C, 62.83; H, 7.20; N, 22.13.

Example 11

5 1-[[3-(4-Fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*][1,5]naphthyridin-4-amine



Part A

Propargylamine (54 mL, 0.98 mol) was added over a period of one hour to a suspension of 4-chloro-3-nitro[1,5]naphthyridine (186.4 g, 0.889 mol) and triethylamine (186 mL, 1.33 mol) in THF (1 L) while maintaining the reaction temperature at 25 °C. The reaction was stirred for 45 minutes, and then deionized water (21 mL per gram of expected product) was added. The resulting suspension was stirred for about one hour and filtered to isolate a solid. The solid was washed with water until the filtrate was pH neutral and then dried under vacuum at 65 °C to provide 181.2 g of 3-nitro-*N*-prop-2-ynyl[1,5]naphthyridin-4-amine as a brown solid.

Part B

Aqueous sodium hydroxide (70 mL of 50% w/w) was added to a solution of 4-fluorobenzaldehyde (140.5 g, 1.132 mol) and hydroxylamine hydrochloride (86.5 g, 1.25 mol) in ethanol (1 L) and water (2 L), and the reaction was stirred at room temperature for one hour and then adjusted to pH 14 with the addition of 50% w/w aqueous sodium hydroxide. The mixture was extracted with several portions of dichloromethane and then several portions of chloroform. The combined extracts were concentrated under reduced pressure approximately one liter, filtered through a layer of CELITE filter agent and sodium sulfate, and concentrated again under reduced pressure to yield 127 g of 4-fluorobenzaldehyde oxime as a white solid.

Part C

N-Chlorosuccinimide (85.5 g, 438 mmol) was added to a solution of 4-fluorobenzaldehyde oxime (61.0 g, 438 mmol) in DMF (100 mL) at room temperature; an exotherm occurred. After the addition, the solution was heated at 40 °C for 30 minutes under nitrogen. The solution was poured onto ice and extracted with chloroform. The combined extracts were washed with brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure, and further dried under high vacuum for 16 hours to provide 52.23 g of 4-fluoro-*N*-hydroxybenzenecarboximidoyl chloride as an amber oil.

Part D

Under a nitrogen atmosphere, 4-fluoro-*N*-hydroxybenzenecarboximidoyl chloride (7.6 g, 44 mmol) was added to a heated solution (40 °C) of 3-nitro-*N*-prop-2-ynyl[1,5]naphthyridin-4-amine (5.0 g, 22 mmol) and anhydrous triethylamine (6.7 mL, 48 mmol) in anhydrous dichloromethane (150 mL). The reaction was heated at 40 °C for 1.7 hours and then concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was triturated with water; the resulting solid was isolated by filtration, washed sequentially with toluene and a small amount of diethyl ether, and then dissolved in dichloromethane. The solution was concentrated under reduced pressure and dried under high vacuum to provide 6.00 g of *N*-{[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}-3-nitro[1,5]naphthyridin-4-amine as a brownish-yellow solid.

Part E

A Parr vessel was charged with 5% platinum on carbon (0.12 g), purged with nitrogen, and then charged sequentially with toluene (2 mL), *N*-{[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}-3-nitro[1,5]naphthyridin-4-amine (6.00 g, 16.4 mmol), toluene (73 mL), and isopropanol (5 mL). The vessel was purged with hydrogen three times and then placed under hydrogen pressure (50 psi, 3.4×10^5 Pa) for 16 hours. An analysis by high-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) indicated the presence of starting material. The catalyst was removed by filtration and washed with hot dichloromethane and methanol. The filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure, and the residue was dissolved in hot methanol (100 mL) and added to a Parr vessel. Catalytic 5% platinum on carbon (0.12 g) was added, and the reaction was placed under hydrogen pressure (50 psi, 3.4×10^5 Pa) for four hours. The catalyst was removed by filtration, and

the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to provide *N*⁴-{[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}[1,5]naphthyridine-3,4-diamine.

Part F

Triethyl orthoformate (4.1 mL, 25 mmol) was added to a solution of the material from Part E and pyridine hydrochloride (0.04 g, 0.3 mmol) in toluene (1 L), and the reaction was heated at 110 °C in a nitrogen atmosphere for 1.5 hours. A Dean-Stark trap was used to collect the volatiles. The reaction mixture was then concentrated under reduced pressure, and the residue was partitioned between dichloromethane and 1 N aqueous sodium hydroxide. The aqueous fraction was extracted several times with dichloromethane, and the combined organic fractions were washed with water and brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting solid was triturated with a mixture of diethyl ether and hexane, isolated by filtration, and dried under vacuum to provide 2.76 g of 1-{[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*][1,5]naphthyridine as a green powder.

15 Part G

3-Chloroperoxybenzoic acid (mCPBA) (2.4 g of 75% pure material) was added to a suspension of 1-{[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*][1,5]naphthyridine (2.76 g, 7.99 mmol) in dichloromethane (100 mL). The reaction was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes; an analysis by TLC then indicated the presence of starting material. Additional mCPBA (0.065 g of 75%) was added, and the reaction was stirred for another 30 minutes and found to be complete by TLC analysis. Concentrated ammonium hydroxide (50 mL) and *p*-toluenesulfonyl chloride (1.68 g, 8.79 mmol) were sequentially added. The mixture was stirred for 30 minutes. The volatiles were removed under reduced pressure, and 1 N aqueous sodium hydroxide and water were added to the resulting mixture, which was filtered to isolate a solid. The solid was washed with diethyl ether. Additional solid precipitated from the aqueous filtrate, and was isolated by filtration and combined with the first solid to provide 2.48 g of 1-{[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}-5-oxido-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*][1,5]naphthyridine, which was dissolved in a mixture of methanol (80 mL) and dichloromethane (80 mL). The resulting mixture was heated to 50 °C, and concentrated ammonium hydroxide (20 mL) and benzenesulfonyl chloride (1.2 mL, 7.6 mmol) were added. The reaction was heated under a nitrogen atmosphere for one hour, and additional benzenesulfonyl chloride (0.5

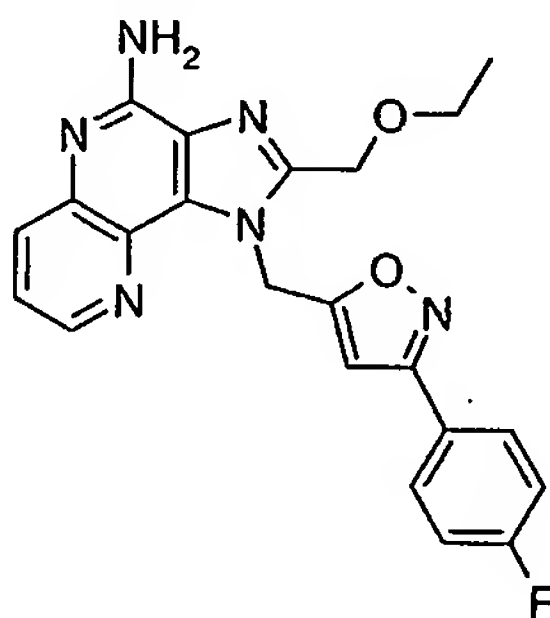
mL) was added. The solvents were removed under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (eluting with 2% to 10% CMA in chloroform) followed by recrystallization from acetonitrile to provide 0.612 g of 1-{{3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl}methyl}-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*][1,5]naphthyridin-4-amine as a white solid, mp 265.0 -266.0 °C.

MS (ESI) *m/z* 361 (M + H)⁺;

Anal. calcd for C₁₉H₁₃FN₆O: C, 63.33; H, 3.64; N, 23.32. Found: C, 63.20; H, 3.68; N, 23.43.

Example 12

2-(Ethoxymethyl)-1-{{3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl}methyl}-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*][1,5]naphthyridin-4-amine



Part A

Under a nitrogen atmosphere, 4-fluoro-*N*-hydroxybenzenecarboximidoyl chloride (44.6 g, 257 mmol) was added to a mixture of 3-nitro-*N*-prop-2-ynyl[1,5]naphthyridin-4-amine (29.34 g, 129 mmol) and anhydrous triethylamine (39.5 mL, 283 mmol) in anhydrous dichloromethane (1 L). The reaction was stirred at 40 °C for 18 hours and then concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was triturated with water; the resulting solid was isolated by filtration, washed sequentially with isopropanol and a small amount of diethyl ether, and then dried under vacuum to provide 15.02 g of *N*-{{3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl}methyl}-3-nitro[1,5]naphthyridin-4-amine as a brownish-green solid.

Part B

A solution of *N*-{{3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl}methyl}-3-nitro[1,5]naphthyridin-4-amine (15.02 g, 41.11 mmol) in hot methanol (4 L) was filtered to remove a solid and then added to a Parr vessel charged with 5% platinum on carbon

(1.5 g) that had been purged with nitrogen and wet with methanol (50 mL). The vessel was purged with hydrogen three times and then placed under hydrogen pressure (25 psi, 1.7×10^5 Pa) for 12 hours. The catalyst was removed by filtration and washed with a mixture of dichloromethane and methanol, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to provide 8.3 g of *N*⁴-{[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}[1,5]naphthyridine-3,4-diamine containing an impurity.

Part C

Under a nitrogen atmosphere, ethoxyacetyl chloride (1.6 g, 13 mmol) was added over a period of ten minutes to a cooled (6 °C) solution of *N*⁴-{[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}[1,5]naphthyridine-3,4-diamine (4.1 g, 12 mmol) and anhydrous triethylamine (2.6 mL, 18 mmol) in anhydrous dichloromethane (150 mL). After the reaction was stirred for 30 minutes, an analysis by HPLC indicated the presence of starting material, and additional ethoxyacetyl chloride (1.1 g) was added. The reaction was stirred for an additional 30 minutes and then was diluted with dichloromethane and washed with saturated aqueous potassium carbonate. The aqueous layer was separated and extracted with dichloromethane, and the combined organic fractions were washed with water and brine, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to afford 2-ethoxy-*N*-[4-({[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}amino)[1,5]naphthyridin-3-yl]acetamide as a black oil.

Part D

A solution of the material from Part C and pyridine hydrochloride (0.028 g, 0.24 mmol) in toluene (100 mL) was heated at 110 °C under a nitrogen atmosphere for 22.5 hours. The volatiles were removed under reduced pressure, and the residue was dissolved in dichloromethane. The solution was washed sequentially with saturated aqueous potassium carbonate, water, and brine; dried over sodium sulfate; filtered; and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (eluting with ethyl acetate) and then triturated with a mixture of diethyl ether and hexane and isolated by filtration to provide 1.74 g of 2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-{[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*][1,5]naphthyridine.

Part E

mCPBA (1.7 g of 75% pure material) was added to a solution of 2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-{{3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl}methyl}-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*][1,5]naphthyridine (1.74 g, 4.31 mmol) in dichloromethane (50 mL). The reaction was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes; an analysis by TLC then indicated the presence of starting material.

Additional mCPBA (0.25 g of 75%) was added, and the reaction was stirred for another 30 minutes and found to be complete. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the residue was triturated with diethyl ether and isolated by filtration to provide 1.64 g of 2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-{{3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl}methyl}-5-oxido-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*][1,5]naphthyridine as a pale yellow solid.

Part F

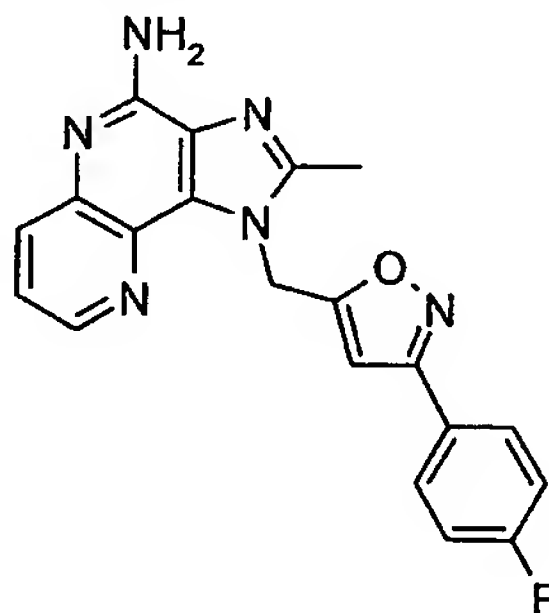
Under a nitrogen atmosphere, a solution of 2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-{{3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl}methyl}-5-oxido-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*][1,5]naphthyridine (1.64 g, 3.90 mmol) in anhydrous dichloromethane (50 mL) was cooled to 6 °C, and a solution of trichloroacetyl isocyanate (0.51 mL, 4.29 mmol) in dichloromethane (5 mL) was added dropwise. The solution was stirred for 30 minutes, and then the solvent was removed under reduced pressure. The residue was treated with sodium methoxide in methanol (10 mL of a 25% w/w solution) and methanol (40 mL). The resulting mixture was stirred for 18 hours at room temperature. A precipitate was present and was isolated by filtration, washed with methanol and diethyl ether, and dried under high vacuum at 80 °C for 18 hours to provide 0.999 g of 2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-{{3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl}methyl}-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*][1,5]naphthyridin-4-amine as a white solid, mp 190.0 - 191.0 °C.

MS (ESI) *m/z* 419 (M + H)⁺;

Anal. calcd for C₂₂H₁₉FN₆O₂·0.3H₂O: C, 62.35; H, 4.66; N, 19.83. Found: C, 62.05; H, 4.28; N, 19.71.

Example 13

1-{{[3-(4-Fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}-2-methyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-
c][1,5]naphthyridin-4-amine



5 Part A

Triethyl orthoacetate (2.8 mL, 15.2 mmol) was added to a solution of *N*⁴-{{[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}[1,5]naphthyridine-3,4-diamine (prepared in Part B of Example 12, 3.4 g, 10.1 mmol) and pyridine hydrochloride (0.023 g, 0.20 mmol) in toluene (100 mL), and the reaction was heated at 110 °C under a nitrogen atmosphere for 15.5 hours. The reaction mixture was then concentrated under reduced pressure, and the residue was dissolved in dichloromethane. The work-up and purification procedures described in Part D of Example 12 were followed with the modification that the silica column was eluted with 5% methanol in ethyl acetate. 1-{{[3-(4-Fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}-2-methyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*][1,5]naphthyridine (1.15 g) was obtained as a light gray solid.

15

Part B

The method described in Part E of Example 12 was used to treat 1-{{[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}-2-methyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*][1,5]naphthyridine (1.15 g, 3.20 mmol) with mCPBA (0.94 g of 75% pure material followed by 0.25 g) to provide 1-{{[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}-2-methyl-5-oxido-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*][1,5]naphthyridine as a dark yellow solid.

20

Part C

The method described in Part F of Example 12 was followed using the material from Part B as the starting material with the modification that the reaction with sodium methoxide was stirred for 20 hours and found to be incomplete as evidenced by HPLC analysis. Additional sodium methoxide (15 mL of a 25% w/w solution in methanol) was added, and the reaction was stirred for an additional 16 hours. After the solid product was

25

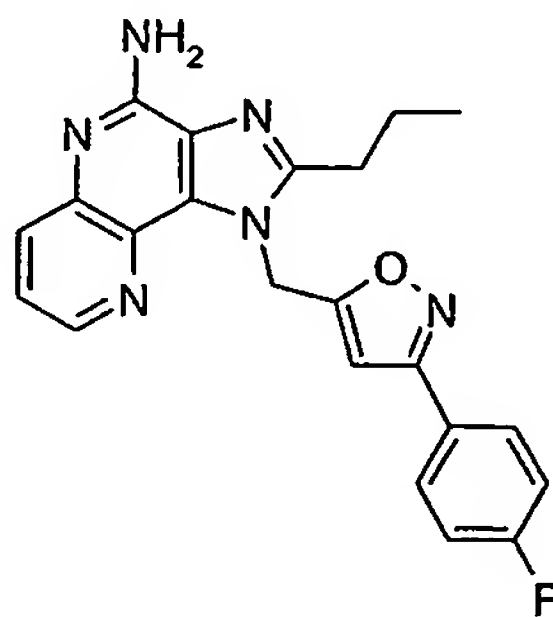
filtered and washed, it was recrystallized from acetonitrile and dried under high vacuum at 80 °C to provide 0.253 g of 1-{{3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl}methyl}-2-methyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*][1,5]naphthyridin-4-amine as a white solid, mp 239.0 - 240.0 °C.

MS (ESI) *m/z* 375 (M + H)⁺;

5 Anal. calcd for C₂₀H₁₅FN₆O: C, 64.17; H, 4.04; N, 22.45. Found: C, 64.01; H, 3.95; N, 22.50.

Example 14

1-{{3-(4-Fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl}methyl}-2-propyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*][1,5]naphthyridin-4-amine



Part A

The methods described in Part A of Example 13 were used to treat *N*⁴-{{3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl}methyl}[1,5]naphthyridine-3,4-diamine (2.6 g, 7.8 mmol) with trimethyl orthobutyrate (1.9 mL, 12 mmol) in the presence of pyridine hydrochloride (0.018 g, 0.16 mmol) and isolated and purify the final product with the modification that the silica column was eluting with 60-90% ethyl acetate in dichloromethane. 1-{{3-(4-Fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl}methyl}-2-propyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*][1,5]naphthyridine (1.08 g) was obtained as a white solid.

20 Part B

The method described in Part E of Example 12 was used to treat 1-{{3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl}methyl}-2-propyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*][1,5]naphthyridine (1.08 g, 2.79 mmol) with mCPBA (1.1 g of 75% pure material followed by 0.35 g) with the modification that the trituration of the crude product was carried out with diethyl ether. 1-{{3-(4-Fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl}methyl}-5-oxido-2-propyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*][1,5]naphthyridine was obtained as a white solid.

Part C

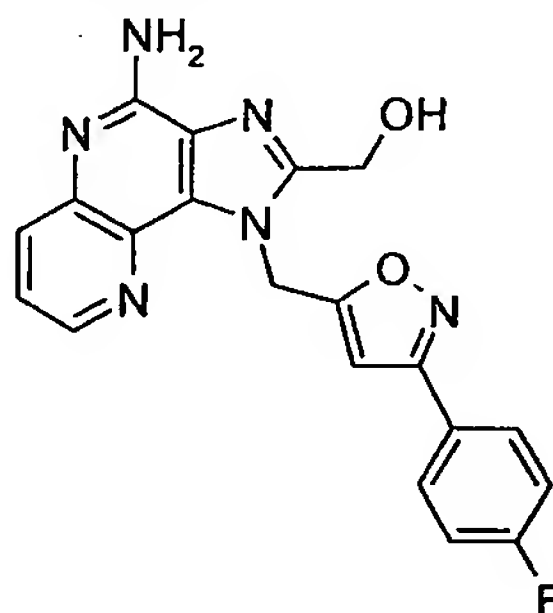
The method described in Part F of Example 12 was followed using the material from Part B as the starting material with the modification that 40 mL of 25% w/w sodium methoxide in methanol were used in the second step with no additional methanol; the reaction was complete in 2.7 hours. After the solid product was filtered and washed, it was recrystallized from toluene and dried to provide 0.439 g of 1-{{3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl}methyl}-2-propyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*][1,5]naphthyridin-4-amine as a white solid, mp 238.0 - 239.0 °C.

MS (ESI) *m/z* 403 (*M* + *H*)⁺;

Anal. calcd for C₂₂H₁₉FN₆O: C, 65.66; H, 4.76; N, 20.88. Found: C, 65.82; H, 4.74; N, 20.79.

Example 15

(4-Amino-1-{{3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl}methyl}-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*][1,5]naphthyridin-2-yl)methanol



Under a nitrogen atmosphere, a solution of 2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-{{3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl}methyl}-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*][1,5]naphthyridin-4-amine (0.40 g, 0.96 mmol) in dichloromethane (25 mL) was cooled on an ice bath, and boron tribromide (2.4 mL of a 1 M solution in dichloromethane) was added. The reaction was stirred for 17 hours, and an analysis by HPLC indicated the presence of starting material. Additional boron tribromide (1 mL) was added after 17 hours and then again after 32 hours of reaction time. After 32 hours of reaction time, methanol was added, and the solvents were removed under reduced pressure. The residue was triturated with water, isolated by filtration, washed with diethyl ether, recrystallized from methanol, and dried under high vacuum at 100 °C to provide 0.14 g of (4-amino-1-{{3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-

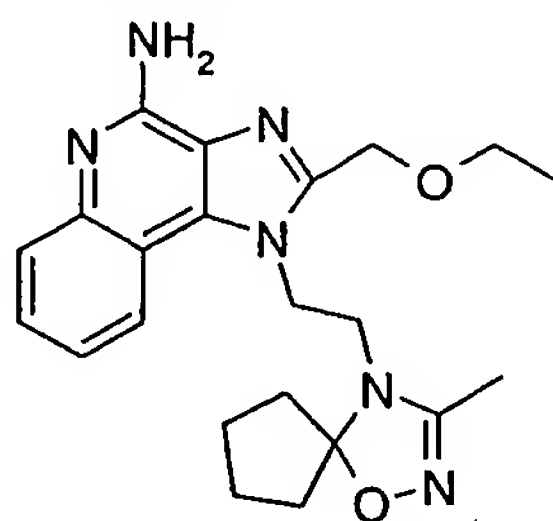
yl)methyl}-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*][1,5]naphthyridin-2-yl)methanol as a white solid, mp 247.0 - 248.0 °C.

MS (ESI) *m/z* 391 (*M* + *H*)⁺;

Anal. calcd for C₂₀H₁₅FN₆O₂: C, 61.54; H, 3.87; N, 21.53. Found: C, 61.26; H, 3.90; N, 21.60.

Example 16

2-(Ethoxymethyl)-1-[2-(3-methyl-1-oxa-2,4-diazaspiro[4.4]non-2-en-4-yl)ethyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine



Part A

A mixture of 2-(4-chloro-2-ethoxymethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-1-yl)ethylamine (1.00 g, 3.28 mmol), cyclopentanone (0.32 mL, 3.6 mmol), and magnesium sulfate in dichloromethane was stirred at room temperature overnight. The mixture was filtered and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in dichloromethane (20 mL) along with *N*-hydroxyethanimidoyl chloride, which was prepared from acetaldehyde oxime (242 mg, 4.10 mmol) and *N*-chlorosuccinimide (537 mg, 4.10 mmol) according to the method described in Part G of Example 10. The resulting solution was cooled in an ice bath and triethylamine (0.69 mL, 4.9 mmol) was added. The mixture was allowed to warm slowly to room temperature and stirred overnight. The work-up and purification procedures described in Part G of Example 10 were followed to provide 770 mg of 4-chloro-2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-[2-(3-methyl-1-oxa-2,4-diazaspiro[4.4]non-2-en-4-yl)ethyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline as a clear, colorless oil.

Part B

The methods described in Part H of Example 10 were used to treat 4-chloro-2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-[2-(3-methyl-1-oxa-2,4-diazaspiro[4.4]non-2-en-4-yl)ethyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline (770 mg, 1.80 mmol) with a solution of 7 M ammonia in

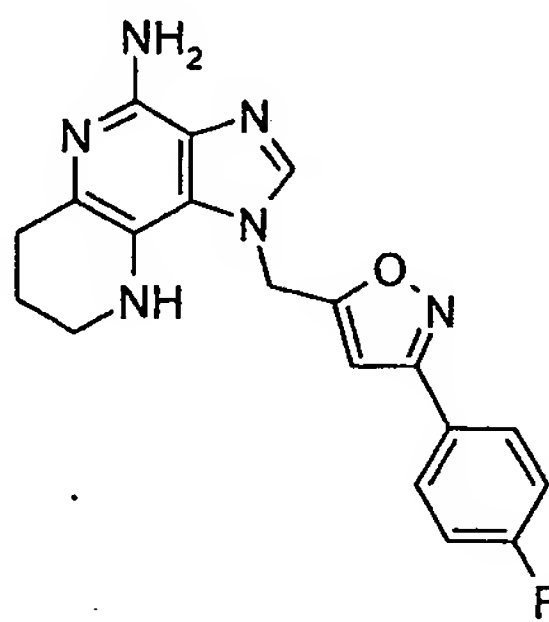
methanol (20 mL) and isolate and purify the final product to provide 700 mg of 2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-[2-(3-methyl-1-oxa-2,4-diazaspiro[4.4]non-2-en-4-yl)ethyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine as white needles, mp 211-213 °C.

MS (APCI) *m/z* 409 (*M* + *H*⁺);

5 Anal. calcd for C₂₂H₂₈N₆O₂: C, 64.69; H, 6.91; N, 20.57. Found: C, 64.47; H, 7.08; N, 20.83.

Example 17

10 1-{{[3-(4-Fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*][1,5]naphthyridin-4-amine



15 1-{{[3-(4-Fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*][1,5]naphthyridin-4-amine (Example 11, 0.300 g, 0.833 mmol) was combined with platinum (IV) oxide (0.03 g) and trifluoroacetic acid (5 mL), and the mixture was placed under hydrogen pressure (45 psi, 3.1 x 10⁵ Pa) for 24 hours. An analysis by liquid chromatography/mass spectrometry indicated the presence of starting material. The catalyst was removed by filtration, and the trifluoroacetic acid was removed under reduced pressure. The residue was combined with trifluoroacetic acid (5 mL) and platinum (IV) oxide (0.10 g), and the reaction was again placed under hydrogen pressure (45 psi, 3.1 x 10⁵ Pa) for 24 hours.

20 The catalyst was removed by filtration, and the trifluoroacetic acid was removed under reduced pressure. The resulting oil was dissolved in 6 N hydrogen chloride in ethanol and stirred for 30 minutes. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the residue was dissolved in water. The solution was adjusted to pH 14 with the addition of a few drops of 50% w/w sodium hydroxide, and the resulting mixture was stirred for 30 minutes.

25 A precipitate was present and was isolated by filtration, purified by column chromatography on silica gel (5% to 10% CMA in chloroform), triturated with diethyl ether, filtered, and dried to provide 0.0382 g of 1-{{[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-

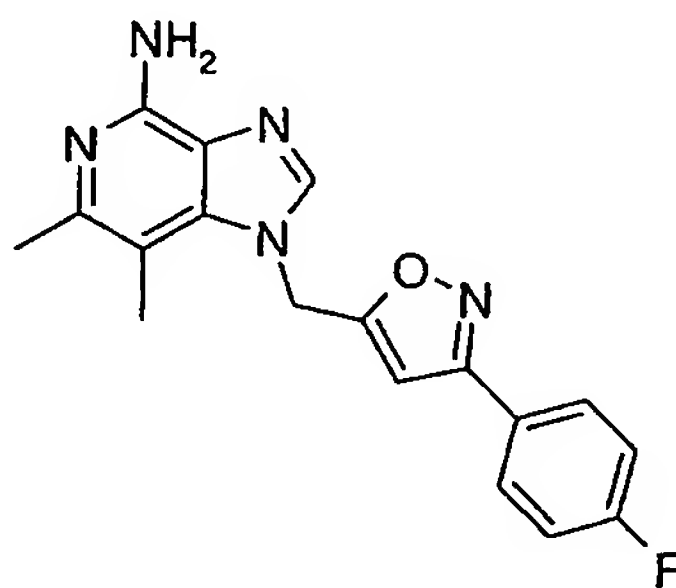
yl]methyl}-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*][1,5]naphthyridin-4-amine as a white powder, mp 227.0 - 228.0 °C.

MS (ESI) *m/z* 365 (M + H)⁺;

Anal. calcd for C₁₉H₁₇FN₆O: C, 62.63; H, 4.70; N, 23.06. Found: C, 62.38; H, 4.62; N, 23.38.

Example 18

1-{{[3-(4-Fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}-6,7-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine



Part A

Under a nitrogen atmosphere, a solution of 2,4-dichloro-5,6-dimethyl-3-nitropyridine (137.9 g, 0.624 mol) in anhydrous DMF (1.4 L) was cooled to 0 °C, and anhydrous triethylamine (109 mL, 0.780 mol) was added. Propargyl amine hydrochloride (4.72 g, 51.6 mmol) and propargyl amine (38.4 g, 0.697 mol) were sequentially added dropwise, and the reaction was allowed to warm to room temperature and then heated at 40 °C for 22 hours. The volatiles were removed under reduced pressure, and water (1.5 L) and solid sodium carbonate (75 g) were added to the resulting oil. The mixture was then extracted with dichloromethane, and the combined extracts were washed sequentially with water and brine, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude product was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (eluting sequentially with 60:40 dichloromethane/hexane and dichloromethane) to provide 51.54 g of 2-chloro-5,6-dimethyl-3-nitro-*N*-prop-2-ynylpyridin-4-amine as a brown solid.

Part B

Under a nitrogen atmosphere, 4-fluoro-*N*-hydroxybenzenecarboximidoyl chloride (52.0 g, 225 mmol), prepared as described in Parts A through C of Example 11, was added to a solution of 2-chloro-5,6-dimethyl-3-nitro-*N*-prop-2-ynylpyridin-4-amine (26.92 g,

112.3 mmol) in anhydrous dichloromethane (1 L) at room temperature. Triethylamine (25 g, 250 mmol) was added; a precipitate formed. The resulting mixture was heated at 40 °C under nitrogen for 16 hours, diluted with dichloromethane, washed sequentially with aqueous potassium carbonate, water, and brine; dried over sodium sulfate; filtered; and concentrated under reduced pressure to a suspension. The suspension was filtered to isolate a yellow solid, which was washed with diethyl ether and dried under vacuum to provide 32.45 g of 2-chloro-*N*-{[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}-5,6-dimethyl-3-nitropyridin-4-amine.

Part C

Under a nitrogen atmosphere, 2-chloro-*N*-{[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}-5,6-dimethyl-3-nitropyridin-4-amine (25.00 g, 66.35 mmol), toluene (250 mL), triethylamine (11.1 mL, 79.6 mmol), and *N,N*-bis(4-methoxybenzyl)amine (18.8 g, 73.0 mmol) were combined and heated at reflux for three days. The volatiles were removed under reduced pressure, and the residue was partitioned between ethyl acetate and saturated aqueous potassium carbonate. The ethyl acetate layer was separated and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in dichloromethane, and the resulting solution was washed sequentially with water and brine. The combined aqueous fractions were extracted with ethyl acetate. The combined organic fractions were dried over sodium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude solid was triturated with ethanol, isolated by filtration, and washed with diethyl ether to provide 37.29 g of *N*⁴-{[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}-*N*²,*N*²-bis(4-methoxybenzyl)-5,6-dimethyl-3-nitropyridin-2,4-diamine as an orange solid.

Part D

Under a nitrogen atmosphere, toluene (2 L) was added to a Parr vessel containing 5% platinum on carbon (3.6 g). *N*⁴-{[3-(4-Fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}-*N*²,*N*²-bis(4-methoxybenzyl)-5,6-dimethyl-3-nitropyridin-2,4-diamine (36.85 g, 61.66 mmol) was added followed by ethanol (300 mL). The vessel was sealed, purged with hydrogen, and placed under hydrogen pressure (30 psi, 2.1 x 10⁵ Pa) for 18 hours at room temperature. The catalyst was removed by filtration, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to provide 39.25 g of *N*⁴-{[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}-*N*²,*N*²-bis(4-methoxybenzyl)-5,6-dimethylpyridine-2,3,4-triamine as a yellow oil.

Part E

N^4 -{[3-(4-Fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}- N^2,N^2 -bis(4-methoxybenzyl)-5,6-dimethylpyridine-2,3,4-triamine (6.00 g, 10.6 mmol), triethyl orthoformate (2.6 mL, 16 mmol), concentrated hydrochloride acid (0.2 mL), and toluene (30 mL) were combined at
5 heated at reflux for 24 hours. An analysis by HPLC indicated the reaction was incomplete. Therefore, pyridine hydrochloride (0.25 g) was added, and the reaction vessel was fitted with a Dean-Stark trap. The reaction was heated at reflux for an additional 1.8 days, and additional triethyl orthoformate (1 mL) was added and heating was resumed. After the reaction was heated for a total of three days, it was allowed to cool to room
10 temperature, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in dichloromethane, and the resulting solution was washed sequentially with aqueous potassium carbonate, water, and brine; dried over magnesium sulfate; and filtered. The solution was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (eluting with 5% ethyl acetate in dichloromethane) to provide 2.0 g of 1-{[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}- N,N -bis(4-methoxybenzyl)-6,7-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine as
15 a pale yellow solid.

Part F

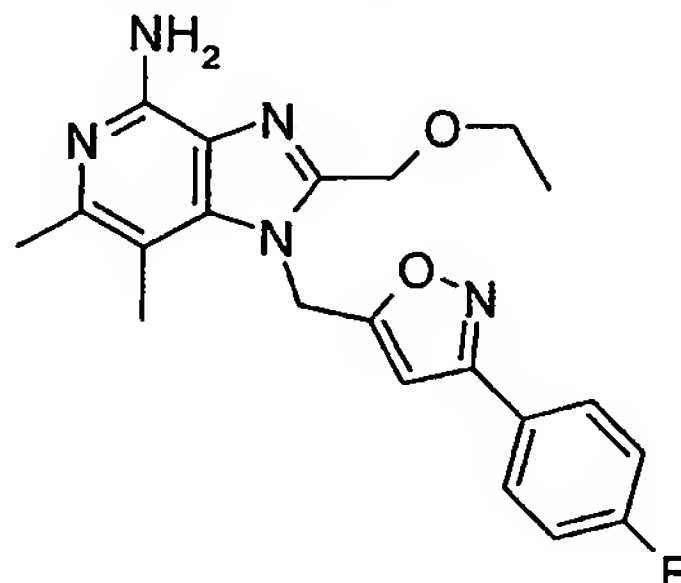
A solution of 1-{[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}- N,N -bis(4-methoxybenzyl)-6,7-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine (2.0 g, 3.5 mmol) in
20 trifluoroacetic acid (20 mL) was stirred at room temperature for 16 hours. The trifluoroacetic acid was removed under reduced pressure, and the residue was triturated with aqueous hydrochloric acid (25 mL of 6 N) and ethanol (20 mL) for 30 minutes. The resulting mixture was adjusted to pH 14 with the addition of 50% (w/w) aqueous sodium hydroxide and stirred at 0 °C for 30 minutes. A solid was present and was isolated by
25 filtration and purified by column chromatography on silica gel (eluting with 5% to 10% CMA in chloroform). The resulting solid was dried under high vacuum at 100 °C for 18 hours to provide 0.708 g of 1-{[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}-6,7-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine as a white powder, mp 244.0 - 246.0 °C.

MS (ESI) m/z 338 ($M + H$)⁺;

30 Anal. calcd for $C_{18}H_{16}FN_5O$: C, 64.09; H, 4.78; N, 20.76. Found: C, 63.40; H, 4.95; N, 20.76.

Example 19

2-(Ethoxymethyl)-1-{[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}-6,7-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine



5 Part A

Under a nitrogen atmosphere, ethoxyacetyl chloride (1.4 g, 11 mmol) was added dropwise to a solution of *N*⁴-{[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}-*N*²,*N*²-bis(4-methoxybenzyl)-5,6-dimethylpyridine-2,3,4-triamine (5.898 g, 10.39 mmol) and triethylamine (2.2 mL, 15 mmol) in dichloromethane (30 mL) at 0 °C. After the reaction was stirred for 0.7 hours, an analysis by HPLC indicated the presence of starting material, and additional ethoxyacetyl chloride (0.54 g) was added. The stirring was continued, and after 1.5 hours, the reaction mixture was diluted with dichloromethane and washed sequentially with saturated aqueous potassium carbonate, water, and brine; dried over sodium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide 6.2 g of *N*-[2-[bis(4-methoxybenzyl)amino]-4-({[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl} amino)-5,6-dimethylpyridin-3-yl]-2-ethoxyacetamide as a yellow oil.

Part B

The material from Part A, pyridine hydrochloride (1.1 g, 9.5 mmol), toluene (30 mL) were combined and heated at reflux for three days, allowed to cool to room temperature, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in dichloromethane, and the resulting solution was washed sequentially with aqueous potassium carbonate, water, and brine; dried over sodium sulfate; filtered; and concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting reddish-orange oil (6.94 g) was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (240 g, eluting with 20% ethyl acetate in hexane) to provide 3.55 g of 2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-{[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}-*N,N*-bis(4-methoxybenzyl)-6,7-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine.

Part C

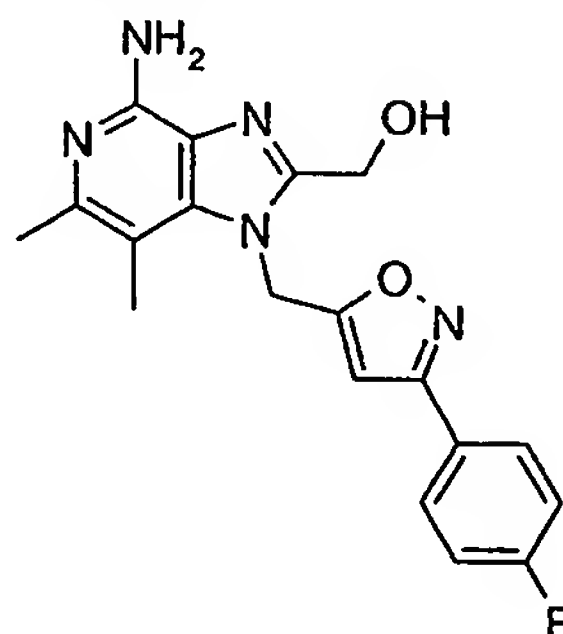
A solution of 2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-[[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl]-*N,N*-bis(4-methoxybenzyl)-6,7-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine (3.55 g, 5.58 mmol) in trifluoroacetic acid (30 mL) was stirred at room temperature for three days. The trifluoroacetic acid was removed under reduced pressure, and the residue was triturated with hydrochloric acid (50 mL of a 6 N in ethanol) and water (10 mL) for 30 minutes. The resulting mixture was adjusted to pH 14 with the addition of 50% (w/w) aqueous sodium hydroxide and stirred for 30 minutes. The volatiles were removed under reduced pressure, and the residue was recrystallized from acetonitrile after a hot filtration. Three crops of crystals were collected to provide 1.35 g of 2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-[[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl]-6,7-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine. A portion of this material was diluted with dichloromethane. The resulting solution was washed sequentially with aqueous potassium carbonate, water, and brine; purified by column chromatography on silica gel (250 g, eluting with 15% CMA in chloroform); and dried to provide 0.657 g of an analytically pure sample as a white powder, mp 246.0 - 247.0 °C.

MS (ESI) m/z 396 ($M + H$)+;

Anal. calcd for $C_{21}H_{22}FN_5O_2$: C, 63.79; H, 5.61; N, 17.71. Found: C, 63.59; H, 5.50; N, 17.57.

Example 20

(4-Amino-1-[[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl]-6,7-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-2-yl)methanol



Under a nitrogen atmosphere, a solution of 2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-[[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl]-6,7-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine

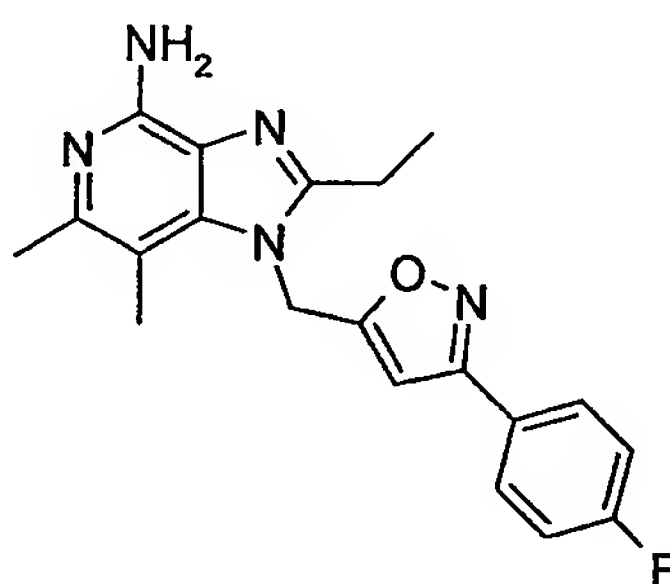
(0.8545 g, 2.161 mmol) in dichloromethane (50 mL) was cooled to about 6 °C, and boron tribromide (5.4 mL of a 1 M solution in dichloromethane) was added dropwise. The reaction was heated at reflux under nitrogen for two hours and diluted with dichloromethane and methanol. The resulting solution was washed sequentially with aqueous potassium carbonate, water, and brine; dried over sodium sulfate; filtered; and concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting solid was stirred in water overnight, isolated by filtration, purified by column chromatography on silica gel (eluting with 3% to 5% CMA in chloroform), and dried to provide 0.283 g of (4-amino-1-{{3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl}methyl}-6,7-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-2-yl)methanol as a tan powder, mp 164.0 - 165.0 °C.

MS (ESI) m/z 368 ($M + H$)⁺;

Anal. calcd for C₁₉H₁₈FN₅O₂: C, 62.12; H, 4.94; N, 19.06. Found: C, 61.80; H, 4.81; N, 18.94.

Example 21

2-Ethyl-1-{{3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl}methyl}-6,7-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine



Part A

N^4 -{{3-(4-Fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl}methyl}- N^2,N^2 -bis(4-methoxybenzyl)-5,6-dimethylpyridine-2,3,4-triamine (6.00 g, 10.6 mmol), triethyl orthopropionate (3.2 mL, 16 mmol), concentrated hydrochloride acid (0.2 mL), and toluene (30 mL) were combined and treated according to the method described in Part E of Example 18 with the modification that no additional triethyl orthopropionate was added. 2-Ethyl-1-{{3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl}methyl}- N,N -bis(4-methoxybenzyl)-6,7-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine (2.52 g) was obtained as a yellow solid.

Part B

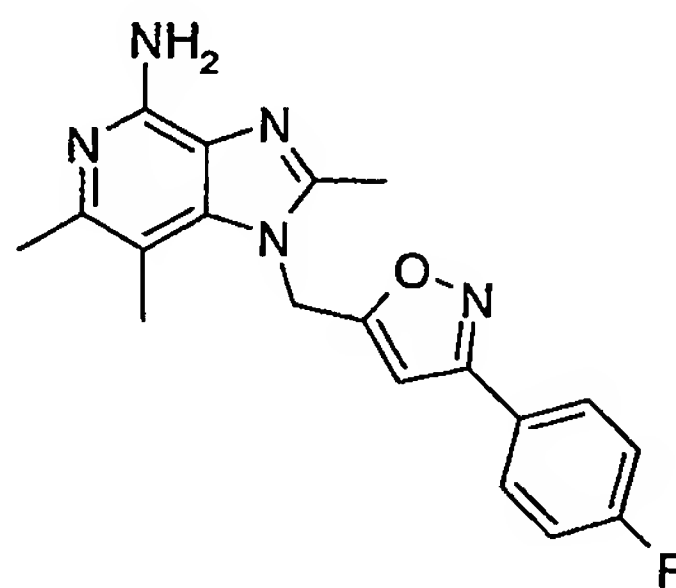
Under a nitrogen atmosphere, a solution of 2-ethyl-1-{{[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}}-*N,N*-bis(4-methoxybenzyl)-6,7-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine (2.52 g, 4.16 mmol) in trifluoroacetic acid (25 g) was stirred at room temperature for 20 hours. The trifluoroacetic acid was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting red oil was stirred with aqueous hydrochloric acid (25 mL of 6 N) and ethanol (10 mL) for 30 minutes. The resulting mixture filtered to remove a solid impurity, cooled to 0 °C, adjusted to pH 14 with the addition of 50% (w/w) aqueous sodium hydroxide, and stirred at for 30 minutes. A solid was present and was isolated by filtration and purified by sequential trituration with toluene, trituration with diethyl ether, and recrystallization from acetonitrile to provide 0.6488 g of 2-ethyl-1-{{[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}}-6,7-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine as a white flocculant solid, mp 255.0 - 256.0 °C.

MS (ESI) *m/z* 366 (M + H)⁺;

Anal. calcd for C₂₀H₂₀FN₅O: C, 65.74; H, 5.52; N, 19.17. Found: C, 65.62; H, 5.43; N, 19.14.

Example 22

1-{{[3-(4-Fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}}-2,6,7-trimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine



Part A

*N*⁴-{{[3-(4-Fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}}-*N*²,*N*²-bis(4-methoxybenzyl)-5,6-dimethylpyridine-2,3,4-triamine (6.00 g, 10.6 mmol), triethyl orthoacetate (2.9 mL, 16 mmol), concentrated hydrochloride acid (0.2 mL), and toluene (30 mL) were combined and treated according to the method described in Part E of Example 18 with the modification that no additional triethyl orthoacetate was added. 1-{{[3-(4-

Fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl)methyl}-*N,N*-bis(4-methoxybenzyl)-2,6,7-trimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine (1.48 g) was obtained as a yellow solid.

Part B

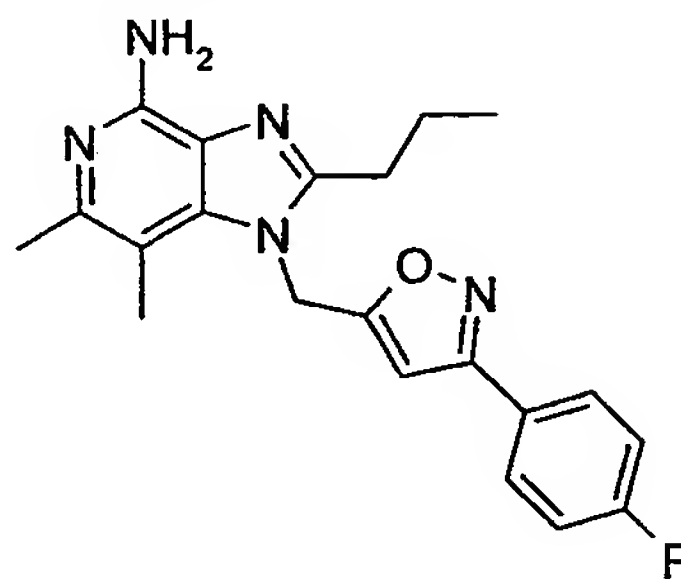
Under a nitrogen atmosphere, a solution of 1-{{3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl)methyl}-*N,N*-bis(4-methoxybenzyl)-2,6,7-trimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine (1.48 g, 2.50 mmol) in trifluoroacetic acid (20 g) was stirred at room temperature for 24 hours. The solution was then worked-up and the product isolated as described in Part B of Example 21. After the desired product was collected by filtration, it was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (60 g, eluting with 5% to 10% CMA in chloroform) to provide 0.235 g of 1-{{3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl)methyl}-2,6,7-trimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine as a white powder, mp 278.0 - 279.0 °C.

MS (ESI) *m/z* 352 (M + H)⁺;

Anal. calcd for C₁₉H₁₈FN₅O: C, 64.95; H, 5.16; N, 19.93. Found: C, 64.78; H, 5.05; N, 20.12.

Example 23

1-{{3-(4-Fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl)methyl}-6,7-dimethyl-2-propyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine



Part A

*N*⁴-{{3-(4-Fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl)methyl}-*N*²,*N*²-bis(4-methoxybenzyl)-5,6-dimethylpyridine-2,3,4-triamine (6.00 g, 10.6 mmol), trimethyl orthobutyrate (2.4 g, 16 mmol), concentrated hydrochloride acid (0.2 mL), and toluene (30 mL) were combined and treated according to the method described in Part E of Example 18 with the modification that no additional trimethyl orthobutyrate was added. 1-{{3-(4-Fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl)methyl}-*N,N*-bis(4-methoxybenzyl)-6,7-dimethyl-2-propyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine (2.62 g) was obtained as a yellow solid.

Part B

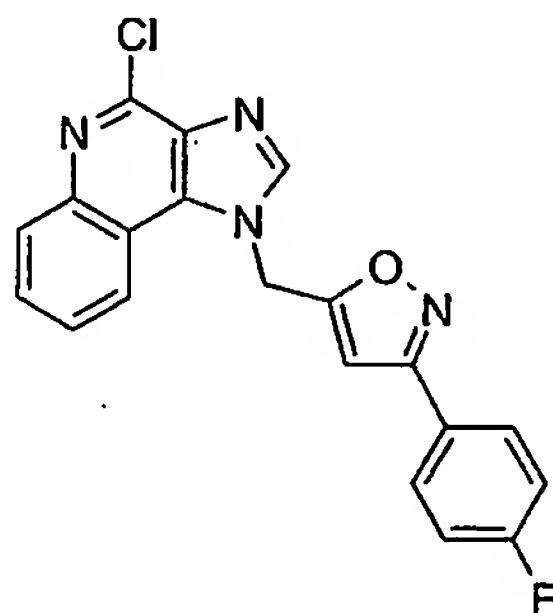
Under a nitrogen atmosphere, a solution of 1-{{3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl)methyl}-*N,N*-bis(4-methoxybenzyl)-6,7-dimethyl-2-propyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine (2.62 g, 4.23 mmol) in trifluoroacetic acid (25 mL) was stirred at room temperature for 2.7 days. The solution was then worked-up and the product isolated and purified as described in Part B of Example 21 to provide 0.549 g of 1-{{3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl)methyl}-6,7-dimethyl-2-propyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridin-4-amine as a white powder, mp 227.0 - 229.0 °C.

MS (ESI) *m/z* 380 (*M* + *H*)⁺;

Anal. calcd for C₂₁H₂₂FN₅O: C, 66.48; H, 5.84; N, 18.46. Found: C, 66.46; H, 5.65; N, 18.52.

Example 24

4-Chloro-1-{{3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl)methyl}-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline



Part A

Under a nitrogen atmosphere, 4-fluoro-*N*-hydroxybenzenecarboximidoyl chloride (54 g, 230 mmol), prepared as described in Parts A through C of Example 11, was added to a solution of 2-chloro-3-nitro-*N*-prop-2-ynylquinolin-4-amine (30.2 g, 115 mmol), prepared as described in Part A of Example 3, in dichloromethane (1 L) at room temperature. Triethylamine (26 g, 250 mmol) was added; a precipitate formed. The resulting mixture was heated at 40 °C under nitrogen for 16.5 hours and concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting solid was dissolved in ethyl acetate, and the work-up and isolation procedures described in Part B of Example 18 were followed to provide 36.12 g of 2-chloro-*N*-{{3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl)methyl}-3-nitroquinolin-4-amine as a yellow solid.

Part B

Under a nitrogen atmosphere, acetonitrile (2 L) was added to a Parr vessel containing 5% platinum on carbon (2.0 g) and 2-chloro-*N*-{[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}-3-nitroquinolin-4-amine (36.12 g, 90.58 mmol). The vessel was sealed, 5 purged with nitrogen, and placed under hydrogen pressure (30 psi, 2.1×10^5 Pa) for 17 hours at room temperature. The catalyst was removed by filtration, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting semi-solid was treated with diethyl ether, which was removed under reduced pressure to provide 33 g of 2-chloro-*N*⁴-{[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}quinoline-3,4-diamine as a yellow-orange solid. A 10 portion of the material was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (6 g, eluting with 10% ethyl acetate in hexane) to provide 0.0298 g of an analytically pure sample as pale yellow crystals, mp 127 - 128.0 °C.

MS (ESI) *m/z* 369 (M + H)⁺;

Anal. calcd for C₁₉H₁₄ClFN₄O: C, 61.88; H, 3.83; N, 15.19. Found: C, 61.67; H, 3.88; N, 15.14. 15

The reaction mixture from a separate reduction carried out in toluene was filtered to remove the catalyst, and the filtrate was used in the next step.

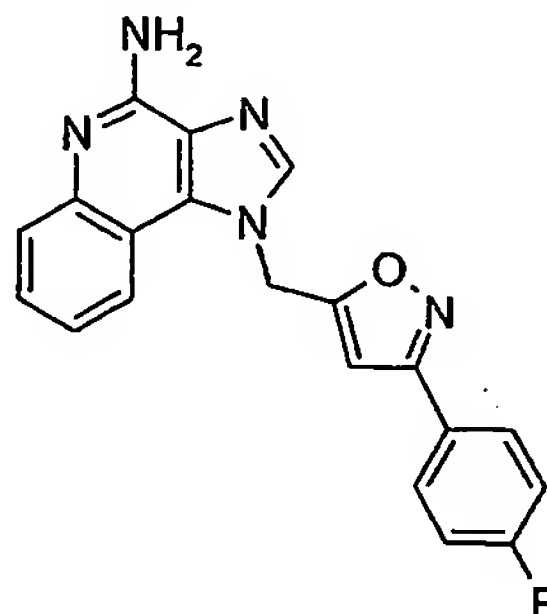
Part C

Pyridine hydrochloride (3 mg, 0.02 mmol) and triethyl orthoformate (0.3 mL, 1.7 20 mmol) were added to a solution of 2-chloro-*N*⁴-{[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}quinoline-3,4-diamine (0.4294 g, 1.164 mmol) in toluene (10 mL), and the reaction was heated at 110 °C for 16 hours. A solid was present and was isolated by filtration. The filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure and triturated with diethyl ether to provide a solid. The two solids were combined and purified by column 25 chromatography on silica gel (eluting with 1:1 ethyl acetate:hexane) to provide 0.259 g of 4-chloro-1-{[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline as a white solid, mp 219.0 - 220.0 °C.

MS (ESI) *m/z* 379 (M + H)⁺;

Anal. calcd for C₂₀H₁₂ClFN₄O: C, 63.42; H, 3.19; N, 14.79. Found: C, 63.49; H, 2.83; N, 14.73. 30

Example 25

1-{{[3-(4-Fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine

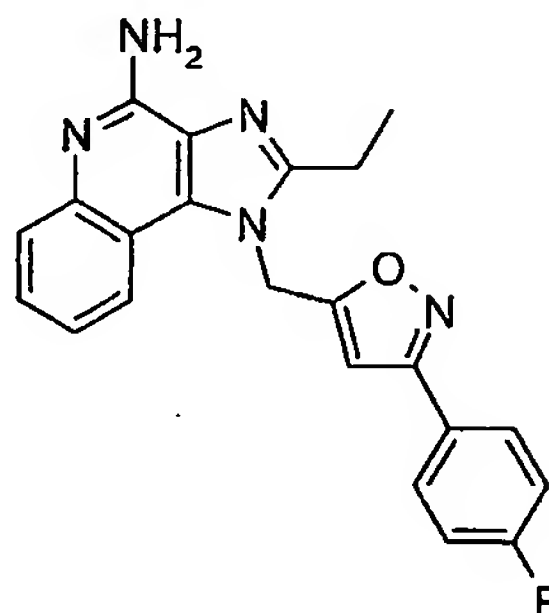
A mixture of 4-chloro-1-{{[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline (0.2322 g, 0.6130 mmol) and 7 N ammonia in methanol (10 mL) was sealed in a pressure vessel and heated at 150 °C for 22 hours and allowed to cool to room temperature. The volatiles were removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting orange solid was triturated with diethyl ether. The solid was then purified by column chromatography on silica gel (7 g, eluting with 10% to 20% CMA in chloroform), triturated with diethyl ether, isolated by filtration, and dried. The solid was then boiled in methanol in the presence of a small amount of 0.5 N sodium hydroxide in methanol. The mixture was allowed to cool to room temperature, and the solid was isolated by filtration and dried to provide 0.0259 g of 1-{{[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine as a tan powder, mp 259.0 - 260.0 °C.

MS (ESI) *m/z* 360 (M + H)⁺;

Anal. calcd for C₂₀H₁₄FN₅O·0.5 H₂O: C, 65.21; H, 4.10; N, 19.01. Found: C, 64.90; H, 3.87; N, 18.81.

Example 26

2-Ethyl-1-{[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine



Part A

5 Under a nitrogen atmosphere, pyridine hydrochloride (0.020 g, 0.19 mmol), triethyl orthopropionate (2.5 g, 14 mmol), 2-chloro-*N*⁴-{[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}quinoline-3,4-diamine (3.5 g, 9.5 mmol), and toluene (50 mL) were combined and heated at 110 °C for 18 hours. Most of the volatiles were removed under reduced pressure to provide a suspension. The solid was isolated by filtration, washed with diethyl
10 ether, and dried to provide 2.624 g of 4-chloro-2-ethyl-1-{[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline as a tan solid.

Part B

4-Chloro-2-ethyl-1-{[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline (2.624 g, 6.451 mmol), 7 N ammonia in methanol (40 mL), and
15 tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) were combined in a pressure vessel and heated at 120 °C for 16 hours. An analysis by HPLC indicated that the reaction was incomplete. The volatiles were removed under reduced pressure, and the residue was dissolved in chloroform. The solution was washed sequentially with aqueous potassium carbonate, water, and brine; dried over magnesium sulfate; filtered; and concentrated under reduced
20 pressure. The resulting dark yellow solid was added to a pressure vessel with 7 N ammonia in methanol (60 mL), and the reaction was sealed and heated at 150 °C for 18 hours. The volatiles were removed under reduced pressure, and the residue was stirred with 0.5 N potassium hydroxide in methanol for 30 minutes. The resulting solid was isolated by filtration, diluted with dichloromethane, purified by column chromatography
25 on silica gel (eluting with 5% to 10% CMA in chloroform), triturated with diethyl ether and filtered, and recrystallized from acetonitrile after a hot filtration. The crystals were

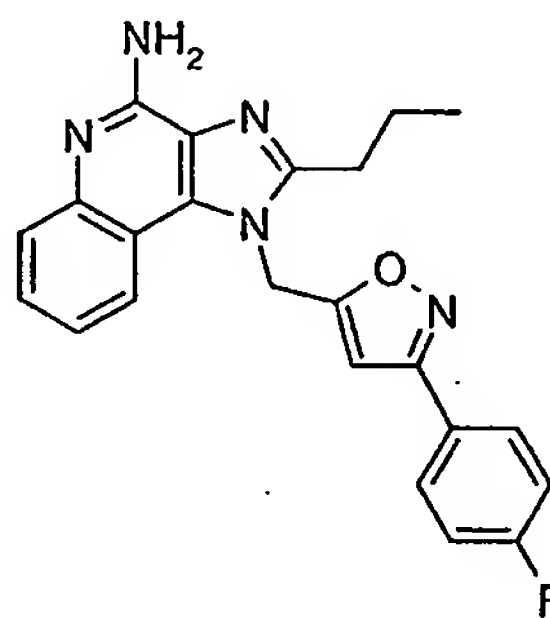
isolated by filtration, washed with diethyl ether, and dried to provide 0.139 g of 2-ethyl-1-
{[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine as a white
powder, mp 232.0 - 233.0 °C.

MS (ESI) *m/z* 388 (M + H)⁺;

5 Anal. calcd for C₂₂H₁₈FN₅O: C, 68.21; H, 4.68; N, 18.08. Found: C, 68.16; H, 4.29; N,
18.19.

Example 27

1-{{[3-(4-Fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}-2-propyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-
amine



Part A

Under a nitrogen atmosphere, pyridine hydrochloride (0.020 g, 0.19 mmol),
trimethyl orthobutyrates (2.1 g, 14 mmol), 2-chloro-*N*⁴-{[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-
yl]methyl}quinoline-3,4-diamine (3.5 g, 9.5 mmol), and toluene (50 mL) were combined
15 and heated at 110 °C for 18 hours. The volatiles were removed under reduced pressure.
The crude product was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (250 g, eluting
with 20% to 40% ethyl acetate in hexane) to provide 0.806 g of 4-chloro-1-{{[3-(4-
fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}-2-propyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline as a yellow
20 solid.

Part B

A mixture of 4-chloro-1-{{[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}-2-propyl-1*H*-
imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline (0.806 g, 1.92 mmol) and 7 N ammonia in methanol (40 mL) was
sealed in a pressure vessel and heated at 150 °C for 18 hours and allowed to cool to room
25 temperature. The volatiles were removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting solid
was stirred with 0.5 N sodium hydroxide in methanol. The solid was isolated by filtration,

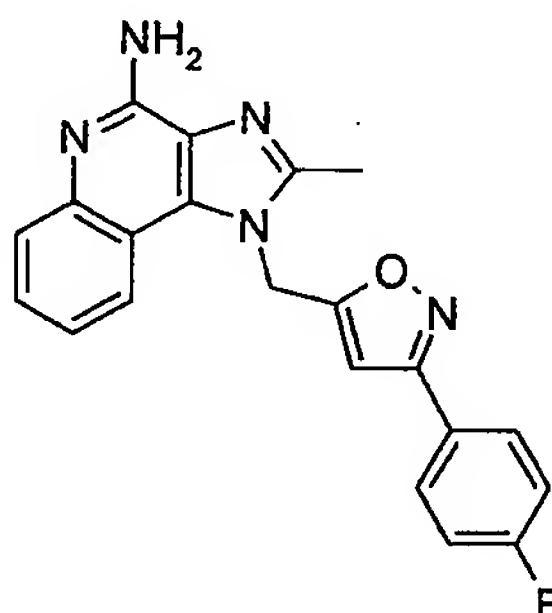
washed with diethyl ether, purified by column chromatography on silica gel (eluting with 5% to 10% CMA in chloroform), triturated with diethyl ether, isolated by filtration, and dried to provide 0.123 g of 1-{[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}-2-propyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine as a white powder, mp 226.0 - 227.0 °C.

5 MS (ESI) m/z 401 ($M + H$)+;

Anal. calcd for $C_{23}H_{20}FN_5O$: C, 68.81; H, 5.02; N, 17.45. Found: C, 68.67; H, 4.92; N, 17.53.

Example 28

10 1-{[3-(4-Fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}-2-methyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine



Part A

15 Pyridine hydrochloride (0.020 g, 0.19 mmol), triethyl orthoacetate (2.3 g, 14 mmol), 2-chloro-*N*⁴-{[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}quinoline-3,4-diamine (3.5 g, 9.5 mmol), and toluene (50 mL) were combined and treated according to the method of Part A of Example 26 to provide 2.307 g of 4-chloro-1-{[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}-2-methyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline as a pale yellow solid.

Part B

20 4-Chloro-1-{[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}-2-methyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline (2.307 g, 5.873 mmol) was treated according to the method described in Part B of Example 27 using 60 mL of 7 N ammonia in methanol. Following the purification steps, the solid product was stirred for 16 hours in 25% potassium hydroxide in ethanol, isolated by filtration, washed with water and isopropyl alcohol, and dried. The resulting
25 white solid was stirred for one hour with 6 N hydrogen chloride in ethanol, and the mixture was then adjusted to pH 14 with the addition of 6 N potassium hydroxide. The solid was isolated by filtration, washed with water and diethyl ether, and dried under high

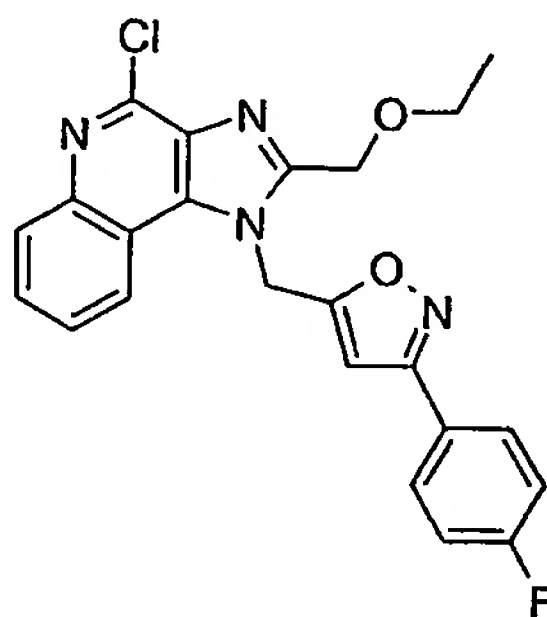
vacuum at 100 °C for 18 hours to provide 1-{{3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl}methyl}-2-methyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine as a white powder, mp 294.0 - 296.0 °C.

MS (ESI) *m/z* 374 (M + H)⁺;

Anal. calcd for C₂₁H₁₆FN₅O: C, 67.55; H, 4.32; N, 18.76. Found: C, 67.50; H, 4.28; N, 18.97.

Example 29

4-Chloro-2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-{{3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl}methyl}-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline



Part A

Under a nitrogen atmosphere, ethoxyacetyl chloride (5.5 g, 45 mmol) was added dropwise to a solution of 2-chloro-*N*⁴-{{3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl}methyl}quinoline-3,4-diamine (15.00 g, 40.67 mmol) and triethylamine (8.5 mL, 61 mmol) in dichloromethane (200 mL) at 6 °C. After the reaction was stirred for 30 minutes, an analysis by HPLC indicated the presence of starting material, and additional ethoxyacetyl chloride (1.01 g) was added. The stirring was continued, and over the course of five hours, a total of 13 g of ethoxyacetyl chloride was added. The work-up procedure described in Part A of Example 19 was followed to provide *N*-[2-chloro-4-({3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl}methyl)amino]quinolin-3-yl]-2-ethoxyacetamide as an orange solid.

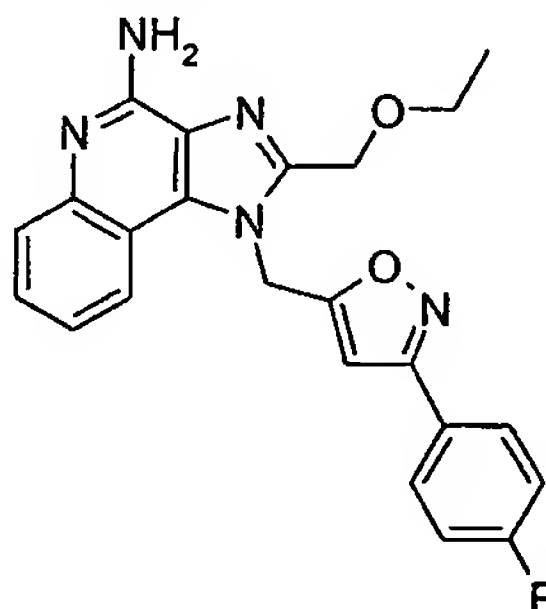
Part B

The material from Part A, pyridine hydrochloride (2.0 g, 2.0 mmol), toluene (500 mL) were combined under a nitrogen atmosphere and heated at 110 °C for 22 hours, allowed to cool to room temperature, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was partitioned between dichloromethane and saturated aqueous potassium

carbonate. The aqueous layer was separated and extracted with dichloromethane. The combined organic fractions were washed sequentially with water and brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, and filtered. The volume was reduced to 20 mL by concentration under reduced pressure, and a precipitate formed. The precipitate was isolated by filtration, washed with toluene and diethyl ether, and dried under vacuum to provide 12.6 g of 4-chloro-2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-{[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline. A portion of the product was recrystallized from methanol to provide 0.509 g of an analytically pure sample as tan crystals, mp 189.0 - 190.0 °C. MS (ESI) *m/z* 437 (M + H)⁺;
Anal. calcd for C₂₃H₁₈ClFN₄O₂: C, 63.23; H, 4.15; N, 12.82. Found: C, 63.16; H, 4.16; N, 12.81.

Example 30

2-(Ethoxymethyl)-1-{[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine



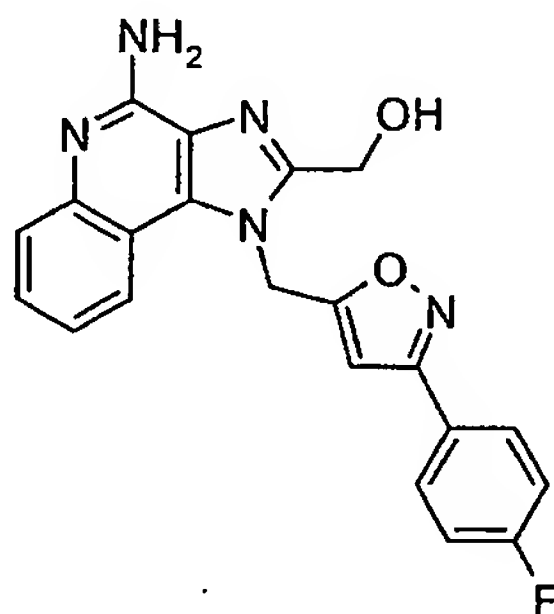
A mixture of 4-chloro-2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-{[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline (3.00 g, 6.87 mmol) and 7 N ammonia in methanol (150 mL) was sealed in a pressure vessel and heated at 150 °C for 18 hours and allowed to cool to room temperature. A precipitate formed and was isolated by filtration, washed with diethyl ether, and dried to provide 1.858 g of product. Half of the material was further dried for three days at 100 °C under high vacuum to provide 0.816 g of 2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-{[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl}-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine as a white, crystalline solid, mp 203.0 - 204.0 °C.

MS (ESI) *m/z* 418 (M + H)⁺;

Anal. calcd for $C_{23}H_{20}FN_5O_2$: C, 66.18; H, 4.83; N, 16.78. Found: C, 66.02; H, 4.67; N, 16.97.

Example 31

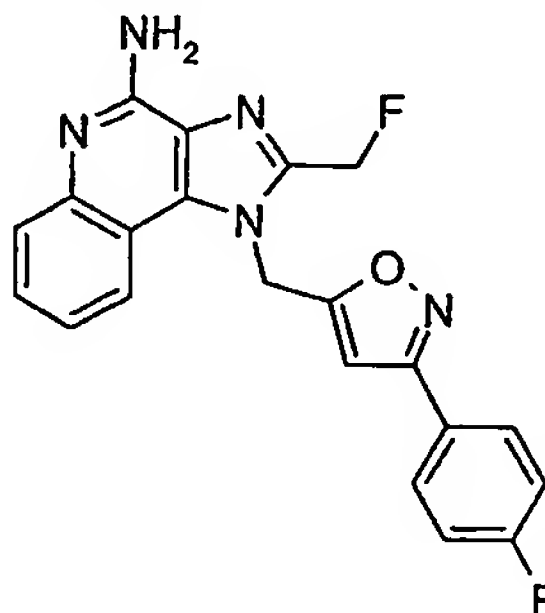
5 (4-Amino-1-{{3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl}methyl}-1H-imidazo[4,5-c]quinolin-2-yl)methanol



Under a nitrogen atmosphere, a solution of 2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-{{3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl}methyl}-1H-imidazo[4,5-c]quinolin-4-amine (0.9923 g, 2.377 mmol) in 1,2-dichloroethane (55 mL) was cooled to about 0 °C, and boron tribromide (5.9 mL of a 1 M solution in dichloromethane) was added dropwise. After the reaction was stirred cold for 30 minutes, it was heated at 50 °C for six hours. An analysis by HPLC indicated the reaction was incomplete, and the reaction was again cooled to about 0 °C, and additional boron tribromide (1.5 mL) was added dropwise. After the reaction was stirred cold for ten minutes, it was heated at 50 °C for 16 hours. Methanol (30 mL) was added, and the reaction mixture was allowed to cool to room temperature. After 16 hours, the precipitate from the reaction was isolated by filtration and washed sequentially with aqueous potassium hydroxide (30 mL of 1 N), methanol (15 mL), and diethyl ether (15 mL). The solid was then triturated with boiling acetonitrile and isolated by hot filtration to provide 0.161 g of (4-amino-1-{{3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl}methyl}-1H-imidazo[4,5-c]quinolin-2-yl)methanol as a white powder, mp 262.0 - 263.0 °C. MS (ESI) m/z 390 (M + H)⁺; Anal. calcd for $C_{21}H_{16}FN_5O_2$: C, 64.78; H, 4.14; N, 17.99. Found: C, 64.53; H, 3.87; N, 18.11.

Example 32

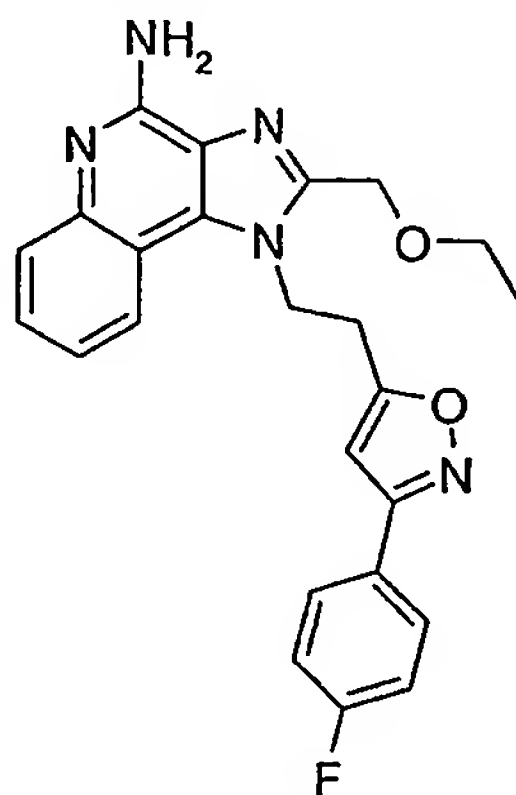
2-(Fluoromethyl)-1-{{3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl}methyl}-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-
c]quinolin-4-amine



5 The methods described in Examples 30 and 31 were repeated on a larger scale to
provide (4-amino-1-{{3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl}methyl}-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-
c]quinolin-2-yl)methanol. The reaction described in Example 31 was heated at reflux and
was complete within three hours. Under a nitrogen atmosphere, a suspension of (4-amino-
1-{{3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl}methyl}-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-2-yl)methanol
10 (2.31 g, 5.93 mmol) in dichloromethane (100 mL) was cooled to -78°C .
(Diethylamino)sulfur trifluoride (DAST) (0.95 mL, 7.2 mmol) was added dropwise. The
mixture was stirred for 30 minutes at -78°C and then was allowed to warm to room
temperature slowly and stirred for one hour. The reaction mixture was diluted with
dichloromethane and washed with saturated aqueous potassium carbonate. Additional
15 dichloromethane and water were added to dissolve solids. The aqueous layer was
separated and extracted with dichloromethane. The combined organic fractions were
washed sequentially with water and brine, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered, and
concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude product was purified by column
chromatography on silica gel (eluting with 3% to 5% CMA in chloroform) followed by
20 recrystallization from acetonitrile. The crystals were dried under high vacuum for 18
hours at 90°C to provide 0.994 g of 2-(fluoromethyl)-1-{{3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-
yl}methyl}-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine as tan crystals, mp $192.0 - 193.0^{\circ}\text{C}$.
MS (ESI) m/z 392 ($M + H$)⁺;
Anal. calcd for $\text{C}_{21}\text{H}_{15}\text{F}_2\text{N}_5\text{O}$: C, 64.45; H, 3.86; N, 17.89. Found: C, 64.39; H, 3.72; N,
25 17.93.

Example 33

2-(Ethoxymethyl)-1-{2-[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]ethyl}-1H-imidazo[4,5-c]quinolin-4-amine



5 Part A

Under a nitrogen atmosphere, 4-fluoro-*N*-hydroxybenzenecarboximidoyl chloride (31 g, 180 mmol), prepared as described in Parts A through C of Example 11, was added dropwise to a solution of anhydrous triethylamine (19 mL, 210 mmol) and *N*-(3-butynyl)phthalimide (19.04 g, 95.58 mmol) in dichloromethane (1 L). The reaction was stirred at room temperature for 24 hours and then diluted with dichloromethane, washed sequentially with aqueous potassium carbonate, water, and brine; dried over potassium sulfate; filtered; and concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting solid was triturated with ethanol, isolated by filtration, and washed with diethyl ether to provide 29.87 g of 2-{2-[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]ethyl}-1*H*-isoindole-1,3(2*H*)-dione. A portion of the product was recrystallized from isopropyl alcohol and dried to provide an analytically pure sample as white crystals, mp 155.0 - 156.0 °C.

MS (ESI) *m/z* 337 (M + H)⁺;

Anal. calcd for C₁₉H₁₃FN₂O₃: C, 67.85; H, 3.90; N, 8.33. Found: C, 67.88; H, 3.86; N, 8.33.

20 Part B

A mixture of 2-{2-[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]ethyl}-1*H*-isoindole-1,3(2*H*)-dione (27.14 g, 80.70 mmol), hydrazine hydrate (9.8 mL, 202 mmol), and ethanol (700 mL) was heated at reflux under nitrogen for two hours. The reaction mixture was filtered to remove a solid, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting oil was dissolved in ethyl acetate, and the solution was washed sequentially with water and

brine, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide 16.14 g of 2-[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]ethylamine as a colorless oil.

Part C

Under a nitrogen atmosphere, triethylamine (14.9 mL, 107 mmol) was added to a solution of 2,4-dichloro-3-nitroquinoline (17.29 g, 71.15 mol) in anhydrous 1-methyl-2-pyrrolidinone (NMP) (100 mL). The mixture was stirred until it was homogeneous and then was cooled to 6 °C. 2-[3-(4-Fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]ethylamine (14.9 mL, 107 mmol) was added dropwise over a period of 30 minutes; the temperature did not rise above 10 °C during the addition. After the reaction was stirred for 1.75 hours, deionized water (100 mL) was added. A precipitate formed, and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes. The precipitate was isolated by filtration, and washed with deionized water until the filtrate was pH 8. The filter cake was then washed sequentially with toluene (100 mL) and a small amount of diethyl ether and dried for 18 hours to provide 27.84 g of 2-chloro-*N*-{2-[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]ethyl}-3-nitroquinolin-4-amine as a bright yellow solid.

Part D

Under a nitrogen atmosphere, acetonitrile (1.5 L) was added to a Parr vessel containing 5% platinum on carbon (1.5 g), which had been wet with a small amount of acetonitrile, and 2-chloro-*N*-{2-[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]ethyl}-3-nitroquinolin-4-amine (23.20 g, 56.20 mmol). The vessel was sealed, purged three times with hydrogen, and placed under hydrogen pressure (30 psi, 2.1×10^5 Pa) for 18 hours at room temperature. The catalyst was removed by filtration, and the majority of the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. A solid was present in the remaining filtrate and was isolated by filtration to provide 11.3 g of 2-chloro-*N*⁴-{2-[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]ethyl}quinoline-3,4-diamine as a yellow solid.

Part E

Under a nitrogen atmosphere, ethoxyacetyl chloride (3.5 g, 28 mmol) was added dropwise to a solution of 2-chloro-*N*⁴-{2-[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]ethyl}quinoline-3,4-diamine (9.0 g, 23.5 mmol) and anhydrous triethylamine (10.0 mL, 35.3 mmol) in anhydrous dichloromethane (75 mL) at 6 °C. After the reaction was stirred for 30 minutes, an analysis by HPLC indicated the presence of starting material, and additional ethoxyacetyl chloride (2.0 g) was added. After the reaction was stirred for

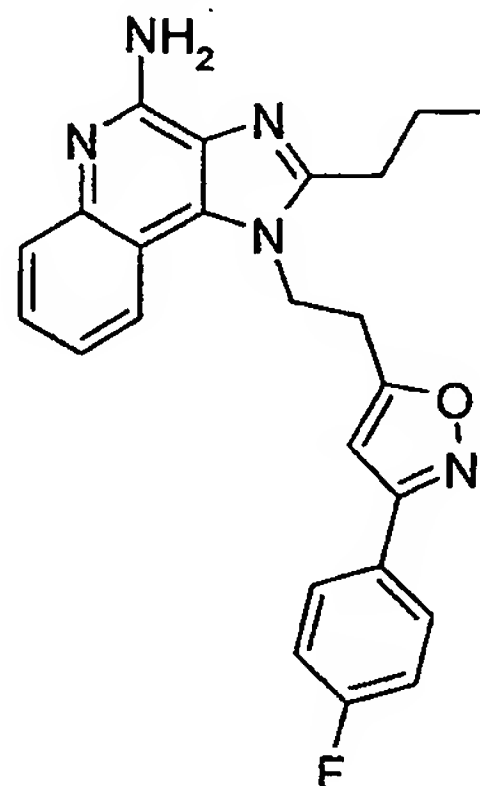
another 30 minutes, it was still incomplete, and additional ethoxyacetyl chloride (2.0 g) was added. The stirring was continued for an additional 30 minutes, and the work-up procedure described in Part A of Example 19 was followed to provide 11.12 g of *N*-[2-chloro-4-({2-[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]ethyl}amino)quinolin-3-yl]-2-ethoxyacetamide as a white solid.

Part F

A mixture of *N*-[2-chloro-4-({2-[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]ethyl}amino)quinolin-3-yl]-2-ethoxyacetamide (0.500 g, 1.07 mmol) and 7 N ammonia in methanol (7 mL) was sealed in a pressure vessel and heated at 150 °C for 12 hours and allowed to cool to room temperature. The reaction mixture was diluted in dichloromethane, and the resulting solution was washed sequentially with aqueous potassium carbonate, water, and brine; dried over sodium sulfate; filtered; and purified by column chromatography on silica gel (40 g, eluting with 5% to 10% CMA in chloroform). The product was then recrystallized from toluene (20 mL), and the crystals were isolated by filtration, washed with toluene, and dried provide 0.139 g of 2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-{2-[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]ethyl}-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine as a white powder, mp 180.0 - 181.0 °C. MS (ESI) *m/z* 432 (*M* + *H*)⁺; Anal. calcd for C₂₄H₂₂FN₅O₂: C, 66.81; H, 5.14; N, 16.23. Found: C, 66.56; H, 5.15; N, 16.01.

Example 34

1-{2-[3-(4-Fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]ethyl}-2-propyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine



5 Part A

Under a nitrogen atmosphere, pyridine hydrochloride (1.6 g, 14 mmol), trimethyl orthobutyrate (1.62 g, 11.0 mmol), 2-chloro-*N*⁴-{2-[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]ethyl}quinoline-3,4-diamine (2.10 g, 5.49 mmol), and toluene (50 mL) were combined and heated at reflux for four hours under a Dean-Stark trap. The volatiles were removed under reduced pressure. The resulting oil was dissolved in ethyl acetate, and the solution was washed sequentially with aqueous potassium carbonate, water, and brine; dried over sodium sulfate; filtered; and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude product was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (eluting with 4:6 hexane:ethyl acetate) to provide 1.22 g of 4-chloro-1-{2-[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]ethyl}-2-propyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline as a pale yellow solid.

Part B

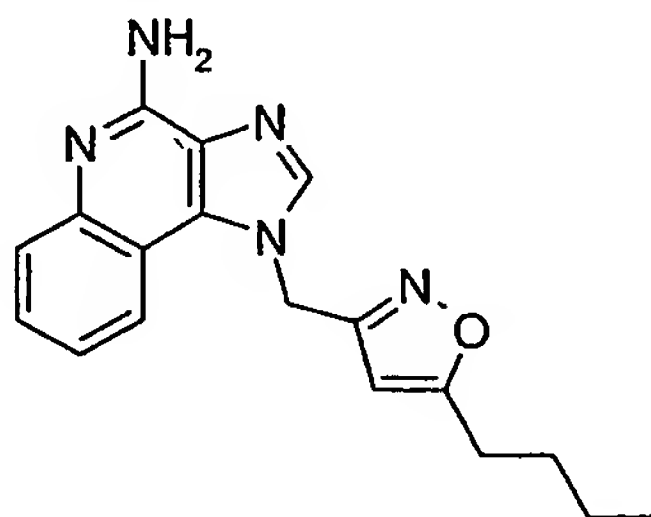
A mixture of 4-chloro-1-{2-[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]ethyl}-2-propyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline (1.22 g, 2.81 mmol) and 7 N ammonia in methanol (100 mL) was sealed in a pressure vessel and heated at 150 °C for 12 hours and allowed to cool to room temperature. The volatiles were removed under reduced pressure, and the crude product was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (eluting with 10% to 15% CMA in chloroform). The product was then triturated sequentially with toluene and hexane/diethyl ether to provide 0.312 g of 1-{2-[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]ethyl}-2-propyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine as a white powder, mp 208.0 - 209.0 °C.

HRMS (ESI) calcd for C₂₄H₂₂FN₅O: 416.1887, found: 416.1909;

Anal. calcd for C₂₄H₂₂FN₅O: C, 69.38; H, 5.34; N, 16.86. Found: C, 69.19; H, 5.27; N, 16.84.

Example 35

5 1-[(5-Butylisoxazol-3-yl)methyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine



Part A

Water (50 mL) and trifluoroacetic acid (50 mL) were added to a solution of phthalimidoacetaldehyde diethyl acetal (30.0 g, 114 mmol) in chloroform (200 mL), and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 48 hours. The aqueous layer was separated, adjusted to pH 7 with the addition of sodium carbonate, and extracted with several portions of dichloromethane. The combined organic fractions were dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide 14.2 g of (1,3-dioxo-1,3-dihydro-2*H*-isoindol-2-yl)acetaldehyde as a white solid.

15 Part B

Hydroxylamine hydrochloride (5.74 g, 82.6 mmol) and triethylamine (31.4 mL, 225 mmol) were sequentially added to a solution of (1,3-dioxo-1,3-dihydro-2*H*-isoindol-2-yl)acetaldehyde (14.2 g, 75.1 mmol) in dichloromethane. The resultant suspension was stirred at room temperature for several hours and adjusted to pH 6 with the addition of saturated aqueous ammonium chloride. The aqueous layer was then separated and extracted with several portions of dichloromethane. The combined organic fractions were dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by chromatography on a vacuum filter funnel (silica gel, eluting with 3% to 5% methanol in dichloromethane). The product was then dissolved in dichloromethane, and the solution was washed with 1 N hydrochloric acid. The aqueous layer was extracted a few times with dichloromethane, and the combined organic fractions were dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated to provide 13.05 g of (1,3-dioxo-1,3-dihydro-2*H*-isoindol-2-yl)ethanal oxime as a white solid.

Part C

N-Chlorosuccinimide (8.50 g, 63.7 mmol) was added to a solution of (1,3-dioxo-1,3-dihydro-2*H*-isoindol-2-yl)ethanal oxime (13.0 g, 63.7 mmol) in DMF (100 mL), and the solution was heated at 50 °C gently for two hours and allowed to cool to room temperature. The solution was diluted with ethyl acetate and washed three times with water and once with brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated to provide 15.0 g of 2-(1,3-dioxo-1,3-dihydro-2*H*-isoindol-2-yl)-*N*-hydroxyethanimidoyl chloride as a pale yellow solid.

Part D

1-Hexyne (5.16 g, 62.9 mmol) and triethylamine (6.36 g, 62.9 mmol) were sequentially added to a suspension of 2-(1,3-dioxo-1,3-dihydro-2*H*-isoindol-2-yl)-*N*-hydroxyethanimidoyl chloride (5.0 g, 21 mmol) in chloroform (80 mL). The solution was stirred overnight at room temperature, washed sequentially with 0.5 M hydrochloric acid and brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude product was purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (eluting with 3:1 to 1:1 hexane:ethyl acetate) to provide 2.14 g of 2-[(5-butylioxazol-3-yl)methyl]-1*H*-isoindole-1,3(2*H*)-dione as a white, crystalline solid.

Part E

A solution of hydrazine hydrate (888 mg, 15.1 mmol) in THF (5 mL) was added to a solution of 2-[(5-butylioxazol-3-yl)methyl]-1*H*-isoindole-1,3(2*H*)-dione (2.14 g, 7.53 mmol) in 2:1 ethanol:THF (60 mL), and the solution was heated at reflux gently for four hours. A precipitate formed and was removed by filtration and washed with THF. The filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to provide 1.0 g of (5-butylioxazol-3-yl)methylamine as a pale yellow solid.

Part F

4-Chloro-3-nitroquinoline (1.35 g, 6.48 mmol) and triethylamine (1.36 mL, 9.73 mmol) were sequentially added to a solution of (5-butylioxazol-3-yl)methylamine (1.00 g, 6.48 mmol) in dichloromethane, and the solution was stirred for 48 hours at room temperature. The volatiles were removed under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (eluting with 3% methanol in dichloromethane) to provide 1.33 g of *N*-[(5-butylioxazol-3-yl)methyl]-3-nitroquinolin-4-amine as a yellow, crystalline solid.

Part G

Catalytic 5% platinum on carbon (150 mg) was added to a suspension of *N*-[(5-butylisoxazol-3-yl)methyl]-3-nitroquinolin-4-amine (1.33 g, 4.08 mmol) in acetonitrile (50 mL), and the mixture was placed under hydrogen pressure (40 psi, 2.8×10^5 Pa) for six hours. The mixture was filtered through a layer of CELITE filter agent, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to provide 1.19 g of *N*^4-[(5-butylisoxazol-3-yl)methyl]quinoline-3,4-diamine.

Part H

Triethyl orthoformate (0.80 mL, 4.80 mmol) and pyridine hydrochloride (0.092 g, 0.80 mmol) were sequentially added to a solution of *N*^4-[(5-butylisoxazol-3-yl)methyl]quinoline-3,4-diamine (1.19 g, 4.00 mmol) in acetonitrile (100 mL), and the solution was heated gently at reflux overnight. An analysis by HPLC indicated the presence of starting material, and additional triethyl orthoformate and pyridine hydrochloride were added. The solution was heated at reflux for an additional 24 hours. The solvents were removed under reduced pressure, and the residue was partitioned between dichloromethane and saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate. The aqueous layer was separated and extracted with dichloromethane, and the combined organic fractions were washed with brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude product was purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (eluting with 3% to 8% methanol in dichloromethane) to provide 1.06 g of 1-[(5-butylisoxazol-3-yl)methyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline as an orange solid.

Part I

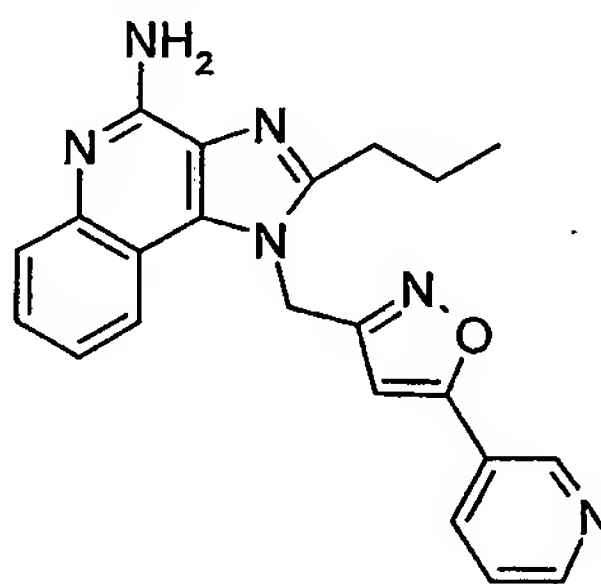
mCPBA (930 mg of 77% pure material, 4.2 mmol) was added to a solution of 1-[(5-butylisoxazol-3-yl)methyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline (1.06 g, 3.46 mmol) in chloroform (40 mL), and the solution was stirred for 1.5 hours at room temperature. *p*-Toluenesulfonyl chloride (726 g, 3.81 mmol) and concentrated ammonium hydroxide (15 mL) were then added, and the mixture was stirred vigorously for three hours at room temperature. Saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate was added, and the aqueous layer was separated and extracted several times with chloroform. The combined organic fractions were washed with brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting orange solid was purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (eluting with 4% to 8% methanol in dichloromethane) to

provide 0.92 g of 1-[(5-butylisoxazol-3-yl)methyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine as a tan crystalline solid, mp 201-203 °C.

¹H NMR (300 MHz, *d*₆-DMSO) δ 8.28 (s, 1H), 7.88 (d, *J* = 8.1 Hz, 1H), 7.42 (m, 2H), 7.15 (t, *J* = 8.2 Hz, 1H), 6.75 (br s, 2H), 6.19 (s, 1H), 5.93 (s, 2H), 2.71-2.65 (m, 2H), 1.55-1.49 (m, 2H), 1.28-1.21 (m, 2H), 0.83 (t, *J* = 7.3 Hz, 3H); HRMS (ESI) calcd for C₁₈H₁₉N₅O: 322.1668; found: 322.1684.

Example 36

2-Propyl-1-[(5-pyridin-3-ylisoxazol-3-yl)methyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine



Part A

The method described in Part D of Example 35 was followed using 3-ethynylpyridine (3.24 g, 31.4 mmol) instead of 1-hexyne with the modification that the eluent used for chromatographic purification was a gradient of 3:1 hexane:ethyl acetate to 100% ethyl acetate to 9:1 ethyl acetate:dichloromethane. 2-[(5-Pyridin-3-ylisoxazol-3-yl)methyl]-1*H*-isoindole-1,3(2*H*)-dione (2.95 g) was obtained as a yellow solid.

Part B

2-[(5-Pyridin-3-ylisoxazol-3-yl)methyl]-1*H*-isoindole-1,3(2*H*)-dione (2.95 g, 9.67 mmol) was treated with hydrazine hydrate (1.14 g, 19.3 mmol) according to the method described in Part E of Example 35 to provide (5-pyridin-3-ylisoxazol-3-yl)methylamine as a pale yellow solid.

Part C

4-Chloro-3-nitroquinoline (2.09 g, 9.99 mmol) and triethylamine (2.10 mL, 15.0 mmol) were sequentially added to a solution of (5-pyridin-3-ylisoxazol-3-yl)methylamine (2.09 g, 9.99 mmol) in dichloromethane, and the solution was stirred overnight at room temperature. The resultant red solution was washed sequentially with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate and brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated

under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (eluting with 2% to 5% methanol in dichloromethane) to provide 1.17 g of 3-nitro-*N*-[(5-pyridin-3-ylisoxazol-3-yl)methyl]quinolin-4-amine as a yellow-orange solid.

Part D

- 5 3-Nitro-*N*-[(5-pyridin-3-ylisoxazol-3-yl)methyl]quinolin-4-amine (1.17 g, 3.37 mmol) was hydrogenated in the presence of 5% platinum on carbon (0.120 g) according to the method described in Part G of Example 35 to provide 0.96 g of *N*⁴-[(5-pyridin-3-ylisoxazol-3-yl)methyl]quinoline-3,4-diamine.

Part E

- 10 The methods of Part H of Example 35 were used to treat *N*⁴-[(5-pyridin-3-ylisoxazol-3-yl)methyl]quinoline-3,4-diamine (0.95 g, 2.98 mmol) with trimethyl orthobutyrate (0.57 mL, 3.6 mmol) and pyridine hydrochloride (0.069 g, 0.60 mmol) and purify the product to provide 0.930 g of 2-propyl-1-[(5-pyridin-3-ylisoxazol-3-yl)methyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline as a tan solid.

15 Part F

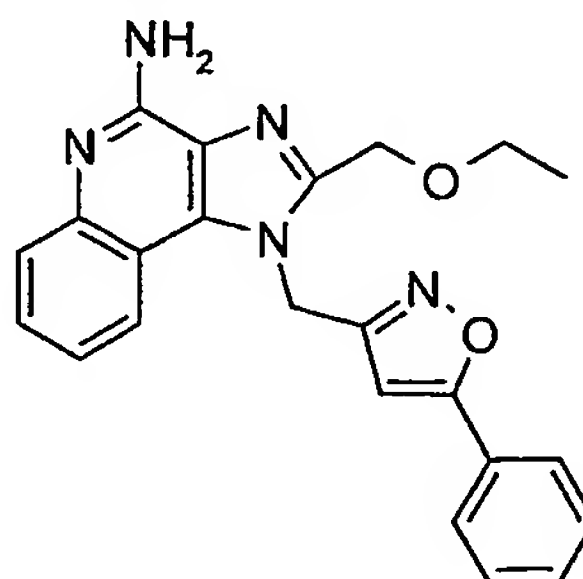
- The methods described in Part I of Example 35 were used to treat 2-propyl-1-[(5-pyridin-3-ylisoxazol-3-yl)methyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline (0.920 g, 3.00 mmol) with mCPBA (0.808 g of 77% pure material, 3.6 mmol) followed by *p*-toluenesulfonyl chloride (0.629 g, 3.30 mmol) and concentrated ammonium hydroxide (15 mL) and purify the final
20 product to provide 0.46 g of 2-propyl-1-[(5-pyridin-3-ylisoxazol-3-yl)methyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine as a tan crystalline solid, mp 206-207 °C.

¹H NMR (300 MHz, *d*₆-DMSO) δ 9.06 (d, *J* = 2.2 Hz, 1H), 8.66 (m, 1H), 8.23 (d, *J* = 8.0 Hz, 1H), 7.94 (d, *J* = 8.2 Hz, 1H), 7.65-7.25 (m, 3H), 7.16-7.12 (m, 2H), 6.55 (br s, 2H), 5.98 (s, 2H), 2.93 (t, *J* = 7.4 Hz, 2H), 1.86-1.81 (m, 2H), 1.02 (t, *J* = 7.2 Hz, 3H);

- 25 HRMS (ESI) calcd for C₂₂H₂₁N₆O: 385.1777; found: 385.1781.

Example 37

2-(Ethoxymethyl)-1-[(5-phenylisoxazol-3-yl)methyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine



Part A

5 The methods described in Part D of Example 35 were followed using phenylacetylene (5.35 g, 52.4 mmol) instead of 1-hexyne to provide 3.50 g of 2-[(5-phenylisoxazol-3-yl)methyl]-1*H*-isoindole-1,3(2*H*)-dione as a pale yellow, crystalline solid.

Part B

10 2-[(5-Phenylisoxazol-3-yl)methyl]-1*H*-isoindole-1,3(2*H*)-dione (3.48 g, 11.4 mmol) was treated with hydrazine hydrate (1.35 g, 22.9 mmol) according to the method described in Part E of Example 35 to provide (5-phenylisoxazol-3-yl)methylamine as a pale yellow solid.

Part C

15 A suspension of 4-chloro-3-nitroquinoline (2.29 g, 11.0 mmol) and (5-phenylisoxazol-3-yl)methylamine (1.92 g, 11.0 mmol) in dichloromethane (200 mL) was cooled to 0 °C, and triethylamine (2.30 mL, 16.5 mmol) was added. The resultant solution was allowed to warm to room temperature slowly and stirred overnight. The volatiles were removed under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by flash column
20 chromatography on silica gel (eluting with 3% to 8% methanol in dichloromethane) to provide 2.90 g of 3-nitro-*N*-[(5-phenylisoxazol-3-yl)methyl]quinolin-4-amine.

Part D

 3-Nitro-*N*-[(5-phenylisoxazol-3-yl)methyl]quinolin-4-amine (2.90 g, 8.37 mmol) was hydrogenated in the presence of 5% platinum on carbon according to the method
25 described in Part G of Example 35 to provide 2.06 g of *N*⁴-[(5-phenylisoxazol-3-yl)methyl]quinoline-3,4-diamine.

Part E

A solution of ethoxyacetyl chloride (0.87 g, 7.1 mmol) in acetonitrile (10 mL) was added to a solution of *N*⁴-[(5-phenylisoxazol-3-yl)methyl]quinoline-3,4-diamine (2.05 g, 6.48 mmol) in acetonitrile (100 mL), and the solution was stirred at room temperature overnight. The volatiles were removed under reduced pressure, and the residue was dissolved in 3:1 ethanol:water (100 mL). Solid sodium hydroxide (389 mg, 9.72 mmol) was added, and the solution was heated at reflux overnight. The ethanol was removed under reduced pressure, and the resultant aqueous solution was adjusted to pH 5 with the additional of dilute hydrochloric acid. The acidic solution was extracted several times with dichloromethane, and the combined organic fractions were washed with brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude product was purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (eluting with 4% to 6% methanol in dichloromethane to provide 0.650 g of 2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-[(5-phenylisoxazol-3-yl)methyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline as a white solid.

Part F

The methods described in Part I of Example 35 were used to treat 2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-[(5-phenylisoxazol-3-yl)methyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinoline (0.650 g, 1.69 mmol) with mCPBA (0.455 g of 77% pure material, 2.0 mmol) followed by *p*-toluenesulfonyl chloride (0.355 g, 1.86 mmol) and concentrated ammonium hydroxide (15 mL) and purify the final product to provide 0.38 g of 2-(ethoxymethyl)-1-[(5-phenylisoxazol-3-yl)methyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine as a tan crystalline solid, mp 221-223 °C.

¹H NMR (300 MHz, *d*₆-DMSO) δ 8.01 (d, *J* = 7.4 Hz, 1H), 7.80 (m, 2H), 7.60 (d, *J* = 7.4 Hz, 1H), 7.49 (m, 3H), 7.44 (t, *J* = 8.2 Hz, 1H), 7.15 (t, *J* = 8.2 Hz, 1H), 6.91 (s, 1H), 6.70 (br s, 2H), 6.04 (s, 2H), 4.88 (s, 2H), 3.53 (q, *J* = 7.0 Hz, 2H), 1.02 (t, *J* = 7.0 Hz, 3H); HRMS (ESI) calcd for C₂₃H₂₁N₅O₂: 400.1774; found: 400.1784.

Examples 38 – 65

Part A

The methods described in Examples 30 and 31 were repeated on a larger scale to provide (4-amino-1-[[3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl]methyl]-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-2-yl)methanol. The reaction described in Example 31 was heated at reflux and

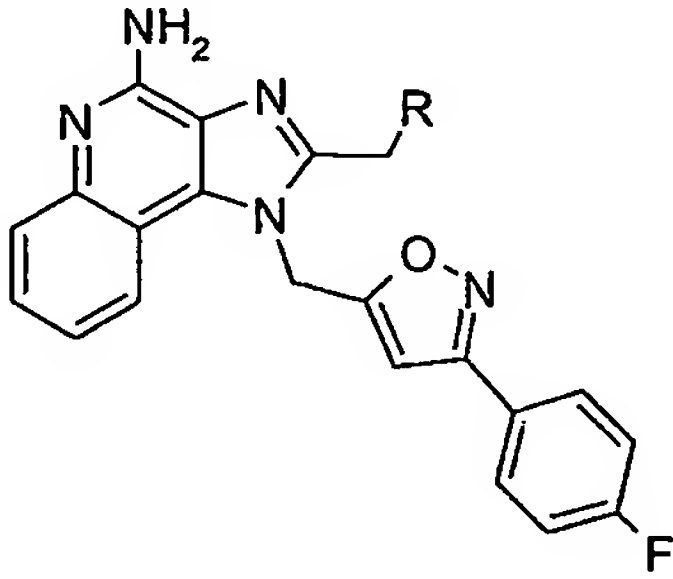

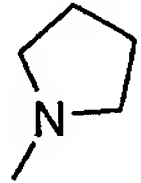
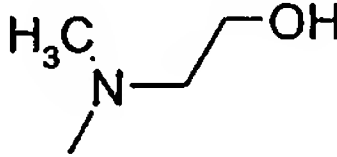
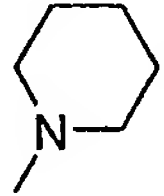
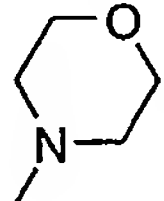
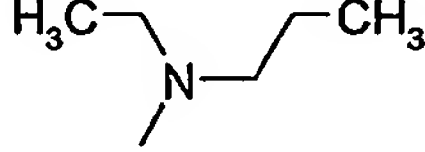
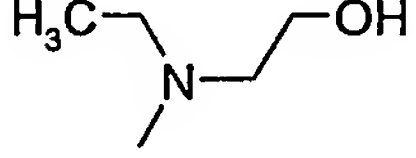
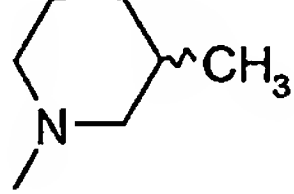
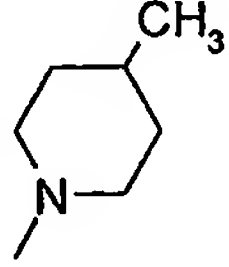
was complete within three hours. Thionyl chloride (0.45 mL, 6.17 mmol) was added dropwise to a suspension of (4-amino-1-{{3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl}methyl}-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-2-yl)methanol (1.2 g, 3.08 mmol) in dichloromethane (30 mL), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1.8 hours. The volatiles were removed under reduced pressure, and the residue was combined with material from another run, triturated with a mixture of ethanol and diethyl ether, and isolated by filtration to provide 1.54 g 2-(chloromethyl)-1-{{3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl}methyl}-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine hydrochloride.

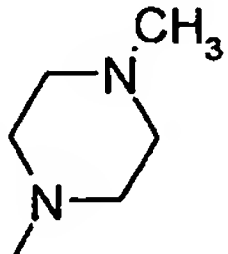
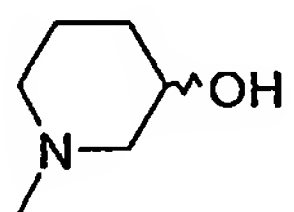
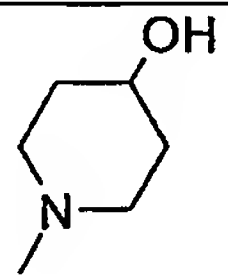
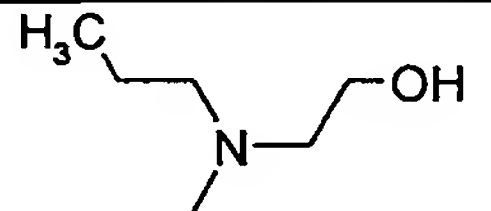
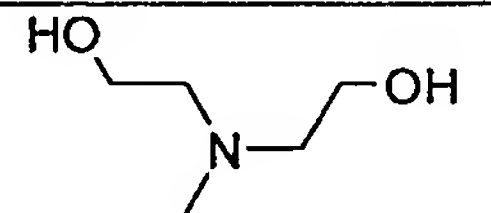
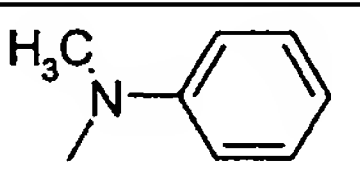
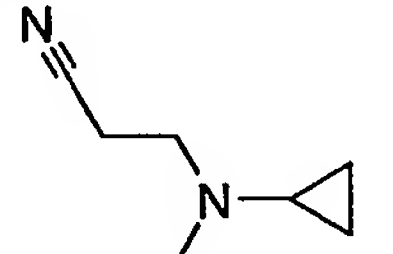
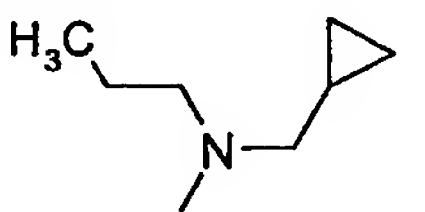
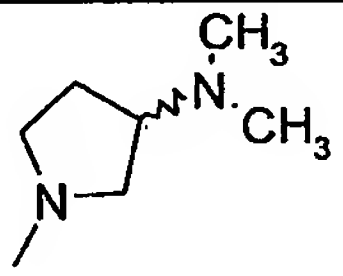
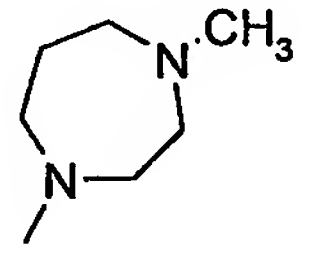
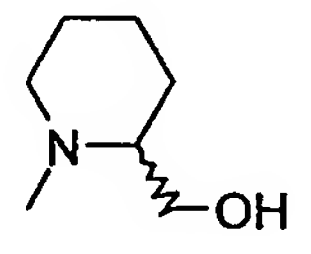
Part B

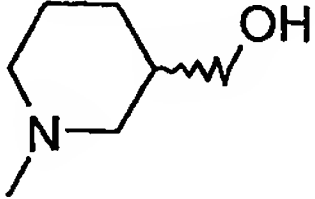
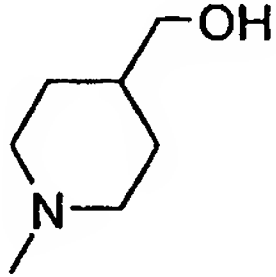
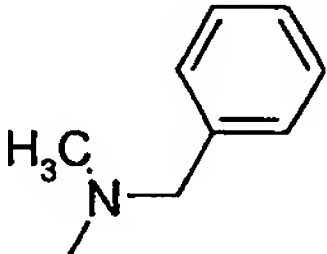
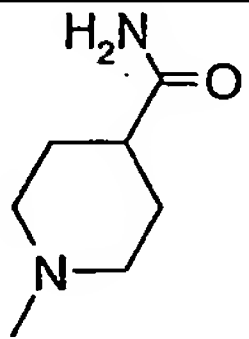
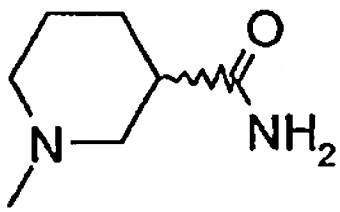
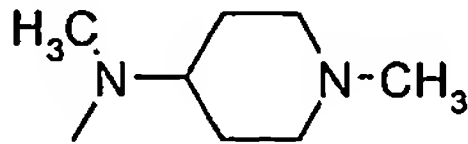
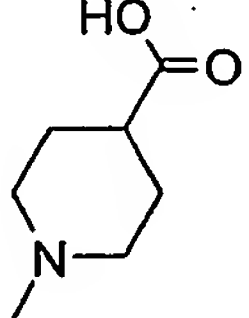
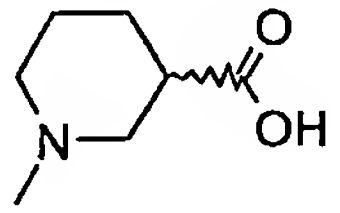
A secondary amine (0.15 mmol, 1.5 equivalents) from the table below was added to a test tube containing 2-(chloromethyl)-1-{{3-(4-fluorophenyl)isoxazol-5-yl}methyl}-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-4-amine hydrochloride (44 mg, 0.097 mmol), *N,N*-diisopropylethylamine (0.057 mL, 0.33 mmol), and *N,N*-dimethylacetamide (DMA) (1 mL). The test tube was capped and heated overnight at 60 °C. The volatiles were removed from each tube by vacuum centrifugation.

The compounds were purified by reversed phase prep HPLC using a Waters FractionLynx automated purification system. The prep HPLC fractions were analyzed using a Waters LC/TOF-MS, and the appropriate fractions were centrifuge evaporated to provide the trifluoroacetate salt of the desired compound. Reversed phase preparative liquid chromatography was performed with non-linear gradient elution from 5-95% B where A is 0.05% trifluoroacetic acid/water and B is 0.05% trifluoroacetic acid/acetonitrile. Fractions were collected by mass-selective triggering. The table below shows the reagent added to each test tube, the structure of the resulting compound, and the observed accurate mass for the isolated trifluoroacetate salt.

Examples 38 - 65

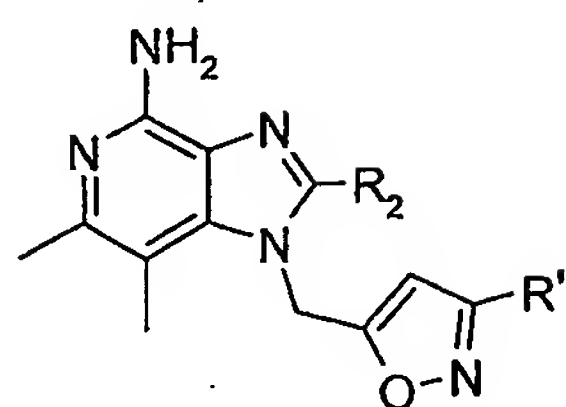
			
Example	Reagent	R	Measured Mass (M+H)
38	None		408.1008
39	Pyrrolidine		443.1994
40	2-(Methylamino)ethanol		447.1921
41	Piperidine		457.2122
42	Morpholine		459.1958
43	N-Ethyl-N-propylamine		459.2310
44	2-Ethylaminoethanol		461.2097
45	3-Methylpiperidine		471.2268
46	4-Methylpiperidine		471.2292

47	1-Methylpiperazine		472.2256
48	3-Hydroxypiperidine		473.2093
49	4-Hydroxypiperidine		473.2111
50	2-(Propylamino)ethanol		475.2244
51	Diethanolamine		477.2047
52	<i>N</i> -Methylaniline		479.2035
53	3-(Cyclopropylamino)propionitrile		482.2105
54	<i>N</i> -Propylcyclopropanemethylamine		485.2430
55	3-(Dimethylamino)pyrrolidine		486.2397
56	<i>N</i> -Methylhomopiperazine		486.2385
57	2-Piperidinemethanol		487.2227

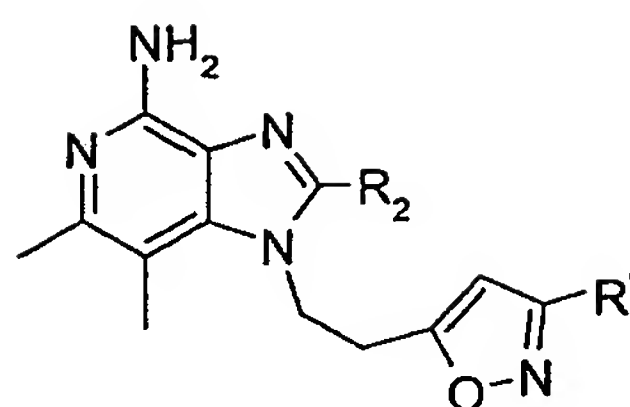
58	3-(Hydroxymethyl)piperidine		487.2288
59	4-(Hydroxymethyl)piperidine		487.2223
60	<i>N</i> -Methylbenzylamine		493.2114
61	Isonipecotamide		500.2188
62	Nipecotamide		500.2159
63	1-Methyl-4-(Methylamino)piperidine		500.2526
64	Isonipecotic acid		501.2057
65	Nipecotic acid		501.2013

Exemplary Compounds

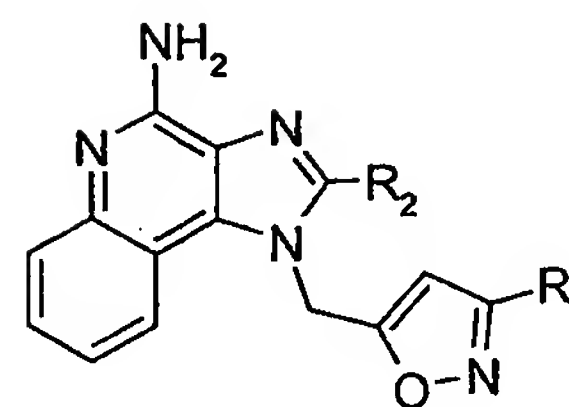
5 Certain exemplary compounds, including some of those described above in the Examples, have the following Formulas (IIb, IIc, IIIc, IIId, IVc, IVd, Vc, or Vd) and the following R' and R₂ substituents, wherein each line of the table is matched with Formula IIb, IIc, IIIc, IIId, IVc, IVd, Vc, or Vd to represent a specific embodiment of the invention.



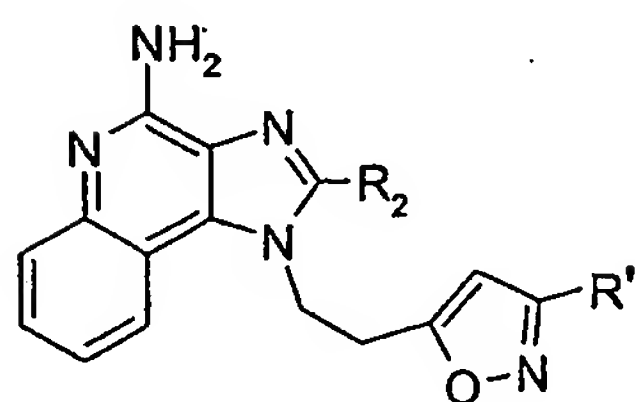
IIb



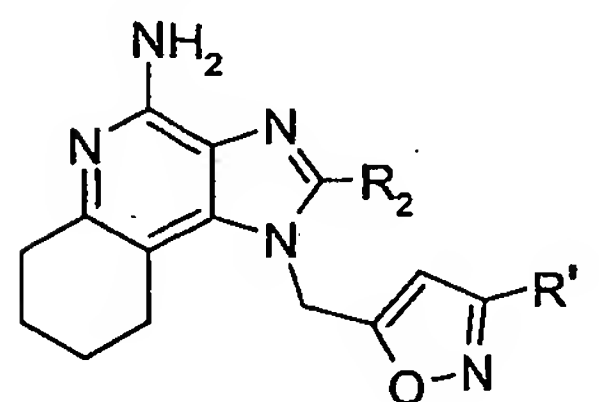
IIc



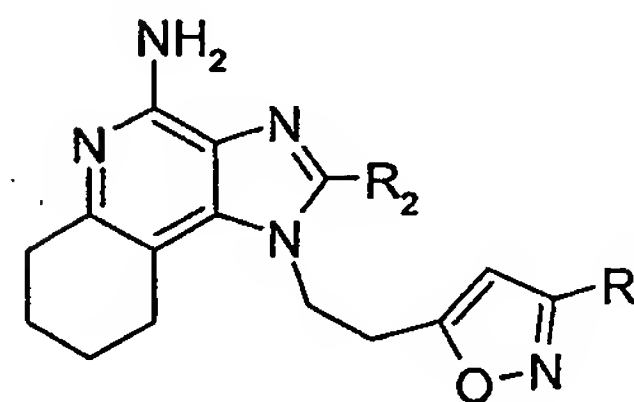
IIIc



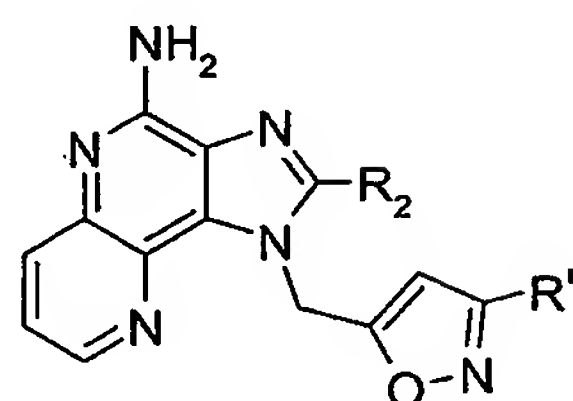
IIIId



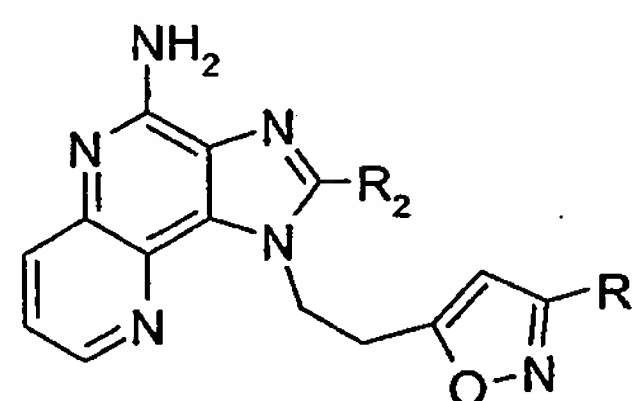
IVc



IVd



Vc



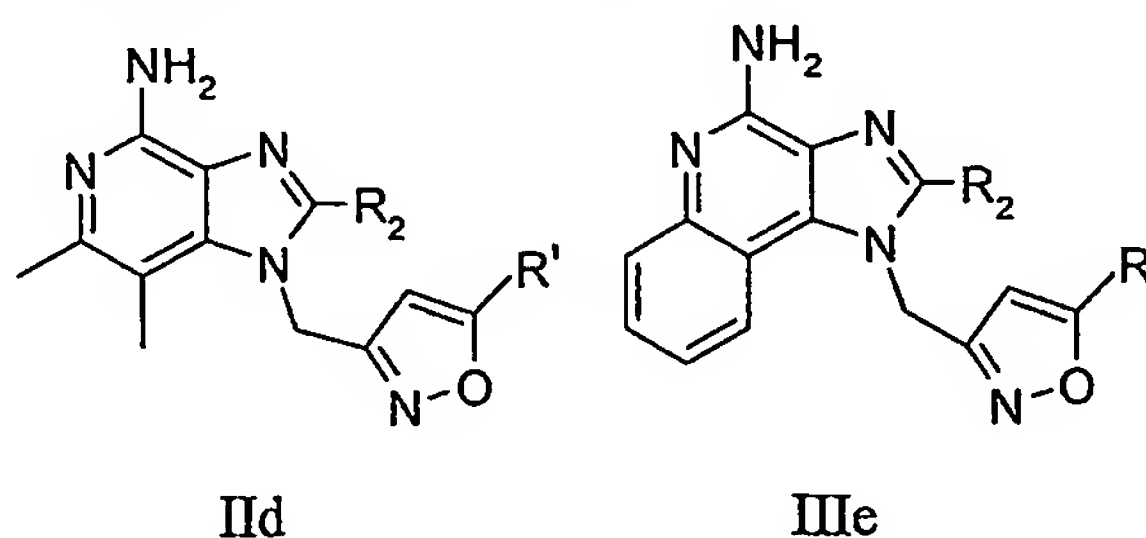
Vd

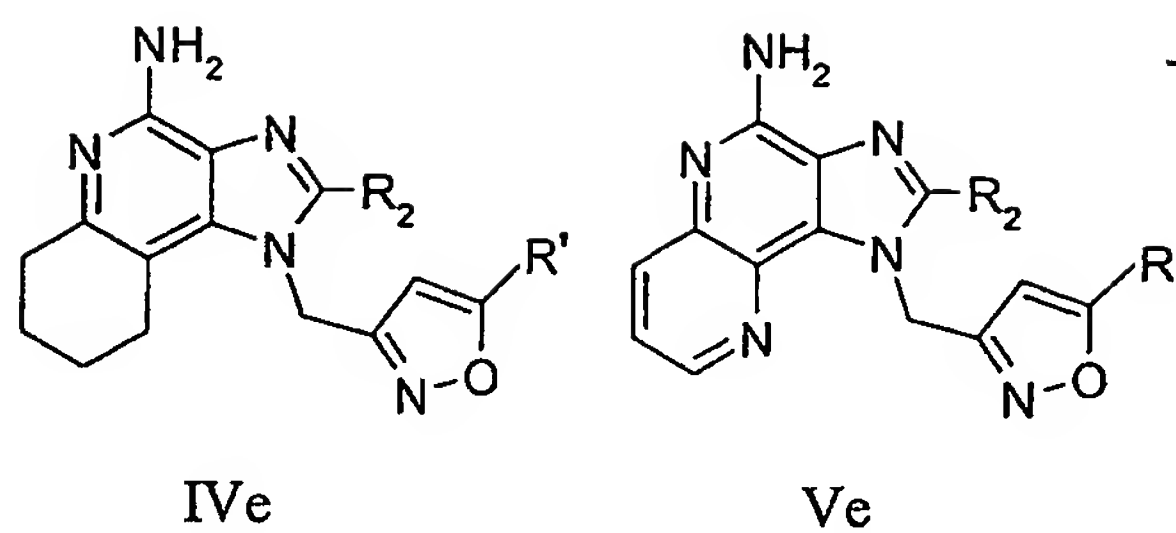
5

R'	R ₂
methyl	hydrogen
phenyl	hydrogen
4-fluorophenyl	hydrogen
pyridin-3-yl	hydrogen
methyl	methyl
phenyl	methyl
4-fluorophenyl	methyl
pyridin-3-yl	methyl
methyl	ethyl
phenyl	ethyl
4-fluorophenyl	ethyl
pyridin-3-yl	ethyl
methyl	<u>n</u> -propyl
phenyl	<u>n</u> -propyl

4-fluorophenyl	<u>n</u> -propyl
pyridin-3-yl	<u>n</u> -propyl
methyl	ethoxymethyl
phenyl	ethoxymethyl
4-fluorophenyl	ethoxymethyl
pyridin-3-yl	ethoxymethyl
methyl	hydroxymethyl
phenyl	hydroxymethyl
4-fluorophenyl	hydroxymethyl
pyridin-3-yl	hydroxymethyl
methyl	2-hydroxyethyl
phenyl	2-hydroxyethyl
4-fluorophenyl	2-hydroxyethyl
pyridin-3-yl	2-hydroxyethyl
methyl	fluoromethyl
phenyl	fluoromethyl
4-fluorophenyl	fluoromethyl
pyridin-3-yl	fluoromethyl

Certain exemplary compounds, including some of those described above in the Examples, have the following Formulas (II_d, III_e, IV_e, or V_e) and the following R' and R₂ substituents, wherein each line of the table is matched with Formula II_d, III_e, IV_e, or V_e to represent a specific embodiment of the invention.





R'	R ₂
butyl	hydrogen
phenyl	hydrogen
4-fluorophenyl	hydrogen
pyridin-3-yl	hydrogen
butyl	methyl
phenyl	methyl
4-fluorophenyl	methyl
pyridin-3-yl	methyl
butyl	ethyl
phenyl	ethyl
4-fluorophenyl	ethyl
pyridin-3-yl	ethyl
butyl	<u>n</u> -propyl
phenyl	<u>n</u> -propyl
4-fluorophenyl	<u>n</u> -propyl
pyridin-3-yl	<u>n</u> -propyl
butyl	ethoxymethyl
phenyl	ethoxymethyl
4-fluorophenyl	ethoxymethyl
pyridin-3-yl	ethoxymethyl
butyl	hydroxymethyl
phenyl	hydroxymethyl
4-fluorophenyl	hydroxymethyl
pyridin-3-yl	hydroxymethyl

butyl	2-hydroxyethyl
phenyl	2-hydroxyethyl
4-fluorophenyl	2-hydroxyethyl
pyridin-3-yl	2-hydroxyethyl
butyl	fluoromethyl
phenyl	fluoromethyl
4-fluorophenyl	fluoromethyl
pyridin-3-yl	fluoromethyl

Compounds of the invention have been found to induce cytokine biosynthesis when tested using the methods described below.

5

CYTOKINE INDUCTION IN HUMAN CELLS

An in vitro human blood cell system is used to assess cytokine induction. Activity is based on the measurement of interferon (α) and tumor necrosis factor (α) (IFN- α and TNF- α , respectively) secreted into culture media as described by Testerman et. al. in
 10 "Cytokine Induction by the Immunomodulators Imiquimod and S-27609", *Journal of Leukocyte Biology*, 58, 365-372 (September, 1995).

Blood Cell Preparation for Culture

Whole blood from healthy human donors is collected by venipuncture into
 15 vacutainer tubes or syringes containing EDTA. Peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMC) are separated from whole blood by density gradient centrifugation using HISTOPAQUE-1077 (Sigma, St. Louis, MO) or Ficoll-Paque Plus (Amersham Biosciences Piscataway, NJ). Blood is diluted 1:1 with Dulbecco's Phosphate Buffered Saline (DPBS) or Hank's Balanced Salts Solution (HBSS). Alternately, whole blood is
 20 placed in Accuspin (Sigma) or LeucoSep (Greiner Bio-One, Inc., Longwood, FL) centrifuge frit tubes containing density gradient medium. The PBMC layer is collected and washed twice with DPBS or HBSS and re-suspended at 4×10^6 cells/mL in RPMI complete. The PBMC suspension is added to 96 well flat bottom sterile tissue culture plates containing an equal volume of RPMI complete media containing test compound.

Compound Preparation

The compounds are solubilized in dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO). The DMSO concentration should not exceed a final concentration of 1% for addition to the culture wells. The compounds are generally tested at concentrations ranging from 30-0.014 μM . Controls include cell samples with media only, cell samples with DMSO only (no compound), and cell samples with reference compound.

Incubation

The solution of test compound is added at 60 μM to the first well containing RPMI complete and serial 3 fold dilutions are made in the wells. The PBMC suspension is then added to the wells in an equal volume, bringing the test compound concentrations to the desired range (usually 30-0.014 μM). The final concentration of PBMC suspension is 2×10^6 cells/mL. The plates are covered with sterile plastic lids, mixed gently and then incubated for 18 to 24 hours at 37°C in a 5% carbon dioxide atmosphere.

Separation

Following incubation the plates are centrifuged for 10 minutes at 1000 rpm (approximately 200 x g) at 4°C. The cell-free culture supernatant is removed and transferred to sterile polypropylene tubes. Samples are maintained at -30 to -70°C until analysis. The samples are analyzed for IFN- α by ELISA and for TNF- α by IGEN/BioVeris Assay.

Interferon (α) and Tumor Necrosis Factor (α) Analysis

IFN- α concentration is determined with a human multi-subtype colorimetric sandwich ELISA (Catalog Number 41105) from PBL Biomedical Laboratories, Piscataway, NJ. Results are expressed in pg/mL.

The TNF- α concentration is determined by ORIGEN M-Series Immunoassay and read on an IGEN M-8 analyzer from BioVeris Corporation, formerly known as IGEN International, Gaithersburg, MD. The immunoassay uses a human TNF- α capture and detection antibody pair (Catalog Numbers AHC3419 and AHC3712) from Biosource International, Camarillo, CA. Results are expressed in pg/mL.

Assay Data and Analysis

In total, the data output of the assay consists of concentration values of TNF- α and IFN- α (y-axis) as a function of compound concentration (x-axis).

5 Analysis of the data has two steps. First, the greater of the mean DMSO (DMSO control wells) or the experimental background (usually 20 pg/mL for IFN- α and 40 pg/mL for TNF- α) is subtracted from each reading. If any negative values result from background subtraction, the reading is reported as " * ", and is noted as not reliably detectable. In subsequent calculations and statistics, " * ", is treated as a zero. Second, all
10 background subtracted values are multiplied by a single adjustment ratio to decrease experiment to experiment variability. The adjustment ratio is the area of the reference compound in the new experiment divided by the expected area of the reference compound based on the past 61 experiments (unadjusted readings). This results in the scaling of the reading (y-axis) for the new data without changing the shape of the dose-response curve.
15 The reference compound used is 2-[4-amino-2-ethoxymethyl-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro- α,α -dimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-1-yl]ethanol hydrate (U.S. Patent No. 5,352,784; Example 91) and the expected area is the sum of the median dose values from the past 61 experiments.

20 The minimum effective concentration is calculated based on the background-subtracted, reference-adjusted results for a given experiment and compound. The minimum effective concentration (μ molar) is the lowest of the tested compound concentrations that induces a response over a fixed cytokine concentration for the tested cytokine (usually 20 pg/mL for IFN- α and 40 pg/mL for TNF- α). The maximal response is the maximal amount of cytokine (pg/ml) produced in the dose-response.

25

CYTOKINE INDUCTION IN HUMAN CELLS

(High Throughput Screen)

The CYTOKINE INDUCTION IN HUMAN CELLS test method described above was modified as follows for high throughput screening.

30

Blood Cell Preparation for Culture

Whole blood from healthy human donors is collected by venipuncture into vacutainer tubes or syringes containing EDTA. Peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMC) are separated from whole blood by density gradient centrifugation using
5 HISTOPAQUE-1077 (Sigma, St. Louis, MO) or Ficoll-Paque Plus (Amersham Biosciences Piscataway, NJ). Whole blood is placed in Accuspin (Sigma) or LeucoSep (Greiner Bio-One, Inc., Longwood, FL) centrifuge frit tubes containing density gradient medium. The PBMC layer is collected and washed twice with DPBS or HBSS and re-suspended at 4×10^6 cells/mL in RPMI complete (2-fold the final cell density). The PBMC
10 suspension is added to 96-well flat bottom sterile tissue culture plates.

Compound Preparation

The compounds are solubilized in dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO). The compounds are generally tested at concentrations ranging from 30 - 0.014 μ M. Controls include cell
15 samples with media only, cell samples with DMSO only (no compound), and cell samples with a reference compound 2-[4-amino-2-ethoxymethyl-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro- α,α -dimethyl-1H-imidazo[4,5-c]quinolin-1-yl]ethanol hydrate (U.S. Patent No. 5,352,784; Example 91) on each plate. The solution of test compound is added at 7.5 mM to the first well of a dosing plate and serial 3 fold dilutions are made for the 7 subsequent concentrations in
20 DMSO. RPMI Complete media is then added to the test compound dilutions in order to reach a final compound concentration of 2-fold higher (60 - 0.028 μ M) than the final tested concentration range.

Incubation

Compound solution is then added to the wells containing the PBMC suspension bringing the test compound concentrations to the desired range (usually 30 - 0.014 μ M)
25 and the DMSO concentration to 0.4 %. The final concentration of PBMC suspension is 2×10^6 cells/mL. The plates are covered with sterile plastic lids, mixed gently and then incubated for 18 to 24 hours at 37°C in a 5% carbon dioxide atmosphere.

30 Separation

Following incubation the plates are centrifuged for 10 minutes at 1000 rpm (approximately 200 g) at 4°C. 4-plex Human Panel MSD MULTI-SPOT 96-well plates

are pre-coated with the appropriate capture antibodies by MesoScale Discovery, Inc. (MSD, Gaithersburg, MD). The cell-free culture supernatants are removed and transferred to the MSD plates. Fresh samples are typically tested, although they may be maintained at -30 to -70°C until analysis.

5

Interferon- α and Tumor Necrosis Factor- α Analysis

MSD MULTI-SPOT plates contain within each well capture antibodies for human TNF- α and human IFN- α that have been pre-coated on specific spots. Each well contains four spots: one human TNF- α capture antibody (MSD) spot, one human IFN- α capture antibody (PBL Biomedical Laboratories, Piscataway, NJ) spot, and two inactive bovine serum albumin spots. The human TNF- α capture and detection antibody pair is from MesoScale Discovery. The human IFN- α multi-subtype antibody (PBL Biomedical Laboratories) captures all IFN- α subtypes except IFN- α F (IFNA21). Standards consist of recombinant human TNF- α (R&D Systems, Minneapolis, MN) and IFN- α (PBL Biomedical Laboratories). Samples and separate standards are added at the time of analysis to each MSD plate. Two human IFN- α detection antibodies (Cat. Nos. 21112 & 21100, PBL) are used in a two to one ratio (weight:weight) to each other to determine the IFN- α concentrations. The cytokine-specific detection antibodies are labeled with the SULFO-TAG reagent (MSD). After adding the SULFO-TAG labeled detection antibodies to the wells, each well's electrochemoluminescent levels are read using MSD's SECTOR HTS READER. Results are expressed in pg/mL upon calculation with known cytokine standards.

10
15
20

Assay Data and Analysis

In total, the data output of the assay consists of concentration values of TNF- α or IFN- α (y-axis) as a function of compound concentration (x-axis).

A plate-wise scaling is performed within a given experiment aimed at reducing plate-to-plate variability associated within the same experiment. First, the greater of the median DMSO (DMSO control wells) or the experimental background (usually 20 pg/mL for IFN- α and 40 pg/mL for TNF- α) is subtracted from each reading. Negative values that may result from background subtraction are set to zero. Each plate within a given experiment has a reference compound that serves as a control. This control is used to

30

calculate a median expected area under the curve across all plates in the assay. A plate-wise scaling factor is calculated for each plate as a ratio of the area of the reference compound on the particular plate to the median expected area for the entire experiment. The data from each plate are then multiplied by the plate-wise scaling factor for all plates.

5 Only data from plates bearing a scaling factor of between 0.5 and 2.0 (for both cytokines IFN- α , TNF- α) are reported. Data from plates with scaling factors outside the above mentioned interval are retested until they bear scaling factors inside the above mentioned interval. The above method produces a scaling of the y-values without altering the shape of the curve. The reference compound used is 2-[4-amino-2-ethoxymethyl-6,7,8,9-

10 tetrahydro- α,α -dimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-1-yl]ethanol hydrate (U.S. Patent No. 5,352,784; Example 91). The median expected area is the median area across all plates that are part of a given experiment.

A second scaling may also be performed to reduce inter-experiment variability (across multiple experiments). All background-subtracted values are multiplied by a

15 single adjustment ratio to decrease experiment-to-experiment variability. The adjustment ratio is the area of the reference compound in the new experiment divided by the expected area of the reference compound based on an average of previous experiments (unadjusted readings). This results in the scaling of the reading (y-axis) for the new data without changing the shape of the dose-response curve. The reference compound used is 2-[4-

20 amino-2-ethoxymethyl-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro- α,α -dimethyl-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]quinolin-1-yl]ethanol hydrate (U.S. Patent No. 5,352,784; Example 91) and the expected area is the sum of the median dose values from an average of previous experiments.

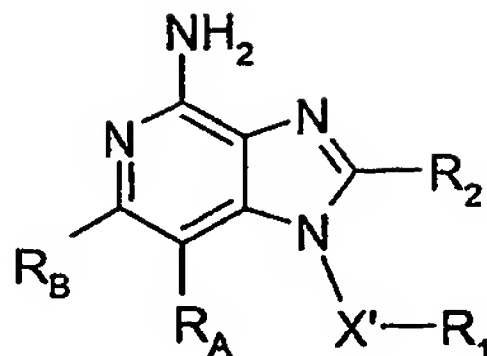
The minimum effective concentration is calculated based on the background-subtracted, reference-adjusted results for a given experiment and compound. The

25 minimum effective concentration (μ molar) is the lowest of the tested compound concentrations that induces a response over a fixed cytokine concentration for the tested cytokine (usually 20 pg/mL for IFN- α and 40 pg/mL for TNF- α). The maximal response is the maximal amount of cytokine (pg/ml) produced in the dose-response.

The complete disclosures of the patents, patent documents, and publications cited herein are incorporated by reference in their entirety as if each were individually incorporated. Various modifications and alterations to this invention will become apparent to those skilled in the art without departing from the scope and spirit of this invention. It should be understood that this invention is not intended to be unduly limited by the illustrative embodiments and examples set forth herein and that such examples and embodiments are presented by way of example only with the scope of the invention intended to be limited only by the claims set forth herein as follows.

WHAT IS CLAIMED IS:

1. A compound of the Formula I:

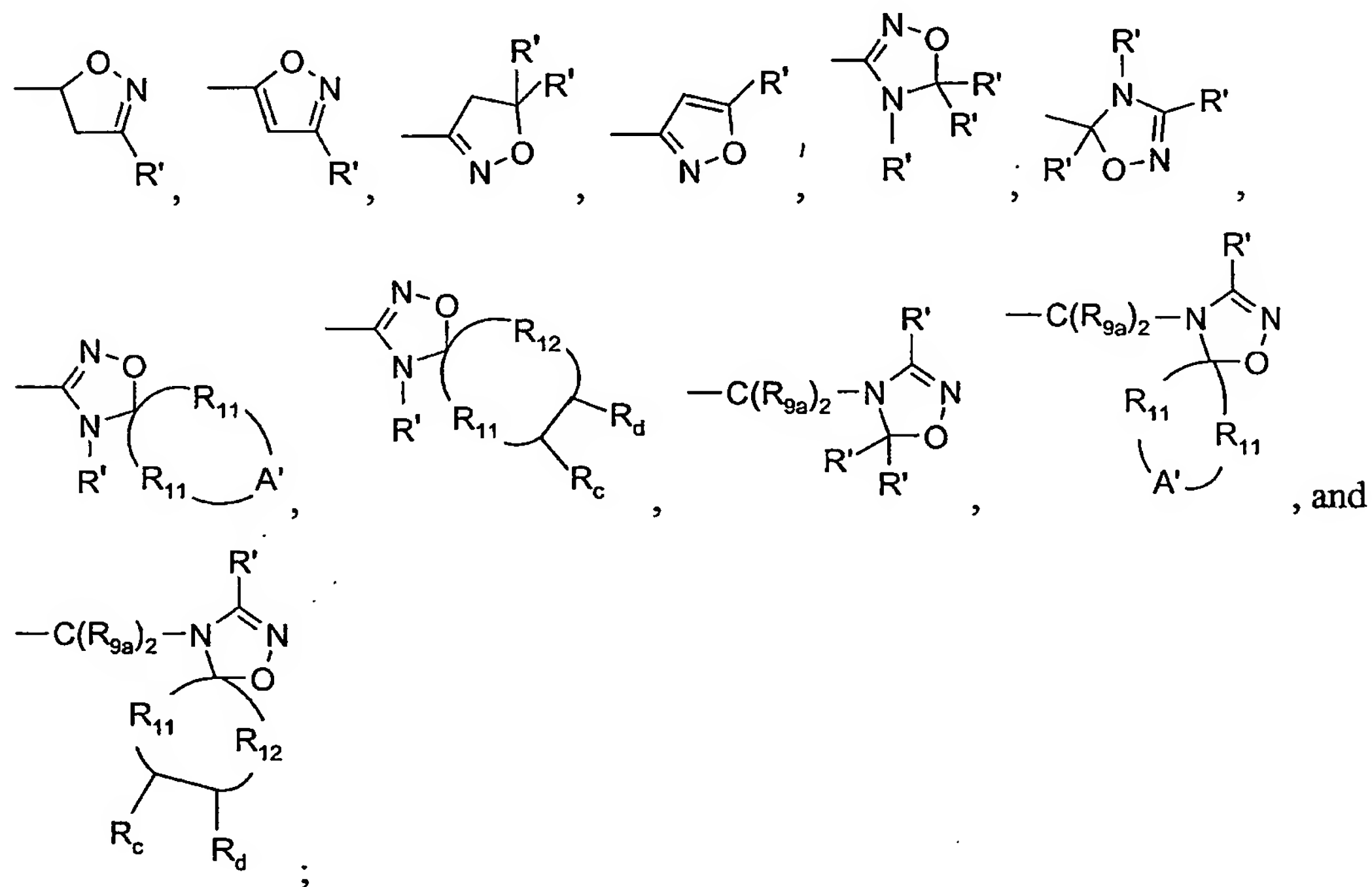


I

wherein:

X' is selected from the group consisting of -CH(R₉)-, -CH(R₉)-alkylene-, and -CH(R₉)-alkenylene-;

R_1 is selected from the group consisting of:



R' is selected from the group consisting of:

- hydrogen,
alkyl,
alkenyl,
aryl,
arylalkylenyl,

heteroaryl,
heteroarylalkylenyl,
heterocyclyl,
heterocyclylalkylenyl, and
5 alkyl, alkenyl, aryl, arylalkylenyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkylenyl,
heterocyclyl, or heterocyclylalkylenyl, substituted by one or more substituents selected
from the group consisting of:

hydroxy,
alkyl,
10 haloalkyl,
hydroxyalkyl,
alkoxy,
dialkylamino,
-S(O)₀₋₂-alkyl,
15 -S(O)₀₋₂-aryl,
-NH-S(O)₂-alkyl,
-NH-S(O)₂-aryl,
haloalkoxy,
halogen,
20 nitrile,
nitro,
aryl,
heteroaryl,
heterocyclyl,
25 aryloxy,
arylalkyleneoxy,
-C(O)-O-alkyl,
-C(O)-N(R₈)₂,
-N(R₈)-C(O)-alkyl,
30 -O-(CO)-alkyl, and
-C(O)-alkyl;

R_c and R_d are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halogen, hydroxy, alkyl, alkenyl, aryl, haloalkyl, alkoxy, alkylthio, and $-N(R_9)_2$; or R_c and R_d can join to form a fused aryl ring or fused 5-10 membered heteroaryl ring containing one to four heteroatoms;

5 R_{11} is C_{1-6} alkylene or C_{2-6} alkenylene, wherein the alkylene or alkenylene is optionally interrupted by one heteroatom;

R_{12} is selected from the group consisting of a bond, C_{1-5} alkylene, and C_{2-5} alkenylene, wherein the alkylene or alkenylene is optionally interrupted by one heteroatom;

10 wherein the total number of atoms in the ring which includes R_{11} or R_{12} is 4 to 9;

A' is selected from the group consisting of $-O-$, $-S(O)_{0-2}-$, $-N(-Q-R_4)-$, and $-C(R_{9a})_2-$;

R_A and R_B are each independently selected from the group consisting of:

15 hydrogen,
halogen,
alkyl,
alkenyl,
alkoxy,
alkylthio, and
20 $-N(R_9)_2$;

or R_A and R_B taken together form either a fused aryl ring that is unsubstituted or substituted by one or more R_a groups, or a fused 5 to 7 membered saturated ring that is unsubstituted or substituted by one or more R_e groups;

25 or R_A and R_B taken together form a fused heteroaryl or 5 to 7 membered saturated ring containing one heteroatom selected from the group consisting of N and S, wherein the heteroaryl ring is unsubstituted or substituted by one or more R_b groups, and the 5 to 7 membered saturated ring is unsubstituted or substituted by one or more R_e groups;

R_a is selected from the group consisting of halogen, alkyl, haloalkyl, alkoxy, and $-N(R_9)_2$;

30 R_b is selected from the group consisting of halogen, hydroxy, alkyl, haloalkyl, alkoxy, and $-N(R_9)_2$;

R_e is selected from the group consisting of halogen, hydroxy, alkyl, alkenyl, haloalkyl, alkoxy, alkylthio, and $-N(R_9)_2$;

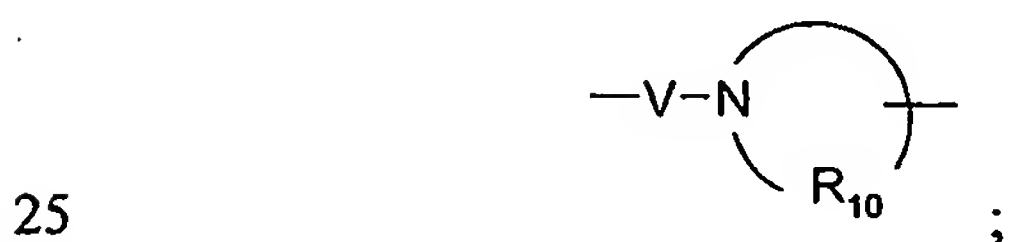
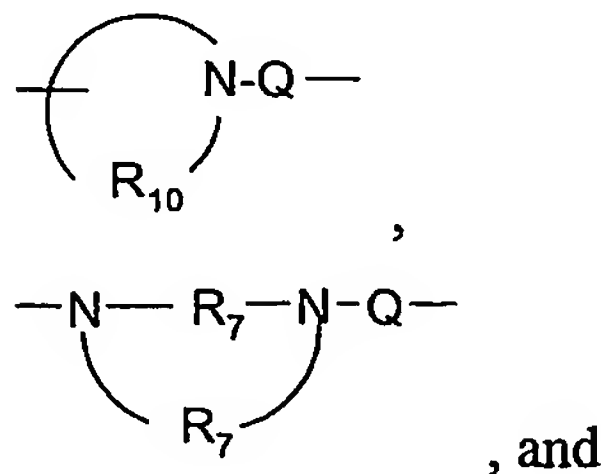
R_2 is selected from the group consisting of:

- 5
 $-R_4$,
 $-X-R_4$,
 $-X-Y-R_4$, and
 $-X-R_5$;

10
 X is selected from the group consisting of alkylene, alkenylene, alkynylene, arylene, heteroarylene, and heterocyclylene wherein the alkylene, alkenylene, and alkynylene groups are optionally interrupted or terminated by arylene, heteroarylene or heterocyclylene and optionally interrupted by one or more $-O-$ groups;

Y is selected from the group consisting of:

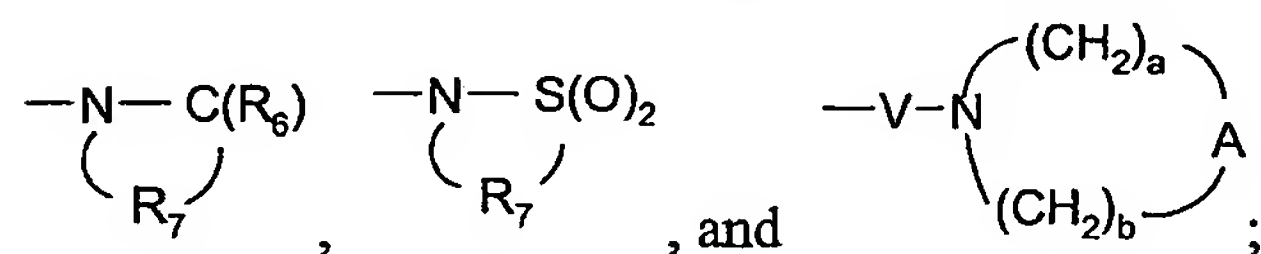
- 15
 $-S(O)_{0-2}-$,
 $-S(O)_2-N(R_8)-$,
 $-C(R_6)-$,
 $-C(R_6)-O-$,
 $-O-C(R_6)-$,
 $-O-C(O)-O-$,
 $-N(R_8)-Q-$,
20
 $-C(R_6)-N(R_8)-$,
 $-O-C(R_6)-N(R_8)-$,
 $-C(R_6)-N(OR_9)-$,



R_4 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, arylalkylenyl, aryloxyalkylenyl, alkylarylenyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkylenyl,

heteroaryloxyalkylenyl, alkylheteroarylenyl, and heterocyclyl wherein the alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, arylalkylenyl, aryloxyalkylenyl, alkylarylenyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkylenyl, heteroaryloxyalkylenyl, alkylheteroarylenyl, and heterocyclyl groups are unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents independently selected from the group consisting of alkyl, alkoxy, hydroxyalkyl, haloalkyl, haloalkoxy, halogen, nitro, hydroxy, mercapto, cyano, aryl, aryloxy, arylalkyleneoxy, heteroaryl, heteroaryloxy, heteroarylalkyleneoxy, heterocyclyl, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, (dialkylamino)alkyleneoxy, and in the case of alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, and heterocyclyl, oxo;

10 R_5 is selected from the group consisting of:



R₆ is selected from the group consisting of =O and =S;

R₇ is C₂₋₇ alkylene;

15 R₈ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, alkoxyalkylenyl, hydroxyalkylenyl, and arylalkylenyl;

R₉ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl;

R_{9a} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and C₁₋₄ alkyl;

R₁₀ is C₃₋₈ alkylene;

A is selected from the group consisting of -O-, -C(O)-, -S(O)₀₋₂-, -CH₂-, and
20 -N(R₄)-;

Q is selected from the group consisting of a bond, $-C(R_6)-$, $-C(R_6)-C(R_6)-$, $-S(O)_2-$, and $-S(O)_2-N(R_8)-$;

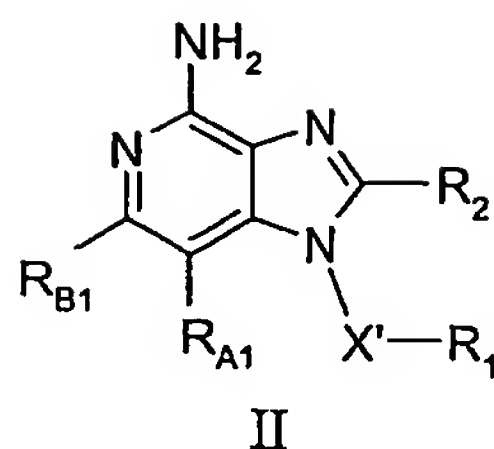
V is selected from the group consisting of -C(R₆)-, -O-C(R₆)-, and -S(O)₂-; and

a and b are each independently an integer from 1 to 6 with the proviso that $a + b$ is

25 ≤ 7 ;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

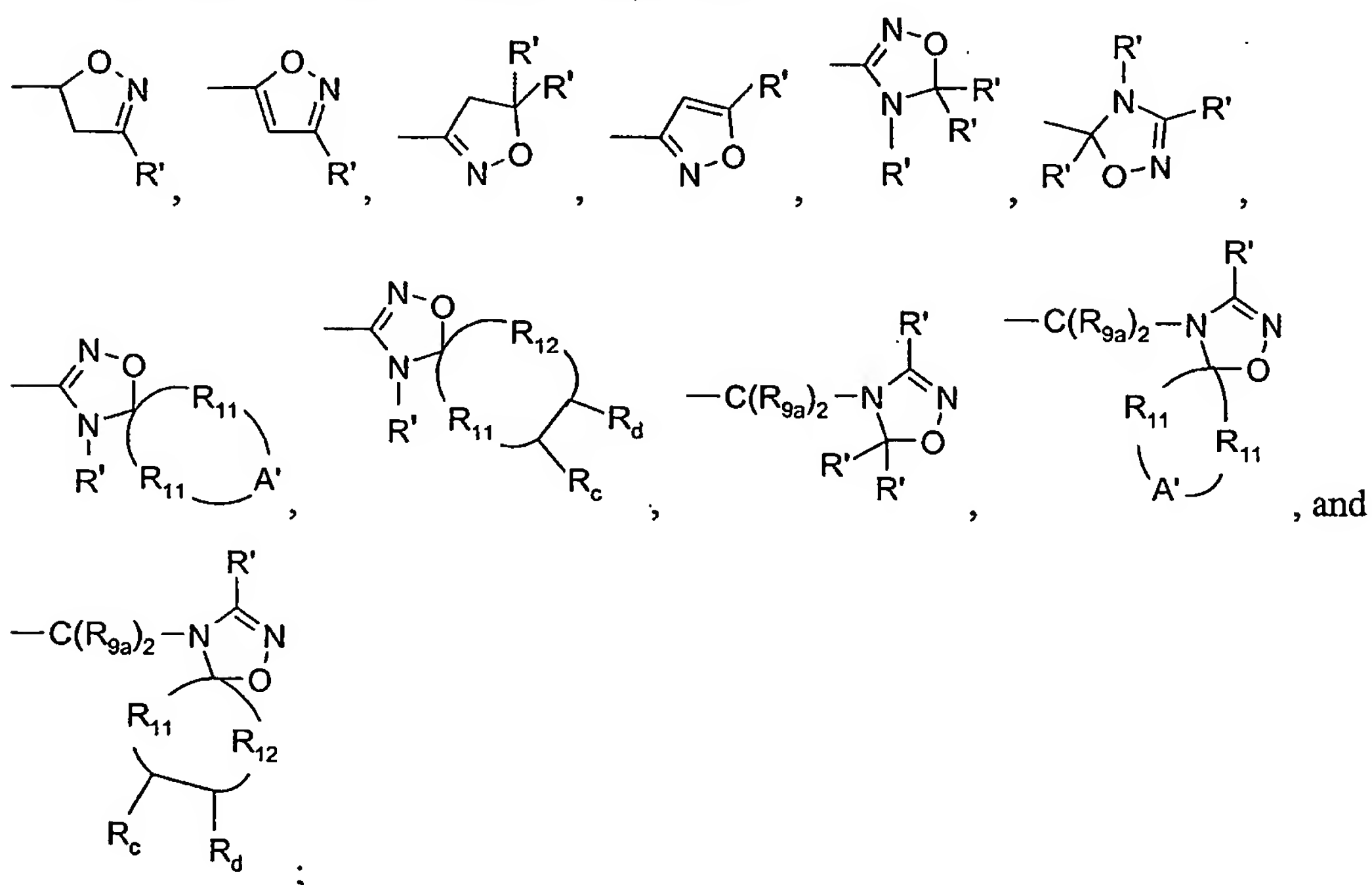
2. A compound of the Formula II:



wherein:

X' is selected from the group consisting of -CH(R₉)-, -CH(R₉)-alkylene-, and
5 -CH(R₉)-alkenylene-;

R₁ is selected from the group consisting of:



10 R' is selected from the group consisting of:

hydrogen,
alkyl,
alkenyl,
aryl,
15 arylalkylenyl,
heteroaryl,
heteroarylalkylenyl,
heterocyclyl,
heterocyclylalkylenyl, and

alkyl, alkenyl, aryl, arylalkylenyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkylenyl, heterocyclyl, or heterocyclylalkylenyl, substituted by one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of:

5 hydroxy,
alkyl,
haloalkyl,
hydroxyalkyl,
alkoxy,
dialkylamino,
10 -S(O)₀₋₂-alkyl,
-S(O)₀₋₂-aryl,
-NH-S(O)₂-alkyl,
-NH-S(O)₂-aryl,
haloalkoxy,
15 halogen,
nitrile,
nitro,
aryl,
heteroaryl,
20 heterocyclyl,
aryloxy,
arylalkyleneoxy,
-C(O)-O-alkyl,
-C(O)-N(R₈)₂,
25 -N(R₈)-C(O)-alkyl,
-O-(CO)-alkyl, and
-C(O)-alkyl;

R_c and R_d are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halogen, hydroxy, alkyl, alkenyl, aryl, haloalkyl, alkoxy, alkylthio, and -N(R₉)₂; or R_c and
30 R_d can join to form a fused aryl ring or fused 5-10 membered heteroaryl ring containing one to four heteroatoms;

R_{11} is C_{1-6} alkylene or C_{2-6} alkenylene, wherein the alkylene or alkenylene is optionally interrupted by one heteroatom;

R_{12} is selected from the group consisting of a bond, C_{1-5} alkylene, and C_{2-5} alkenylene, wherein the alkylene or alkenylene is optionally interrupted by one heteroatom;

wherein the total number of atoms in the ring which includes R_{11} or R_{12} is 4 to 9;

A' is selected from the group consisting of $-O-$, $-S(O)_{0-2}-$, $-N(-Q-R_4)-$, and $-C(R_{9a})_2-$;

R_{A1} and R_{B1} are each independently selected from the group consisting of:

- hydrogen,
- halogen,
- alkyl,
- alkenyl,
- alkoxy,
- alkylthio, and
- $-N(R_9)_2$;

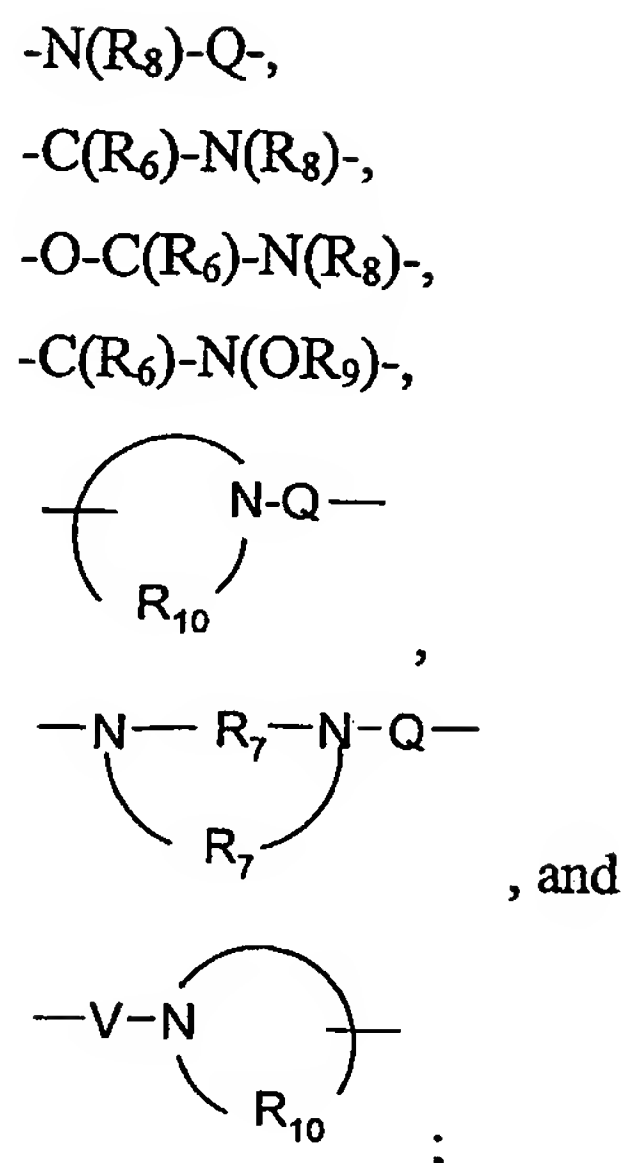
R_2 is selected from the group consisting of:

- $-R_4$,
- $-X-R_4$,
- $-X-Y-R_4$, and
- $-X-R_5$;

X is selected from the group consisting of alkylene, alkenylene, alkynylene, arylene, heteroarylene, and heterocyclylene wherein the alkylene, alkenylene, and alkynylene groups are optionally interrupted or terminated by arylene, heteroarylene or heterocyclylene and optionally interrupted by one or more $-O-$ groups;

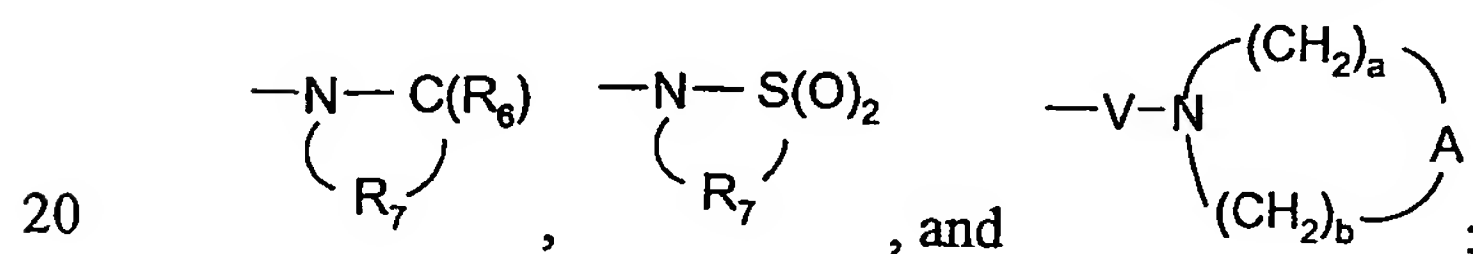
Y is selected from the group consisting of:

- $-S(O)_{0-2}-$,
- $-S(O)_2-N(R_8)-$,
- $-C(R_6)-$,
- $-C(R_6)-O-$,
- $-O-C(R_6)-$,
- $-O-C(O)-O-$,



R_4 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, arylalkylenyl, aryloxyalkylenyl, alkylarylenyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkylenyl, heteroaryloxyalkylenyl, alkylheteroarylenyl, and heterocyclyl wherein the alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, arylalkylenyl, aryloxyalkylenyl, alkylarylenyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkylenyl, heteroaryloxyalkylenyl, alkylheteroarylenyl, and heterocyclyl groups are unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents independently selected from the group consisting of alkyl, alkoxy, hydroxyalkyl, haloalkyl, haloalkoxy, halogen, nitro, hydroxy, mercapto, cyano, aryl, aryloxy, arylalkyleneoxy, heteroaryl, heteroaryloxy, heteroarylalkyleneoxy, heterocyclyl, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, (dialkylamino)alkyleneoxy, and in the case of alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, and heterocyclyl, oxo;

R_5 is selected from the group consisting of:



R_6 is selected from the group consisting of =O and =S;

R_7 is C_{2-7} alkylene;

R_8 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, alkoxyalkylenyl, hydroxyalkylenyl, and arylalkylenyl;

25 R_9 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl;

R_{9a} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and C_{1-4} alkyl;

R_{10} is C_{3-8} alkylene;

A is selected from the group consisting of -O-, -C(O)-, -S(O)₀₋₂-, -CH₂-, and -N(R₄)-;

5 Q is selected from the group consisting of a bond, -C(R₆)-, -C(R₆)-C(R₆)-, -S(O)₂-, and -S(O)₂-N(R₈)-;

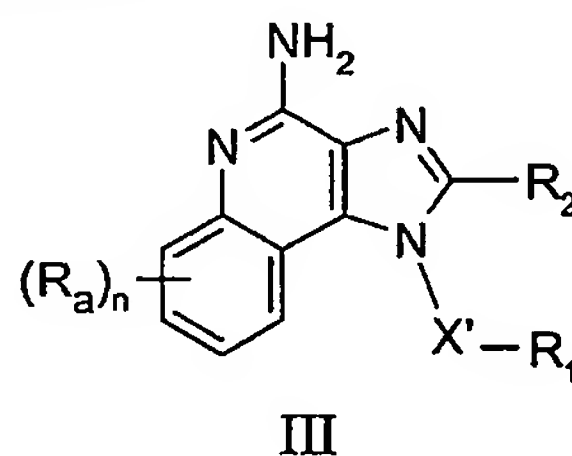
V is selected from the group consisting of -C(R₆)-, -O-C(R₆)-, and -S(O)₂-; and

a and b are each independently an integer from 1 to 6 with the proviso that $a + b \leq 7$;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

10

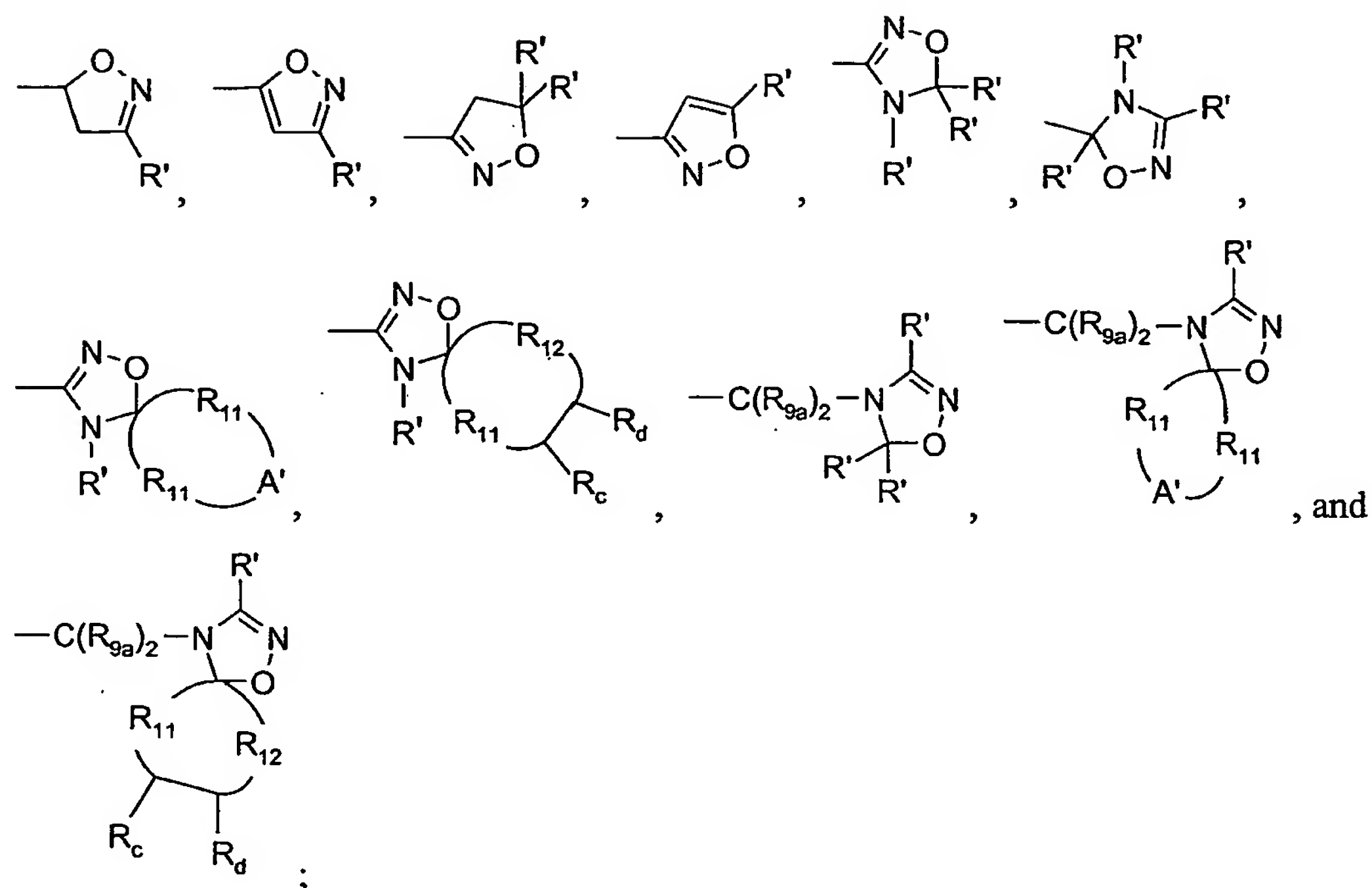
3. A compound of the Formula III:



wherein:

15 X' is selected from the group consisting of -CH(R₉)-, -CH(R₉)-alkylene-, and -CH(R₉)-alkenylene-;

R₁ is selected from the group consisting of:



R' is selected from the group consisting of:

- 5 hydrogen,
alkyl,
alkenyl,
aryl,
arylalkylenyl,
10 heteroaryl,
heteroarylalkylenyl,
heterocyclyl,
heterocyclylalkylenyl, and
alkyl, alkenyl, aryl, arylalkylenyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkylenyl,
15 heterocyclyl, or heterocyclylalkylenyl, substituted by one or more substituents selected
from the group consisting of:
hydroxy,
alkyl,
haloalkyl,
20 hydroxyalkyl,
alkoxy,
dialkylamino,

5 -S(O)₀₋₂-alkyl,
 -S(O)₀₋₂-aryl,
 -NH-S(O)₂-alkyl,
 -NH-S(O)₂-aryl,
 haloalkoxy,
 halogen,
 nitrile,
 nitro,
 aryl,
 10 heteroaryl,
 heterocyclyl,
 aryloxy,
 arylalkyleneoxy,
 -C(O)-O-alkyl,
 15 -C(O)-N(R₈)₂,
 -N(R₈)-C(O)-alkyl,
 -O-(CO)-alkyl, and
 -C(O)-alkyl;

20 R_c and R_d are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen,
 halogen, hydroxy, alkyl, alkenyl, aryl, haloalkyl, alkoxy, alkylthio, and -N(R₉)₂; or R_c and
 R_d can join to form a fused aryl ring or fused 5-10 membered heteroaryl ring containing
 one to four heteroatoms;

 R₁₁ is C₁₋₆ alkylene or C₂₋₆ alkenylene, wherein the alkylene or alkenylene is
 optionally interrupted by one heteroatom;

25 R₁₂ is selected from the group consisting of a bond, C₁₋₅ alkylene, and
 C₂₋₅ alkenylene, wherein the alkylene or alkenylene is optionally interrupted by one
 heteroatom;

 wherein the total number of atoms in the ring which includes R₁₁ or R₁₂ is 4 to 9;

30 A' is selected from the group consisting of -O-, -S(O)₀₋₂-, -N(-Q-R₄)-, and
 -C(R_{9a})₂-;

 R_a is selected from the group consisting of halogen, alkyl, haloalkyl, alkoxy, and
 -N(R₉)₂;

n is an integer from 0 to 4;

R₂ is selected from the group consisting of:

-R₄,

-X-R₄,

5 -X-Y-R₄, and

-X-R₅;

X is selected from the group consisting of alkylene, alkenylene, alkynylene, arylene, heteroarylene, and heterocyclylene wherein the alkylene, alkenylene, and alkynylene groups are optionally interrupted or terminated by arylene, heteroarylene or heterocyclylene and optionally interrupted by one or more -O- groups;

10

Y is selected from the group consisting of:

-S(O)₀₋₂-,

-S(O)₂-N(R₈)-,

-C(R₆)-,

15 -C(R₆)-O-,

-O-C(R₆)-,

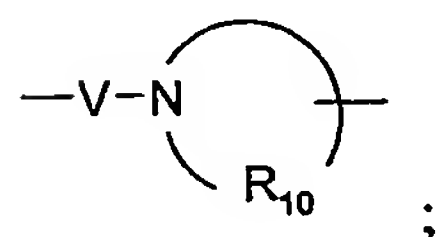
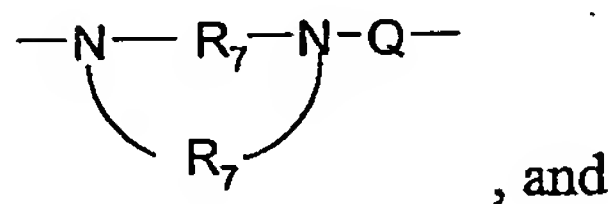
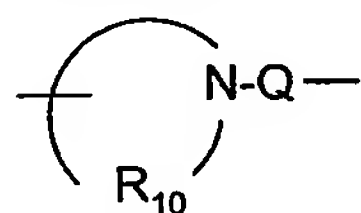
-O-C(O)-O-,

-N(R₈)-Q-,

-C(R₆)-N(R₈)-,

20 -O-C(R₆)-N(R₈)-,

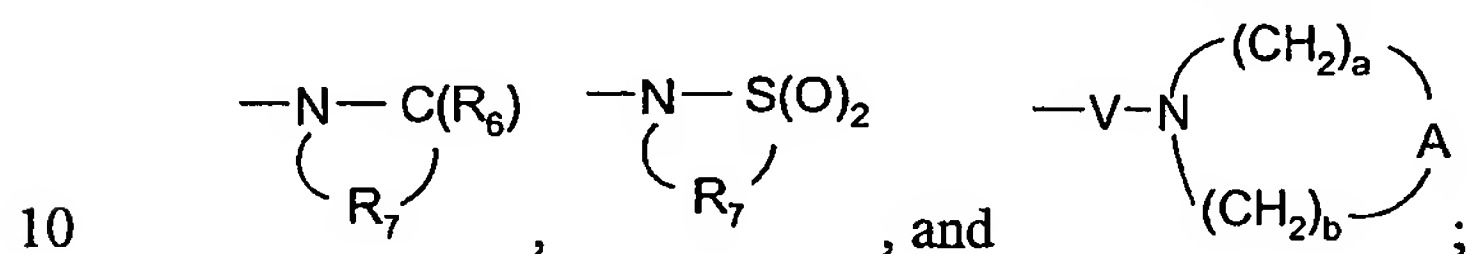
-C(R₆)-N(OR₉)-,



25 R₄ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, arylalkylenyl, aryloxyalkylenyl, alkylarylenyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkylenyl, heteroaryloxyalkylenyl, alkylheteroarylenyl, and heterocyclyl wherein the alkyl, alkenyl,

alkynyl, aryl, arylalkylenyl, aryloxyalkylenyl, alkylarylenyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkylenyl, heteroaryloxyalkylenyl, alkylheteroarylenyl, and heterocyclyl groups are unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents independently selected from the group consisting of alkyl, alkoxy, hydroxyalkyl, haloalkyl, haloalkoxy, halogen, nitro, hydroxy, mercapto, cyano, aryl, aryloxy, arylalkyleneoxy, heteroaryl, heteroaryloxy, heteroarylalkyleneoxy, heterocyclyl, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, (dialkylamino)alkyleneoxy, and in the case of alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, and heterocyclyl, oxo;

R_5 is selected from the group consisting of:



R₆ is selected from the group consisting of =O and =S;

R₇ is C₂₋₇ alkylene;

R₈ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, alkoxyalkylenyl, hydroxyalkylenyl, and arylalkylenyl;

15 R₉ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl;

R_{9a} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and C₁₋₄ alkyl;

R₁₀ is C₃₋₈ alkylene;

A is selected from the group consisting of -O-, -C(O)-, -S(O)₀₋₂-, -CH₂-, and -N(R₄)-;

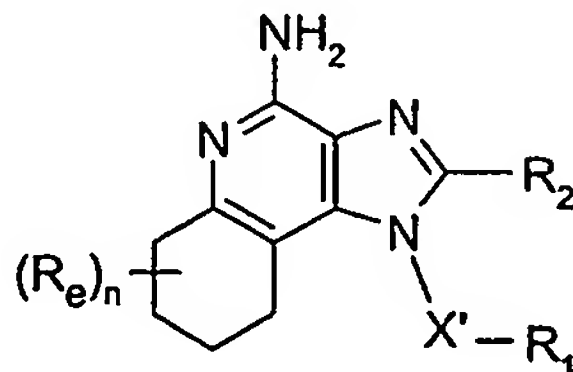
20 Q is selected from the group consisting of a bond, -C(R₆)-, -C(R₆)-C(R₆)-, -S(O)₂-, and -S(O)₂-N(R₈)-;

V is selected from the group consisting of -C(R₆)-, -O-C(R₆)-, and -S(O)₂-; and

a and b are each independently an integer from 1 to 6 with the proviso that $a + b$ is

25 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

4. A compound of the Formula IV:

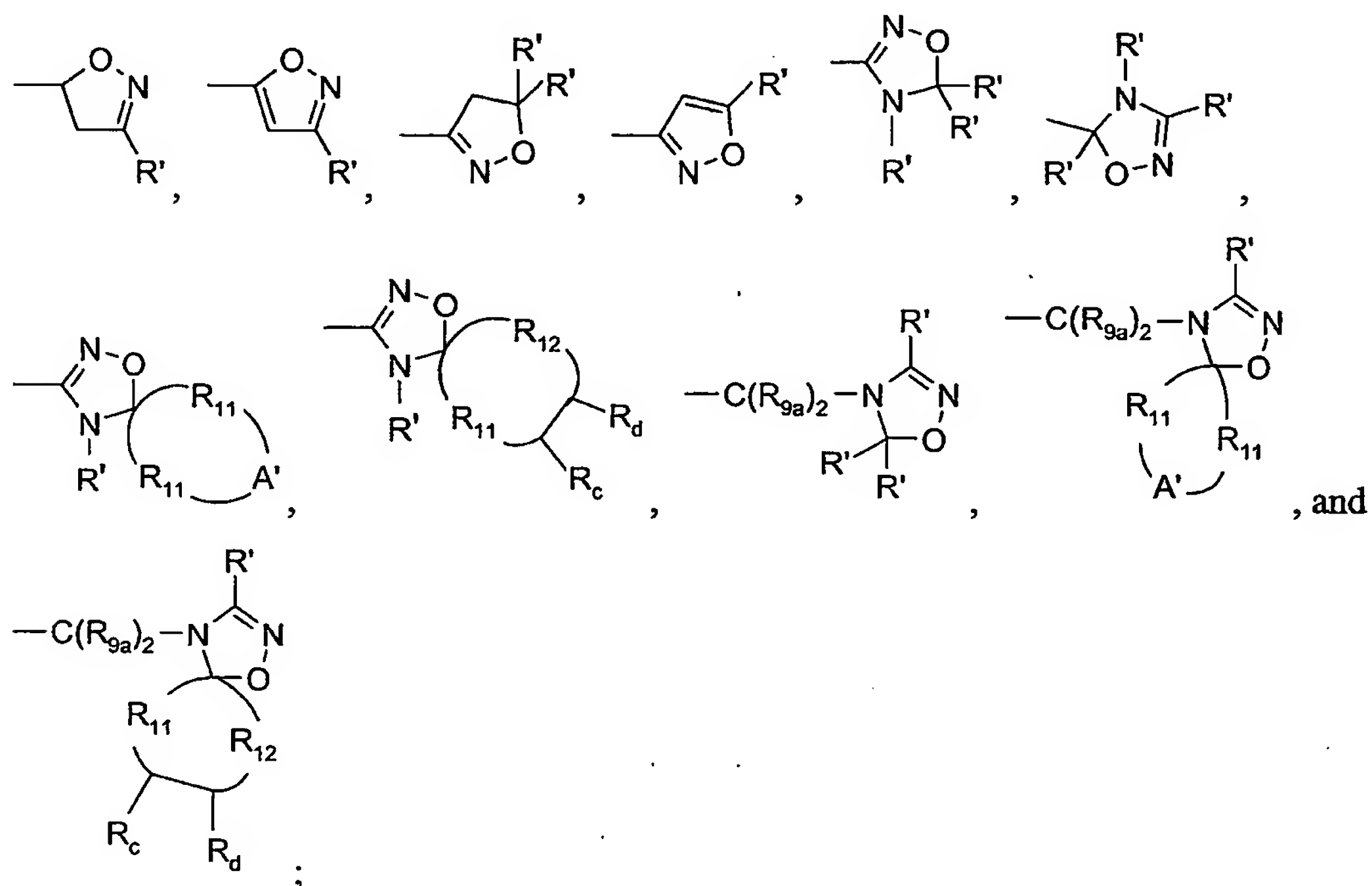


IV

wherein:

X' is selected from the group consisting of -CH(R₉)-, -CH(R₉)-alkylene-, and -CH(R₉)-alkenylene-;

5 R₁ is selected from the group consisting of:



R' is selected from the group consisting of:

- 10 hydrogen,
alkyl,
alkenyl,
aryl,
arylalkylenyl,
15 heteroaryl,
heteroarylalkylenyl,
heterocyclyl,
heterocyclylalkylenyl, and
alkyl, alkenyl, aryl, arylalkylenyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkylenyl,
20 heterocyclyl, or heterocyclylalkylenyl, substituted by one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of:

hydroxy,

5 alkyl,
 haloalkyl,
 hydroxyalkyl,
 alkoxy,
 dialkylamino,
 -S(O)₀₋₂-alkyl,
 -S(O)₀₋₂-aryl,
 -NH-S(O)₂-alkyl,
 -NH-S(O)₂-aryl,
 10 haloalkoxy,
 halogen,
 nitrile,
 nitro,
 aryl,
 15 heteroaryl,
 heterocyclyl,
 aryloxy,
 arylalkyleneoxy,
 -C(O)-O-alkyl,
 20 -C(O)-N(R₈)₂,
 -N(R₈)-C(O)-alkyl,
 -O-(CO)-alkyl, and
 -C(O)-alkyl;

25 R_c and R_d are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen,
 halogen, hydroxy, alkyl, alkenyl, aryl, haloalkyl, alkoxy, alkylthio, and -N(R₉)₂; or R_c and
 R_d can join to form a fused aryl ring or fused 5-10 membered heteroaryl ring containing
 one to four heteroatoms;

R₁₁ is C₁₋₆ alkylene or C₂₋₆ alkenylene, wherein the alkylene or alkenylene is
 optionally interrupted by one heteroatom;

30 R₁₂ is selected from the group consisting of a bond, C₁₋₅ alkylene, and
 C₂₋₅ alkenylene, wherein the alkylene or alkenylene is optionally interrupted by one
 heteroatom;

wherein the total number of atoms in the ring which includes R_{11} or R_{12} is 4 to 9;

A' is selected from the group consisting of $-O-$, $-S(O)_{0-2}-$, $-N(-Q-R_4)-$, and $-C(R_{9a})_2-$;

R_e is selected from the group consisting of halogen, hydroxy, alkyl, alkenyl, haloalkyl, alkoxy, alkylthio, and $-N(R_9)_2$;

n is an integer of 0 to 4;

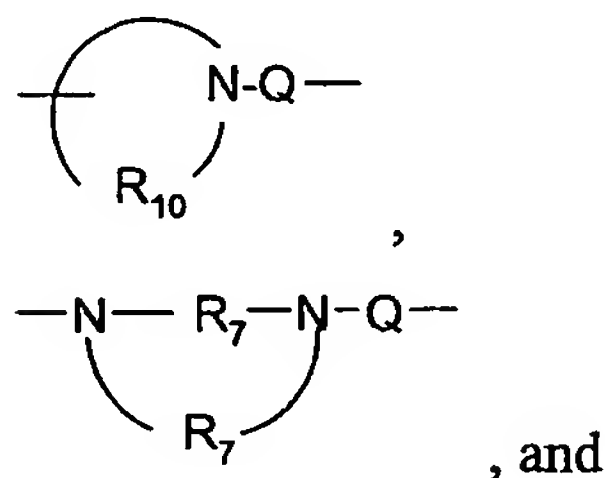
R_2 is selected from the group consisting of:

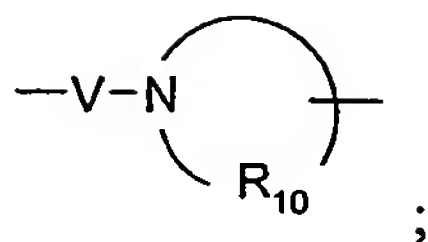
$-R_4$,
 $-X-R_4$,
 $-X-Y-R_4$, and
 $-X-R_5$;

X is selected from the group consisting of alkylene, alkenylene, alkynylene, arylene, heteroarylene, and heterocyclylene wherein the alkylene, alkenylene, and alkynylene groups are optionally interrupted or terminated by arylene, heteroarylene or heterocyclylene and optionally interrupted by one or more $-O-$ groups;

Y is selected from the group consisting of:

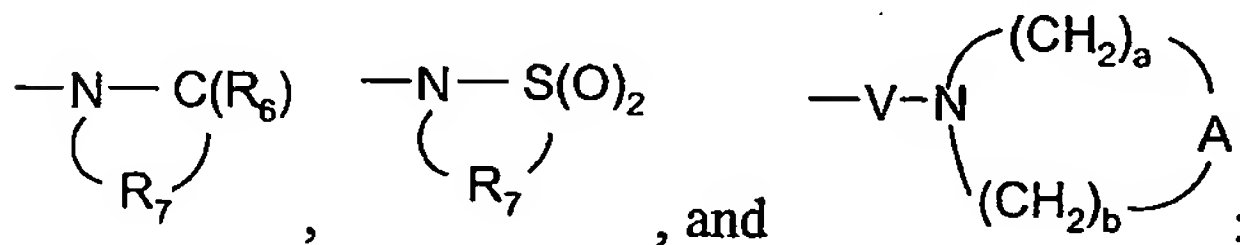
$-S(O)_{0-2}-$,
 $-S(O)_2-N(R_8)-$,
 $-C(R_6)-$,
 $-C(R_6)-O-$,
 $-O-C(R_6)-$,
 $-O-C(O)-O-$,
 $-N(R_8)-Q-$,
 $-C(R_6)-N(R_8)-$,
 $-O-C(R_6)-N(R_8)-$,
 $-C(R_6)-N(OR_9)-$,





R₄ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, arylalkylenyl, aryloxyalkylenyl, alkylarylenyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkylenyl, heteroaryloxyalkylenyl, alkylheteroarylenyl, and heterocyclyl wherein the alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, arylalkylenyl, aryloxyalkylenyl, alkylarylenyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkylenyl, heteroaryloxyalkylenyl, alkylheteroarylenyl, and heterocyclyl groups are unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents independently selected from the group consisting of alkyl, alkoxy, hydroxyalkyl, haloalkyl, haloalkoxy, halogen, nitro, hydroxy, mercapto, cyano, aryl, aryloxy, arylalkyleneoxy, heteroaryl, heteroaryloxy, heteroarylalkyleneoxy, heterocyclyl, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, (dialkylamino)alkyleneoxy, and in the case of alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, and heterocyclyl, oxo;

R_5 is selected from the group consisting of:



15 R₆ is selected from the group consisting of =O and =S;

R₇ is C₂₋₇ alkylene;

R₈ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, alkoxyalkylenyl, hydroxyalkylenyl, and arylalkylenyl;

R₉ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl;

20 R_{9a} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and C₁₋₄ alkyl;

R₁₀ is C₃₋₈ alkylene;

A is selected from the group consisting of -O-, -C(O)-, -S(O)_{0.2}-, -CH₂-, and -N(R₄)-;

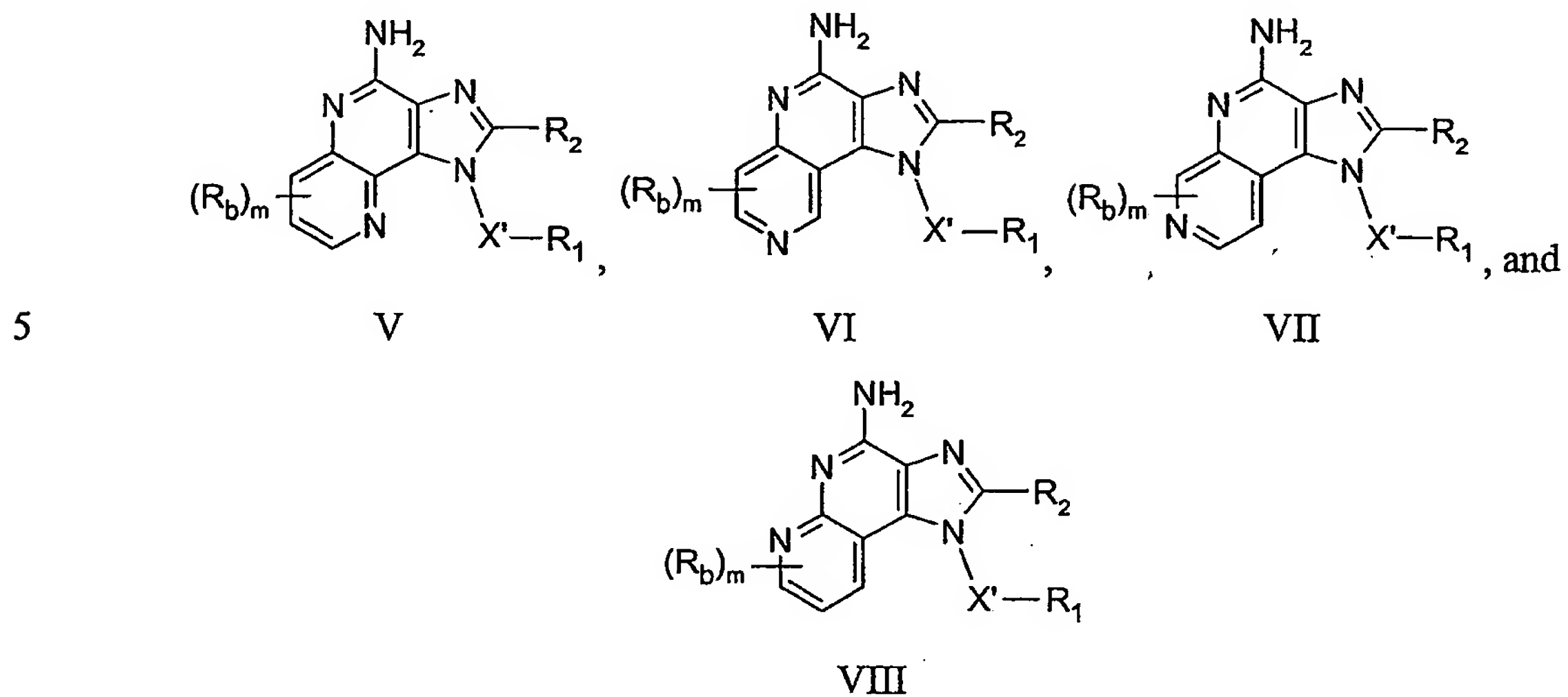
Q is selected from the group consisting of a bond, -C(R₆)-, -C(R₆)-C(R₆)-, -S(O)₂-,
25 and -S(O)₂-N(R₈)-;

V is selected from the group consisting of -C(R₆)-, -O-C(R₆)-, and -S(O)₂-; and

a and b are each independently an integer from 1 to 6 with the proviso that $a + b \leq 7$;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

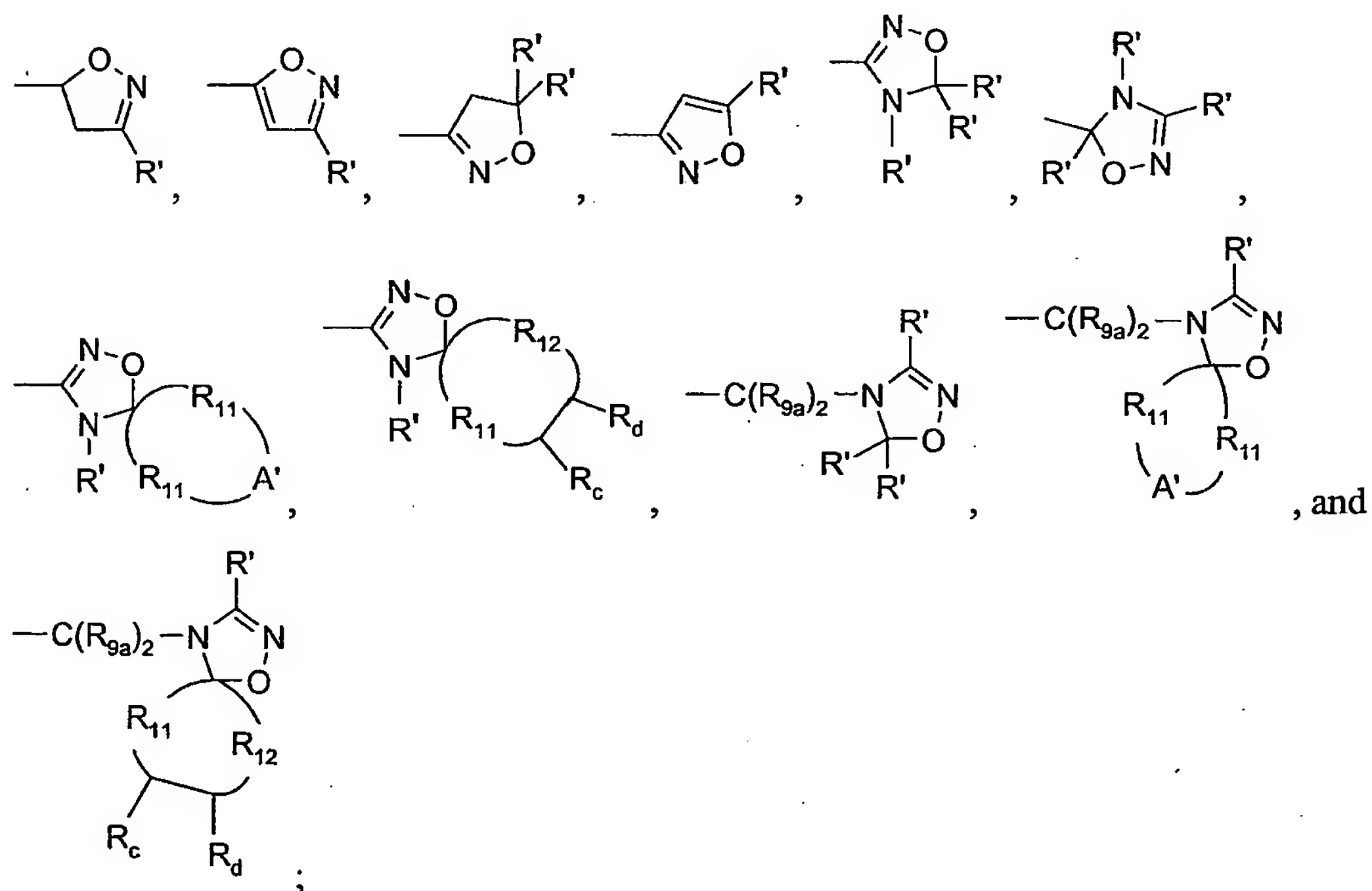
5. A compound selected from the group consisting of the Formulas V, VI, VII, and VIII:



wherein:

10 X' is selected from the group consisting of -CH(R₉)-, -CH(R₉)-alkylene-, and -CH(R₉)-alkenylene-;

R_1 is selected from the group consisting of:



15 R' is selected from the group consisting of:

hydrogen,
alkyl,
alkenyl,
aryl,
5 arylalkylenyl,
heteroaryl,
heteroarylalkylenyl,
heterocyclyl,
heterocyclylalkylenyl, and
10 alkyl, alkenyl, aryl, arylalkylenyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkylenyl,
heterocyclyl, or heterocyclylalkylenyl, substituted by one or more substituents selected
from the group consisting of:
hydroxy,
alkyl,
15 haloalkyl,
hydroxyalkyl,
alkoxy,
dialkylamino,
-S(O)₀₋₂-alkyl,
20 -S(O)₀₋₂-aryl,
-NH-S(O)₂-alkyl,
-NH-S(O)₂-aryl,
haloalkoxy,
halogen,
25 nitrile,
nitro,
aryl,
heteroaryl,
heterocyclyl,
30 aryloxy,
arylalkyleneoxy,
-C(O)-O-alkyl,

-C(O)-N(R₈)₂,
 -N(R₈)-C(O)-alkyl,
 -O-(CO)-alkyl, and
 -C(O)-alkyl;

5 R_c and R_d are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halogen, hydroxy, alkyl, alkenyl, aryl, haloalkyl, alkoxy, alkylthio, and -N(R₉)₂; or R_c and R_d can join to form a fused aryl ring or fused 5-10 membered heteroaryl ring containing one to four heteroatoms;

10 R₁₁ is C₁₋₆ alkylene or C₂₋₆ alkenylene, wherein the alkylene or alkenylene is optionally interrupted by one heteroatom;

 R₁₂ is selected from the group consisting of a bond, C₁₋₅ alkylene, and C₂₋₅ alkenylene, wherein the alkylene or alkenylene is optionally interrupted by one heteroatom;

 wherein the total number of atoms in the ring which includes R₁₁ or R₁₂ is 4 to 9;

15 A' is selected from the group consisting of -O-, -S(O)₀₋₂-, -N(-Q-R₄)-, and -C(R_{9a})₂-;

 R_b is selected from the group consisting of halogen, hydroxy, alkyl, haloalkyl, alkoxy, and -N(R₉)₂;

 m is an integer from 0 to 3;

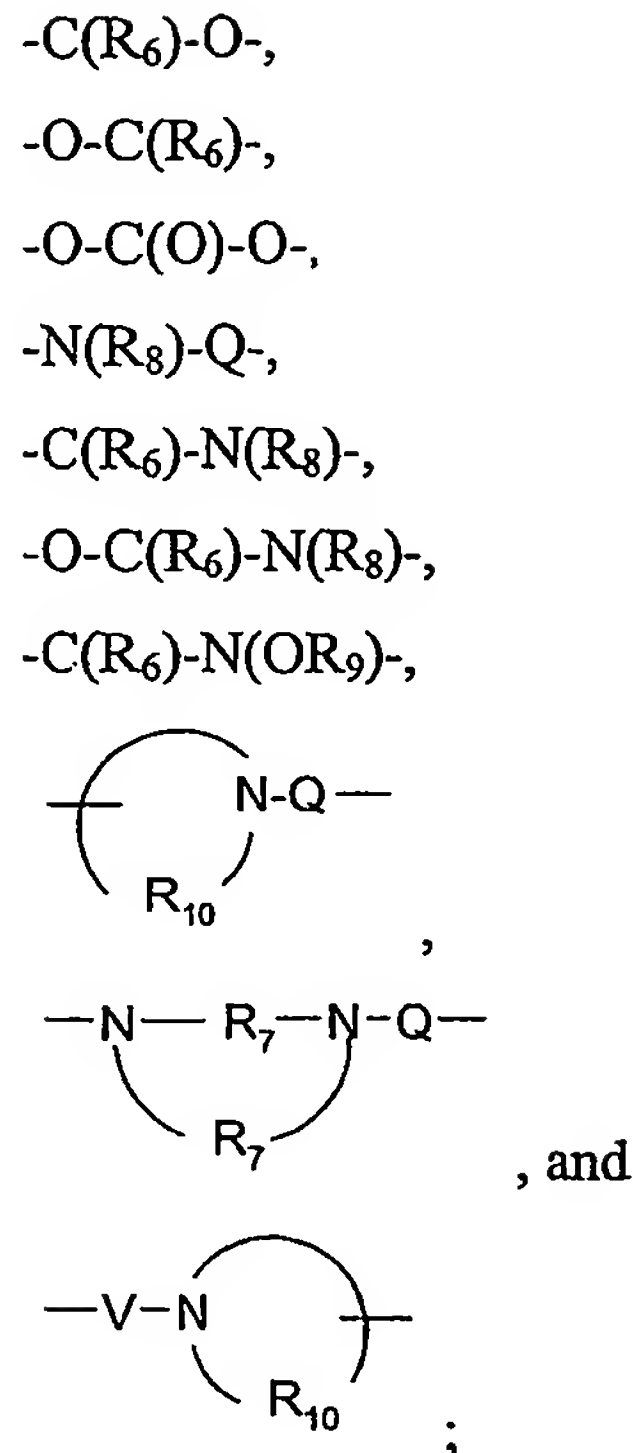
20 R₂ is selected from the group consisting of:

-R₄,
 -X-R₄,
 -X-Y-R₄, and
 -X-R₅;

25 X is selected from the group consisting of alkylene, alkenylene, alkynylene, arylene, heteroarylene, and heterocyclylene wherein the alkylene, alkenylene, and alkynylene groups are optionally interrupted or terminated by arylene, heteroarylene or heterocyclylene and optionally interrupted by one or more -O- groups;

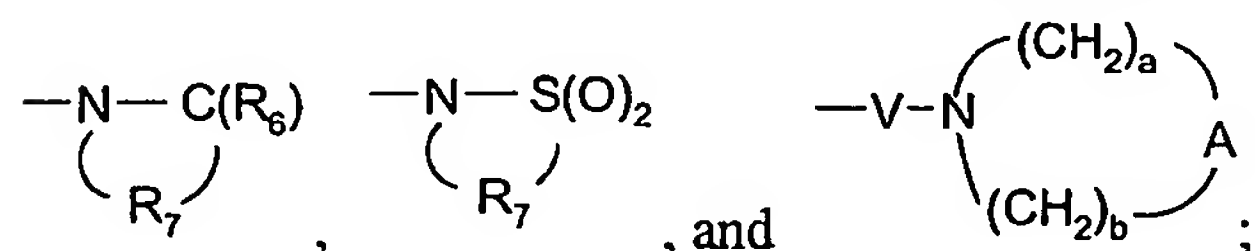
 Y is selected from the group consisting of:

30 -S(O)₀₋₂-,
 -S(O)₂-N(R₈)-,
 -C(R₆)-,



R_4 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, arylalkylenyl, aryloxyalkylenyl, alkylarylenyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkylenyl, heteroaryloxyalkylenyl, alkylheteroarylenyl, and heterocyclyl wherein the alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, arylalkylenyl, aryloxyalkylenyl, alkylarylenyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkylenyl, heteroaryloxyalkylenyl, alkylheteroarylenyl, and heterocyclyl groups are unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents independently selected from the group consisting of alkyl, alkoxy, hydroxyalkyl, haloalkyl, haloalkoxy, halogen, nitro, hydroxy, mercapto, cyano, aryl, aryloxy, arylalkyleneoxy, heteroaryl, heteroaryloxy, heteroarylalkyleneoxy, heterocyclyl, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, (dialkylamino)alkyleneoxy, and in the case of alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, and heterocyclyl, oxo;

R_5 is selected from the group consisting of:



R_6 is selected from the group consisting of $=O$ and $=S$;

R_7 is C_{2-7} alkylene;

R_8 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, alkoxyalkylenyl, hydroxyalkylenyl, and arylalkylenyl;

R_9 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl;

R_{9a} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and C_{1-4} alkyl;

5 R_{10} is C_{3-8} alkylene;

A is selected from the group consisting of $-O-$, $-C(O)-$, $-S(O)_{0-2}-$, $-CH_2-$, and $-N(R_4)-$;

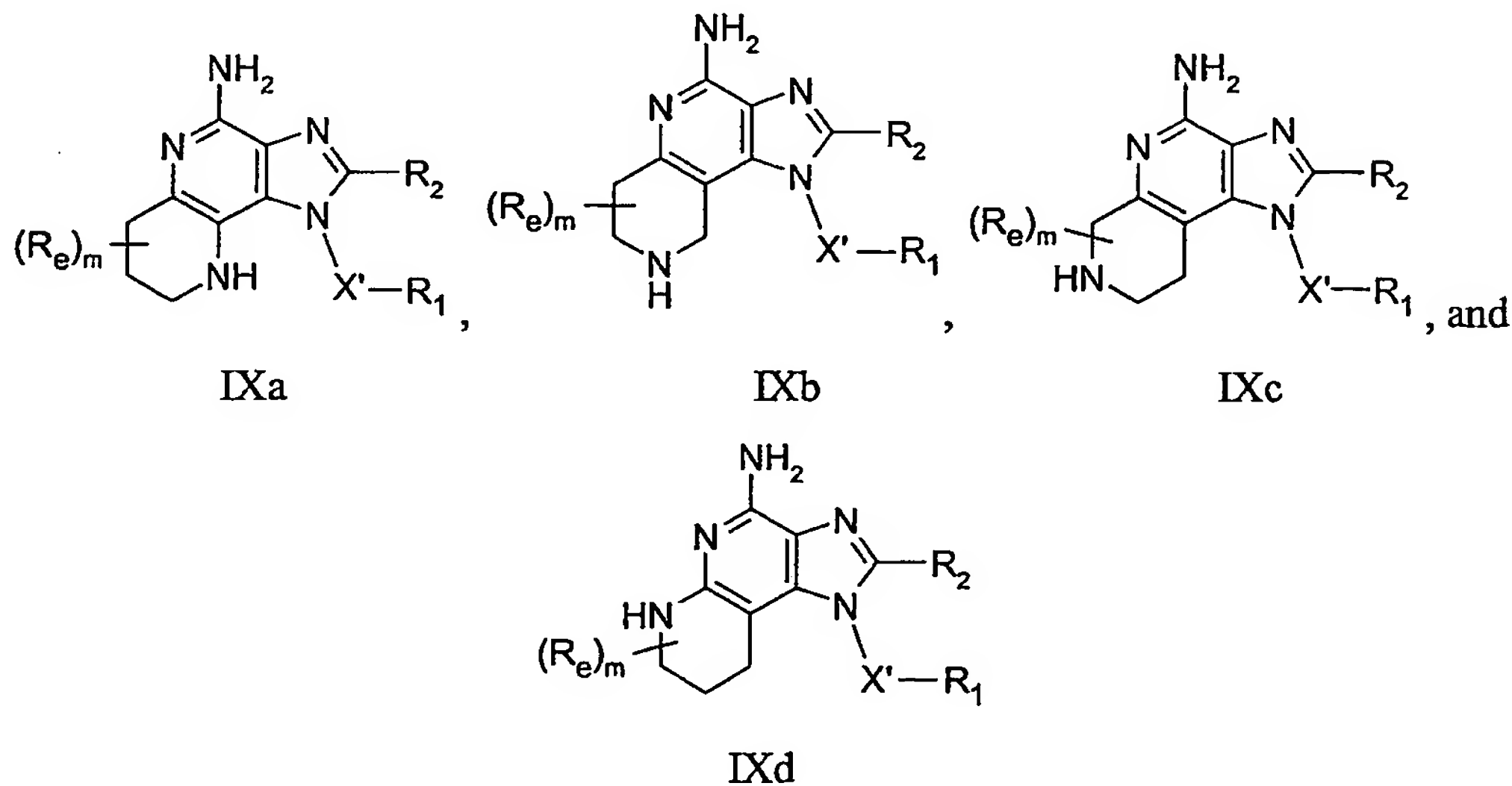
Q is selected from the group consisting of a bond, $-C(R_6)-$, $-C(R_6)-C(R_6)-$, $-S(O)_2-$, and $-S(O)_2-N(R_8)-$;

10 V is selected from the group consisting of $-C(R_6)-$, $-O-C(R_6)-$, and $-S(O)_2-$; and

a and b are each independently an integer from 1 to 6 with the proviso that $a + b$ is ≤ 7 ;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

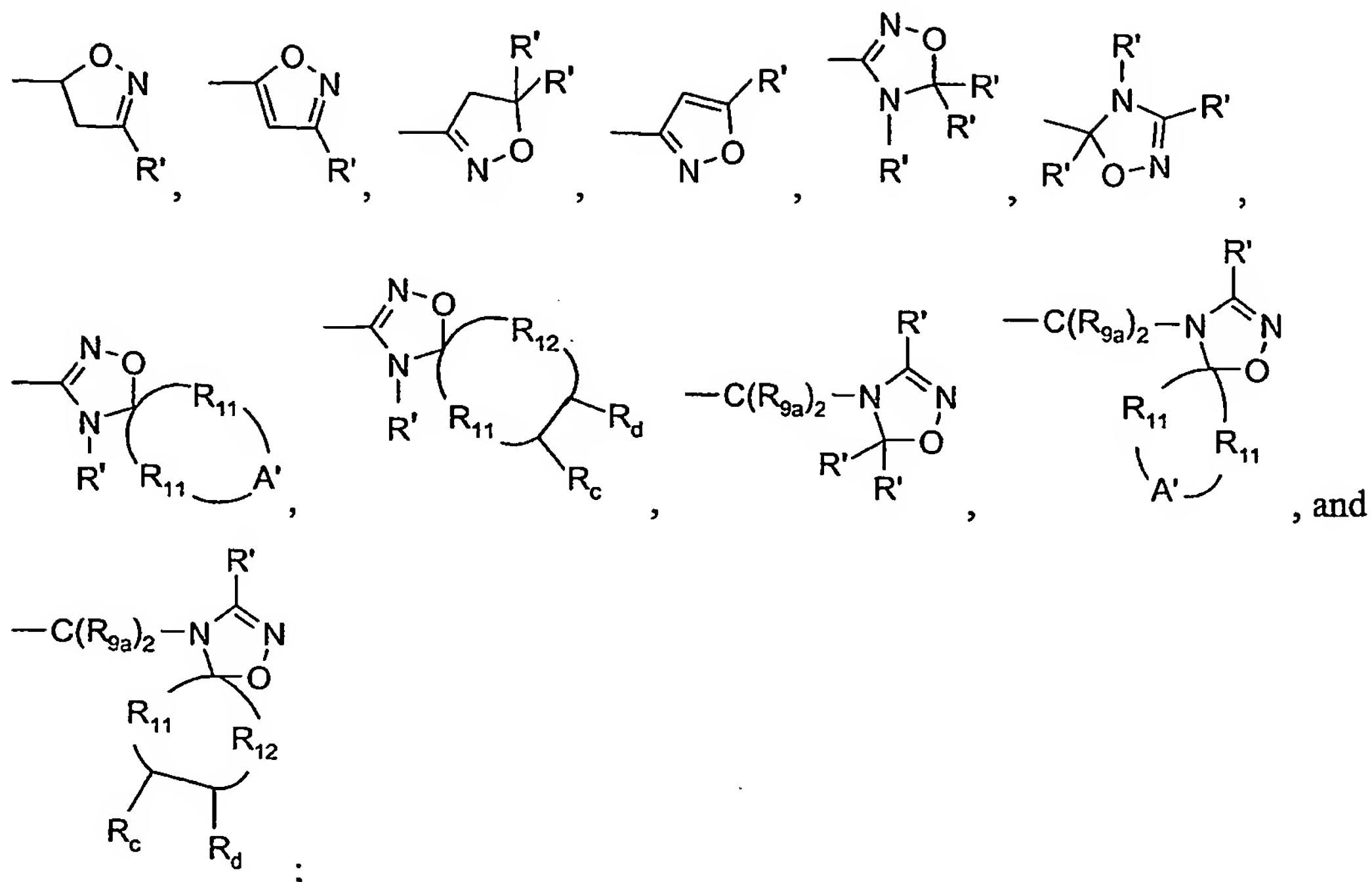
15 6. A compound selected from the group consisting the Formulas IXa, IXb, IXc, and IXd:



wherein:

X' is selected from the group consisting of $-CH(R_9)-$, $-CH(R_9)$ -alkylene-, and $-CH(R_9)$ -alkenylene-;

R_1 is selected from the group consisting of:



R' is selected from the group consisting of:

5

hydrogen,

alkyl,

alkenyl,

aryl,

arylalkylenyl,

10

heteroaryl,

heteroarylalkylenyl,

heterocyclyl,

heterocyclalkylenyl, and

alkyl, alkenyl, aryl, arylalkylenyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkylenyl,

15

heterocyclyl, or heterocyclylalkylenyl, substituted by one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of:

hydroxy,

alkyl,

haloalkyl,

20

hydroxyalkyl,

alkoxy,

dialkylamino,

-S(O)₀₋₂-alkyl,
 -S(O)₀₋₂-aryl,
 -NH-S(O)₂-alkyl,
 -NH-S(O)₂-aryl,
 5 haloalkoxy,
 halogen,
 nitrile,
 nitro,
 aryl,
 10 heteroaryl,
 heterocyclyl,
 aryloxy,
 arylalkyleneoxy,
 -C(O)-O-alkyl,
 15 -C(O)-N(R₈)₂,
 -N(R₈)-C(O)-alkyl,
 -O-(CO)-alkyl, and
 -C(O)-alkyl;

R_c and R_d are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen,
 20 halogen, hydroxy, alkyl, alkenyl, aryl, haloalkyl, alkoxy, alkylthio, and -N(R₉)₂; or R_c and
 R_d can join to form a fused aryl ring or fused 5-10 membered heteroaryl ring containing
 one to four heteroatoms;

R₁₁ is C₁₋₆ alkylene or C₂₋₆ alkenylene, wherein the alkylene or alkenylene is
 optionally interrupted by one heteroatom;

25 R₁₂ is selected from the group consisting of a bond, C₁₋₅ alkylene, and
 C₂₋₅ alkenylene, wherein the alkylene or alkenylene is optionally interrupted by one
 heteroatom;

wherein the total number of atoms in the ring which includes R₁₁ or R₁₂ is 4 to 9;

A' is selected from the group consisting of -O-, -S(O)₀₋₂-, -N(-Q-R₄)-, and
 30 -C(R_{9a})₂-;

R_e is selected from the group consisting of halogen, hydroxy, alkyl, alkenyl,
 haloalkyl, alkoxy, alkylthio, and -N(R₉)₂;

m is an integer from 0 to 3;

R₂ is selected from the group consisting of:

- R₄,
- X-R₄,
- X-Y-R₄, and
- X-R₅;

5

10

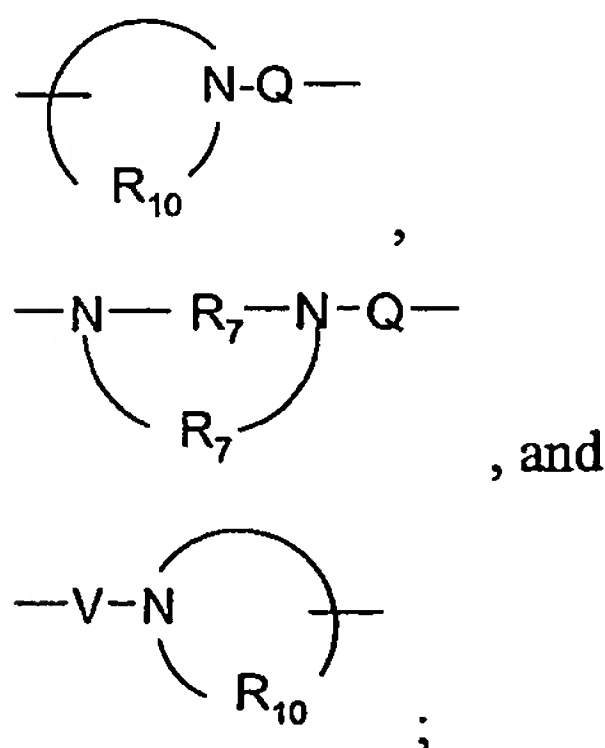
X is selected from the group consisting of alkylene, alkenylene, alkynylene, arylene, heteroarylene, and heterocyclylene wherein the alkylene, alkenylene, and alkynylene groups are optionally interrupted or terminated by arylene, heteroarylene or heterocyclylene and optionally interrupted by one or more -O- groups;

Y is selected from the group consisting of:

15

20

- S(O)₀₋₂-,
- S(O)₂-N(R₈)-,
- C(R₆)-,
- C(R₆)-O-,
- O-C(R₆)-,
- O-C(O)-O-,
- N(R₈)-Q-,
- C(R₆)-N(R₈)-,
- O-C(R₆)-N(R₈)-,
- C(R₆)-N(OR₉)-,

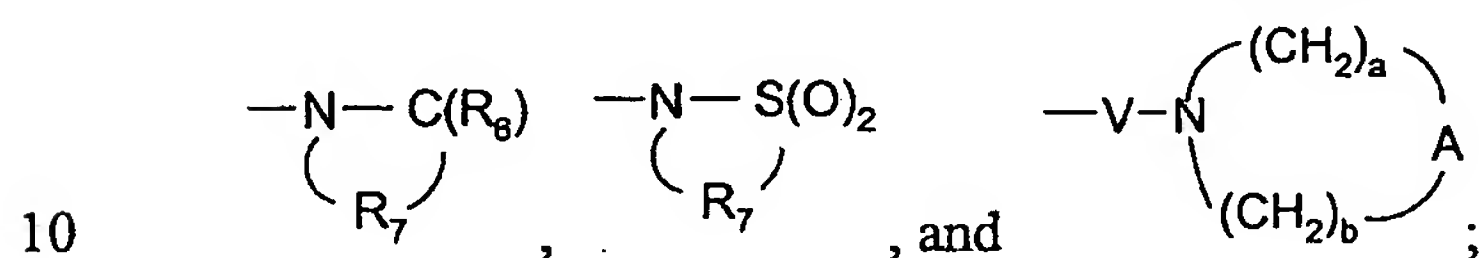


25

R₄ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, arylalkylenyl, aryloxyalkylenyl, alkylarylenyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkylenyl, heteroaryloxyalkylenyl, alkylheteroarylenyl, and heterocyclyl wherein the alkyl, alkenyl,

alkynyl, aryl, arylalkylenyl, aryloxyalkylenyl, alkylarylenyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkylenyl, heteroaryloxyalkylenyl, alkylheteroarylenyl, and heterocyclyl groups are unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents independently selected from the group consisting of alkyl, alkoxy, hydroxyalkyl, haloalkyl, haloalkoxy, halogen, nitro, hydroxy, mercapto, cyano, aryl, aryloxy, arylalkyleneoxy, heteroaryl, heteroaryloxy, heteroarylalkyleneoxy, heterocyclyl, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, (dialkylamino)alkyleneoxy, and in the case of alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, and heterocyclyl, oxo;

R₅ is selected from the group consisting of:



R₆ is selected from the group consisting of =O and =S;

R₇ is C₂₋₇ alkylene;

R₈ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, alkoxyalkylenyl, hydroxyalkylenyl, and arylalkylenyl;

15 R₉ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl;

R_{9a} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and C₁₋₄ alkyl;

R₁₀ is C₃₋₈ alkylene;

A is selected from the group consisting of -O-, -C(O)-, -S(O)₀₋₂-, -CH₂-, and -N(R₄)-;

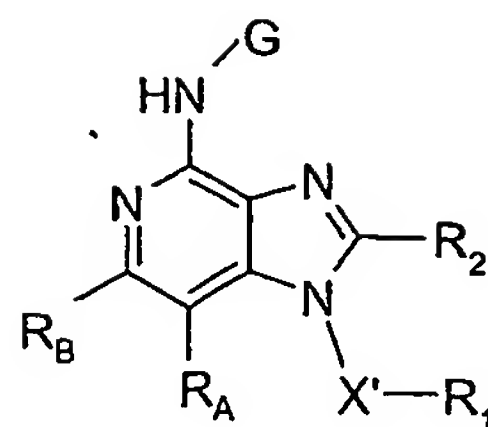
20 Q is selected from the group consisting of a bond, -C(R₆)-, -C(R₆)-C(R₆)-, -S(O)₂-, and -S(O)₂-N(R₈)-;

V is selected from the group consisting of -C(R₆)-, -O-C(R₆)-, and -S(O)₂-; and

a and b are each independently an integer from 1 to 6 with the proviso that a + b is ≤ 7;

25 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

7. A compound of the Formula I-1:



I-1

wherein:

G is selected from the group consisting of:

- 5 -C(O)-R",
 α -aminoacyl,
 α -aminoacyl- α -aminoacyl,
 -C(O)-O-R",
 -C(O)-N(R''')R",
 10 -C(=NY')-R",
 -CH(OH)-C(O)-OY',
 -CH(OC₁₋₄ alkyl)Y₀,
 -CH₂Y₁, and
 -CH(CH₃)Y₁;

- 15 R" and R''' are independently selected from the group consisting of C₁₋₁₀ alkyl, C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, and benzyl, each of which may be unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, hydroxy, nitro, cyano, carboxy, C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₁₋₄ alkoxy, aryl, heteroaryl, arylC₁₋₄ alkylenyl, heteroarylC₁₋₄ alkylenyl, haloC₁₋₄ alkylenyl, haloC₁₋₄ alkoxy, -O-C(O)-CH₃, -C(O)-O-CH₃,
 20 -C(O)-NH₂, -O-CH₂-C(O)-NH₂, -NH₂, and -S(O)₂-NH₂, with the proviso that R''' can also be hydrogen;

α -aminoacyl is an acyl group derived from an amino acid selected from the group consisting of racemic, D-, and L-amino acids;

Y' is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, C₁₋₆ alkyl, and benzyl;

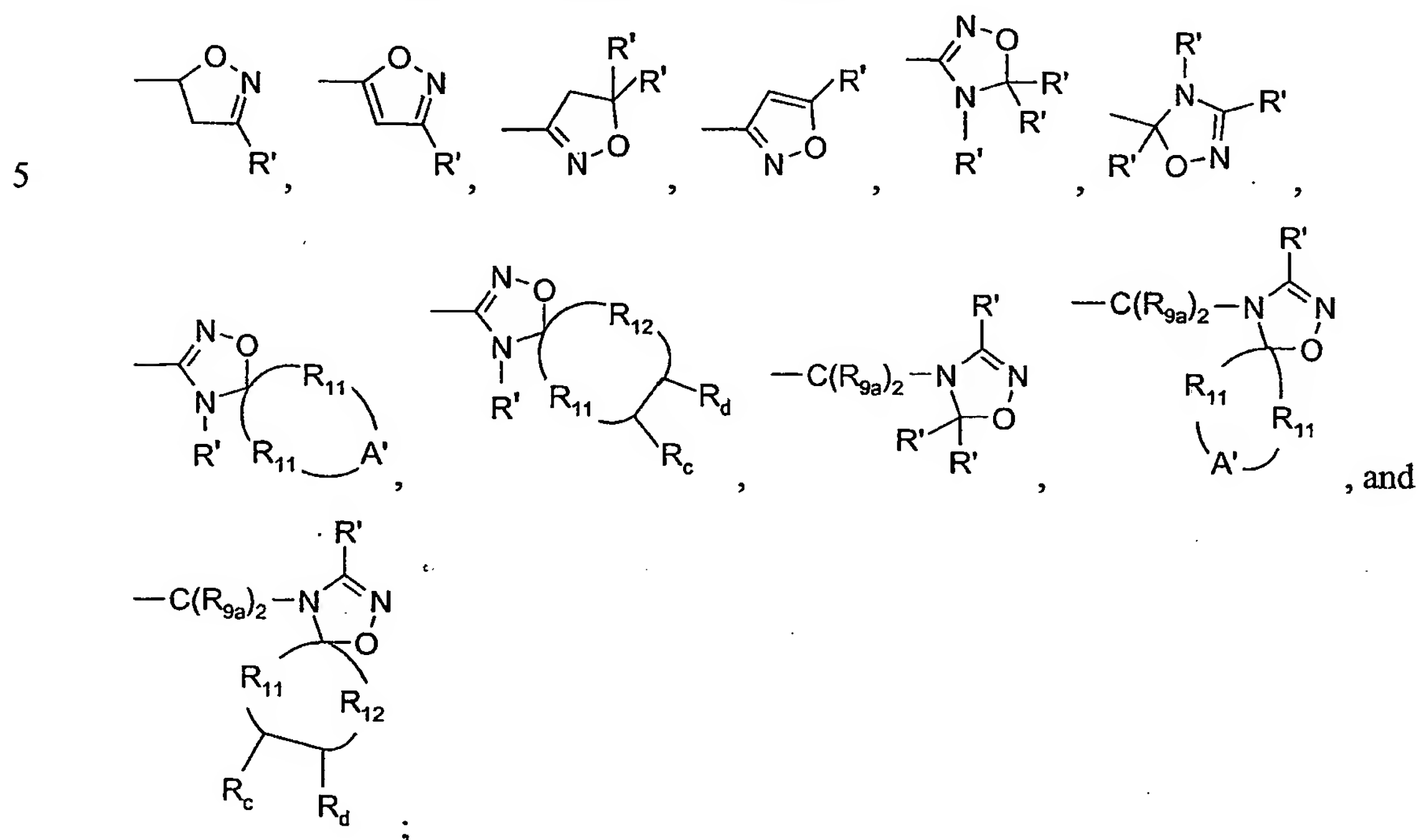
- 25 Y₀ is selected from the group consisting of C₁₋₆ alkyl, carboxyC₁₋₆ alkylenyl, aminoC₁₋₄ alkylenyl, mono-N-C₁₋₆ alkylaminoC₁₋₄ alkylenyl, and di-N,N-C₁₋₆ alkylaminoC₁₋₄ alkylenyl;

Y₁ is selected from the group consisting of mono-N-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, di-N,N-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, morpholin-4-yl, piperidin-1-yl, pyrrolidin-1-yl, and

4-C₁₋₄ alkylpiperazin-1-yl;

X' is selected from the group consisting of -CH(R₉)-, -CH(R₉)-alkylene-, and -CH(R₉)-alkenylene-;

R₁ is selected from the group consisting of:



R' is selected from the group consisting of:

- 10 hydrogen,
alkyl,
alkenyl,
aryl,
arylalkylenyl,
heteroaryl,
15 heteroarylalkylenyl,
heterocyclyl,
heterocyclylalkylenyl, and
alkyl, alkenyl, aryl, arylalkylenyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkylenyl,
heterocyclyl, or heterocyclylalkylenyl, substituted by one or more substituents selected
20 from the group consisting of:

- hydroxy,
alkyl,

haloalkyl,
 hydroxyalkyl,
 alkoxy,
 dialkylamino,
 5 -S(O)₀₋₂-alkyl,
 -S(O)₀₋₂-aryl,
 -NH-S(O)₂-alkyl,
 -NH-S(O)₂-aryl,
 haloalkoxy,
 10 halogen,
 nitrile,
 nitro,
 aryl,
 heteroaryl,
 15 heterocyclyl,
 aryloxy,
 arylalkyleneoxy,
 -C(O)-O-alkyl,
 -C(O)-N(R₈)₂,
 20 -N(R₈)-C(O)-alkyl,
 -O-(CO)-alkyl, and
 -C(O)-alkyl;

R_c and R_d are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen,
 halogen, hydroxy, alkyl, alkenyl, aryl, haloalkyl, alkoxy, alkylthio, and -N(R₉)₂; or R_c and
 25 R_d can join to form a fused aryl ring or fused 5-10 membered heteroaryl ring containing
 one to four heteroatoms;

R₁₁ is C₁₋₆ alkylene or C₂₋₆ alkenylene, wherein the alkylene or alkenylene is
 optionally interrupted by one heteroatom;

R₁₂ is selected from the group consisting of a bond, C₁₋₅ alkylene, and
 30 C₂₋₅ alkenylene, wherein the alkylene or alkenylene is optionally interrupted by one
 heteroatom;

wherein the total number of atoms in the ring which includes R₁₁ or R₁₂ is 4 to 9;

A' is selected from the group consisting of -O-, -S(O)₀₋₂-, -N(-Q-R₄)-, and -C(R_{9a})₂-;

R_A and R_B are each independently selected from the group consisting of:

hydrogen,
 5 halogen,
 alkyl,
 alkenyl,
 alkoxy,
 alkylthio, and
 10 -N(R₉)₂;

or R_A and R_B taken together form either a fused aryl ring that is unsubstituted or substituted by one or more R_a groups, or a fused 5 to 7 membered saturated ring that is unsubstituted or substituted by one or more R_e groups;

or R_A and R_B taken together form a fused heteroaryl or 5 to 7 membered saturated
 15 ring containing one heteroatom selected from the group consisting of N and S, wherein the heteroaryl ring is unsubstituted or substituted by one or more R_b groups, and the 5 to 7 membered saturated ring is unsubstituted or substituted by one or more R_e groups;

R_a is selected from the group consisting of halogen, alkyl, haloalkyl, alkoxy, and -N(R₉)₂;

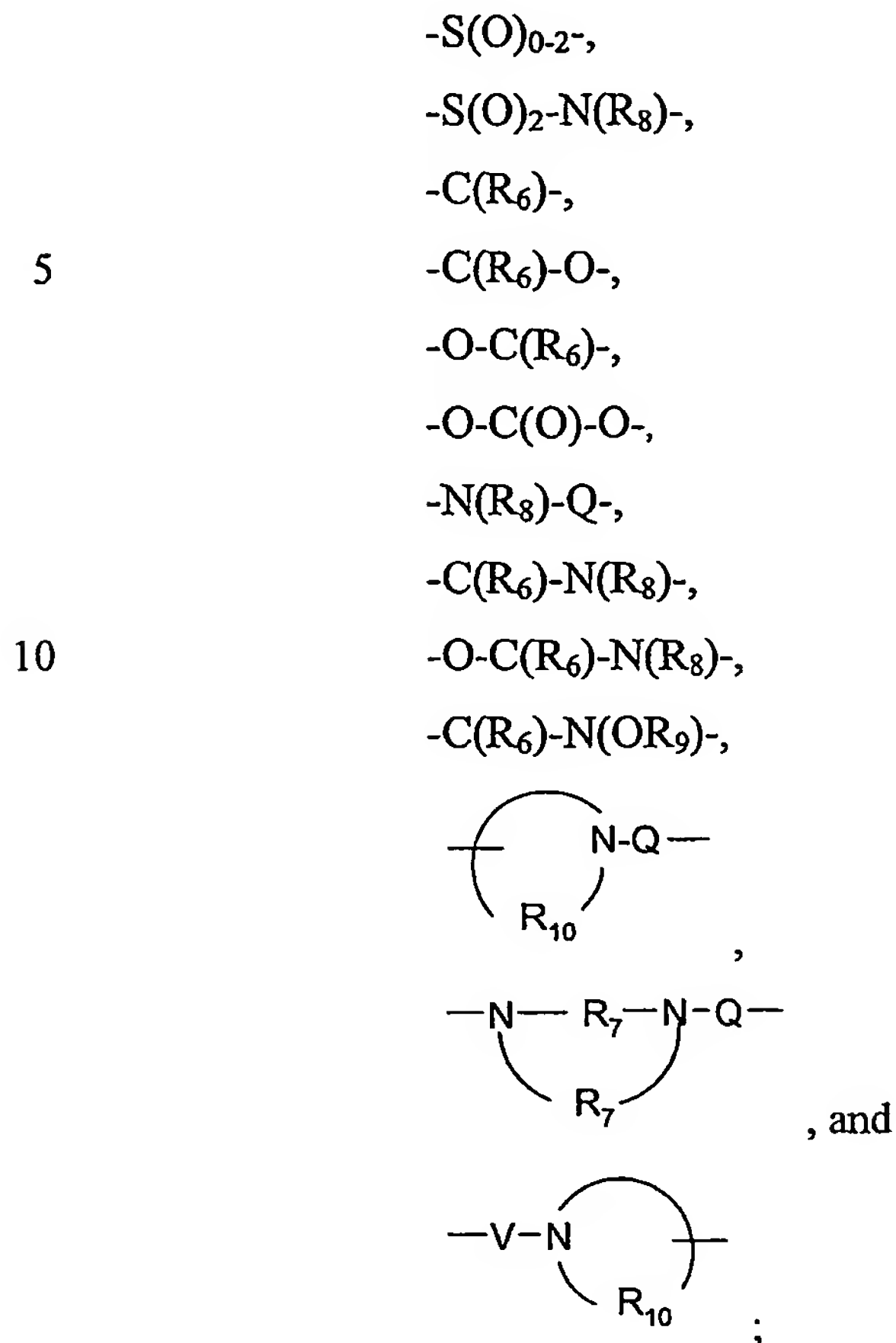
20 R_b is selected from the group consisting of halogen, hydroxy, alkyl, haloalkyl, alkoxy, and -N(R₉)₂;

R_e is selected from the group consisting of halogen, hydroxy, alkyl, alkenyl, haloalkyl, alkoxy, alkylthio, and -N(R₉)₂;

R₂ is selected from the group consisting of:
 25 -R₄,
 -X-R₄,
 -X-Y-R₄, and
 -X-R₅;

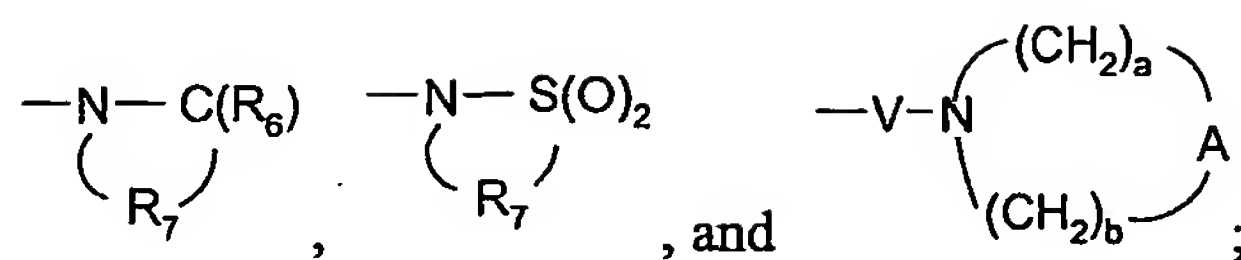
X is selected from the group consisting of alkylene, alkenylene, alkynylene,
 30 arylene, heteroarylene, and heterocyclylene wherein the alkylene, alkenylene, and alkynylene groups are optionally interrupted or terminated by arylene, heteroarylene or heterocyclylene and optionally interrupted by one or more -O- groups;

Y is selected from the group consisting of:



15 R₄ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl,
 arylalkylenyl, aryloxyalkylenyl, alkylarylenyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkylenyl,
 heteroaryloxyalkylenyl, alkylheteroarylenyl, and heterocyclyl wherein the alkyl, alkenyl,
 alkynyl, aryl, arylalkylenyl, aryloxyalkylenyl, alkylarylenyl, heteroaryl,
 heteroarylalkylenyl, heteroaryloxyalkylenyl, alkylheteroarylenyl, and heterocyclyl groups
 20 are unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents independently selected from
 the group consisting of alkyl, alkoxy, hydroxyalkyl, haloalkyl, haloalkoxy, halogen, nitro,
 hydroxy, mercapto, cyano, aryl, aryloxy, arylalkyleneoxy, heteroaryl, heteroaryloxy,
 heteroarylalkyleneoxy, heterocyclyl, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino,
 (dialkylamino)alkyleneoxy, and in the case of alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, and heterocyclyl,
 25 oxo;

R₅ is selected from the group consisting of:



R₆ is selected from the group consisting of =O and =S;

R₇ is C₂₋₇ alkylene;

5 R₈ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, alkoxyalkylenyl, hydroxyalkylenyl, and arylalkylenyl;

R₉ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl;

R_{9a} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and C₁₋₄ alkyl;

R₁₀ is C₃₋₈ alkylene;

10 A is selected from the group consisting of -O-, -C(O)-, -S(O)₀₋₂-, -CH₂-, and -N(R₄)-;

Q is selected from the group consisting of a bond, -C(R₆)-, -C(R₆)-C(R₆)-, -S(O)₂-, and -S(O)₂-N(R₈)-;

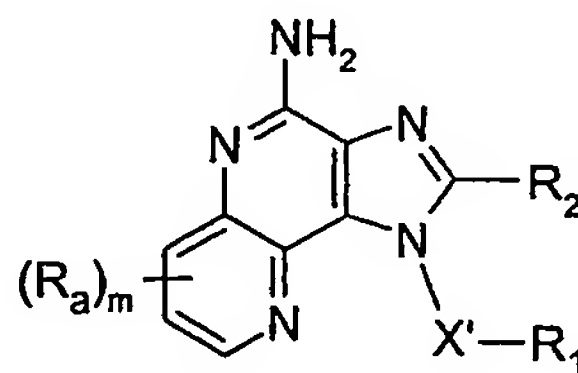
V is selected from the group consisting of -C(R₆)-, -O-C(R₆)-, and -S(O)₂-; and

15 a and b are each independently an integer from 1 to 6 with the proviso that a + b is ≤ 7; or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

8. The compound or salt of claim 2 wherein R_{A1} and R_{B1} are each methyl.

20 9. The compound or salt of claim 3 or claim 4 wherein n is 0.

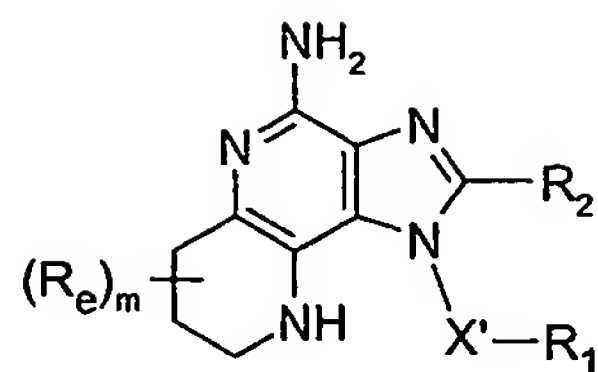
10. The compound or salt of claim 5 wherein the compound is Formula V:



V

25 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

11. The compound or salt of claim 6 wherein the compound is Formulas IXa:



IXa

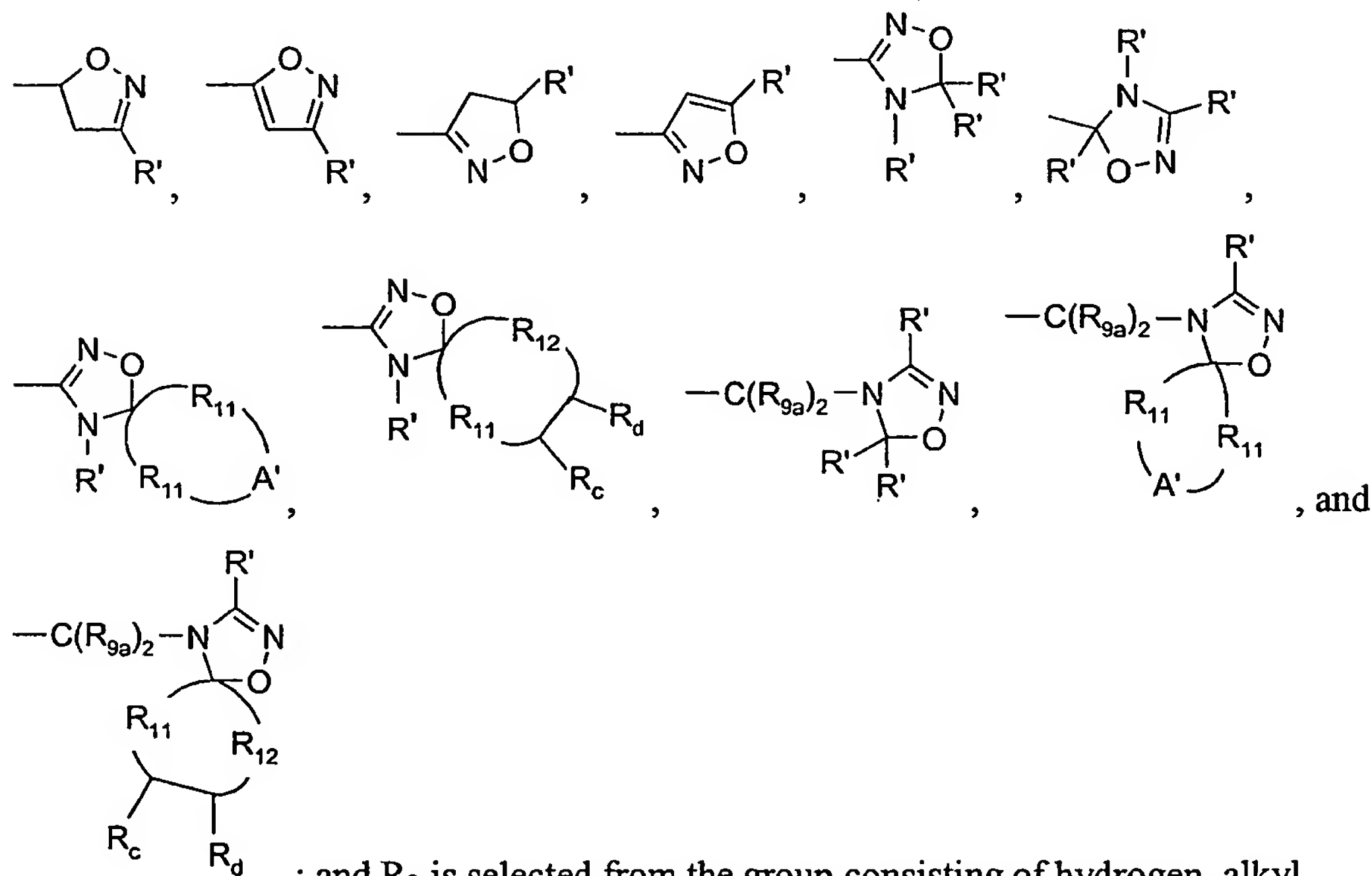
or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

12. The compound or salt of any one of claims 5, 6, 10, and 11 wherein m is 0.

13. The compound or salt of any one of claims 1 through 12 wherein X' is C_{1-4} alkylene.

14. The compound or salt of claim 13 wherein X' is $-CH_2-$.

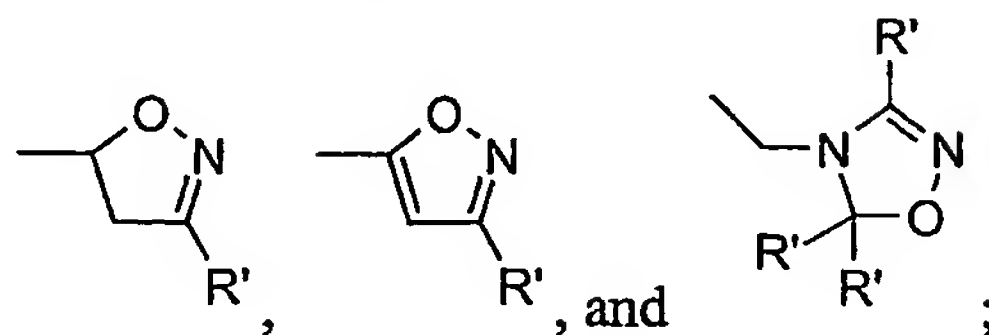
15. The compound or salt of any one of claims 1 through 14 wherein R_1 is selected from the group consisting of:



; and R_8 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, alkoxyalkylenyl, and arylalkylenyl.

16. The compound or salt of any one of claims 1 through 14 wherein:

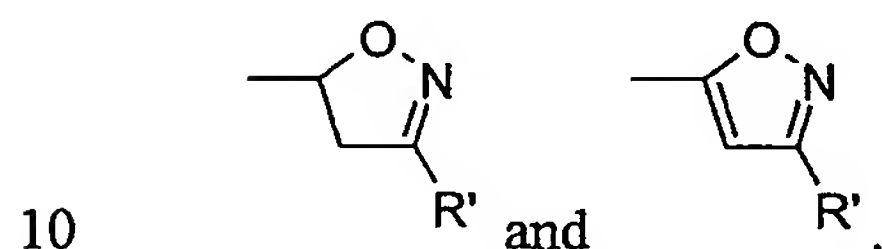
R_1 is selected from the group consisting of:



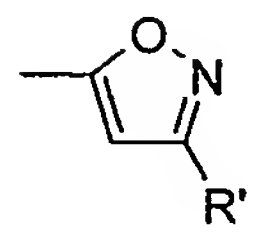
each R_a is independently selected from the group consisting of fluorine, alkyl, haloalkyl, alkoxy, and $-N(R_9)_2$; and

5 each R_8 is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, alkoxyalkylenyl, and arylalkylenyl.

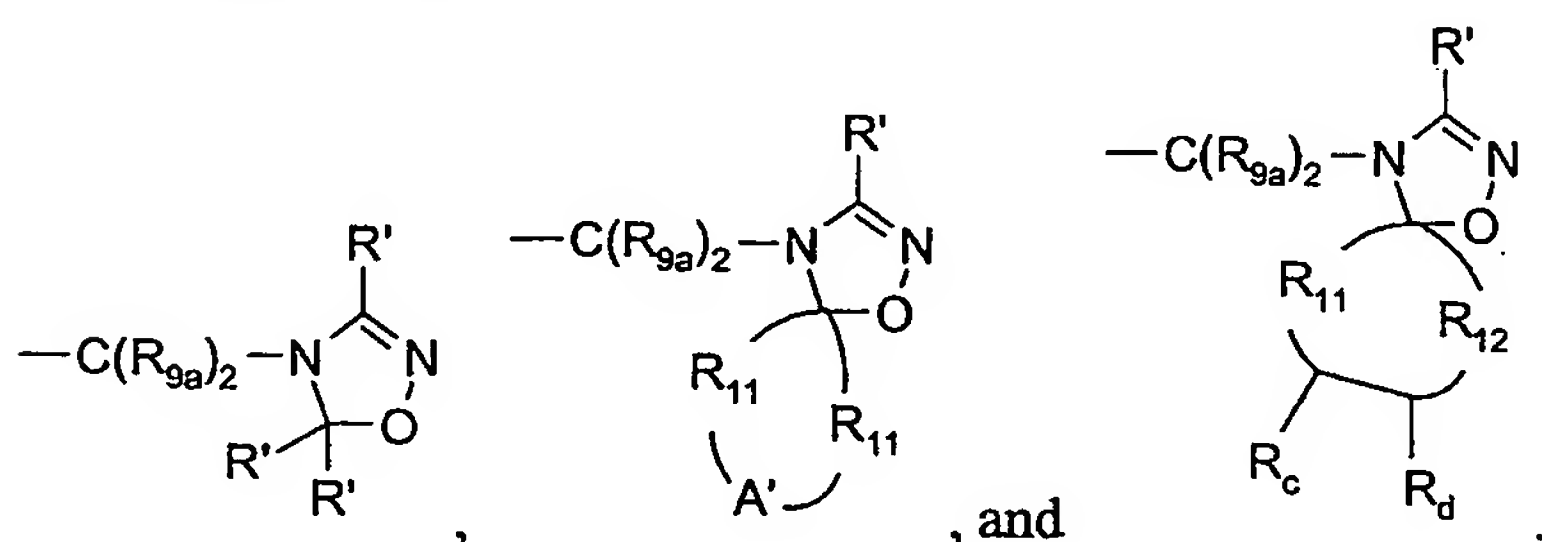
17. The compound or salt of any one of claims 1 through 14 wherein R_1 is selected from the group consisting of:



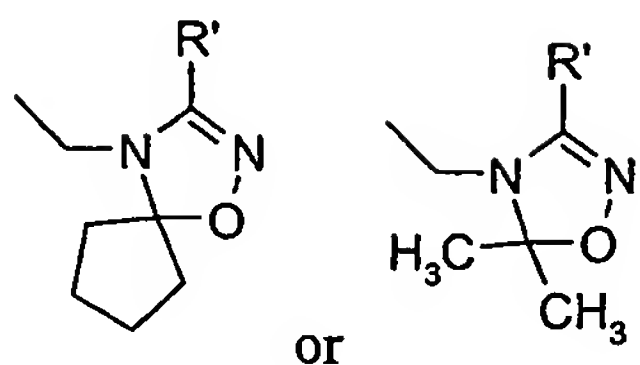
18. The compound or salt of claim 17 wherein R_1 is



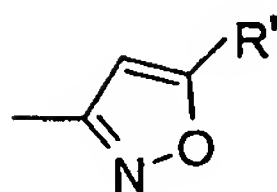
15 19. The compound or salt of any one of claims 1 through 14 wherein R_1 is selected from the group consisting of:



20. The compound or salt of claim 19 wherein R_1 is



21. The compound or salt of any one of claims 1 through 14 wherein R_1 is



5

22. The compound or salt of any one of claims 1 through 21 wherein R' is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, aryl, and heteroaryl, each of which is unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of alkyl, alkoxy, halogen, and haloalkyl.

10

23. The compound or salt of claim 22 wherein R' is selected from the group consisting of methyl; butyl; phenyl which is unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of fluorine and trifluoromethyl; and 3-pyridyl.

15

24. The compound or salt of any one of claims 1 through 23 wherein R_2 is hydrogen; alkoxyalkylenyl; hydroxyalkylenyl; haloalkylenyl; heterocyclalkylenyl that is unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of methyl, hydroxy, hydroxymethyl, and dimethylamino; $-R_4$; $-X-R_4$; or $-X-Y-R_4$; wherein:

X is C_{1-2} alkylene optionally terminated by heterocyclylene;

20

Y is $-S(O)_{0-2}-$, $-S(O)_2-N(R_8)-$, $-C(R_6)-$, $-C(R_6)-O-$, $-O-C(R_6)-$, $-O-C(O)-O-$, $-N(R_8)-Q-$, $-C(R_6)-N(R_8)-$, $-O-C(R_6)-N(R_8)-$, or $-C(R_6)-N(OR_9)-$; wherein

R_8 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, arylalkylenyl, and hydroxyalkylenyl; and

25

R_4 is alkyl that is unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of hydroxy and cyano, aryl; or heterocycl that is unsubstituted or substituted by alkyl with the proviso that when Y is $-C(R_6)-O-$ or $-C(R_6)-N(R_8)-$, then R_4 may also be hydrogen.

25. The compound or salt of claim 24 wherein R_2 is hydrogen, alkoxyalkylenyl, hydroxyalkylenyl, $-R_4$, $-X-R_4$, or $-X-Y-R_4$; wherein:

X is C_{1-2} alkylene;

Y is $-S(O)_{0-2}-$, $-S(O)_2-N(R_8)-$, $-C(R_6)-$, $-C(R_6)-O-$, $-O-C(R_6)-$, $-O-C(O)-O-$,
5 $-N(R_8)-Q-$, $-C(R_6)-N(R_8)-$, $-O-C(R_6)-N(R_8)-$, or $-C(R_6)-N(OR_9)-$; wherein

R_8 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and arylalkylenyl; and

R_4 is alkyl.

10 26. The compound or salt of claim 25 wherein R_2 is hydrogen, C_{1-4} alkyl, C_{1-4} alkyl- $O-C_{1-4}$ alkylenyl, or hydroxy C_{1-4} alkylenyl.

27. The compound or salt of claim 26 wherein R_2 is methyl, ethyl, *n*-propyl, *n*-butyl, ethoxymethyl, 2-methoxyethyl, hydroxymethyl, or 2-hydroxyethyl.

15

28. The compound or salt of claim 24 wherein R_2 is methyl, ethyl, *n*-propyl, *n*-butyl, ethoxymethyl, 2-methoxyethyl, hydroxymethyl, 2-hydroxyethyl, or fluoromethyl.

29. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a therapeutically effective amount of a
20 compound or salt of any one of claims 1 through 28 and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

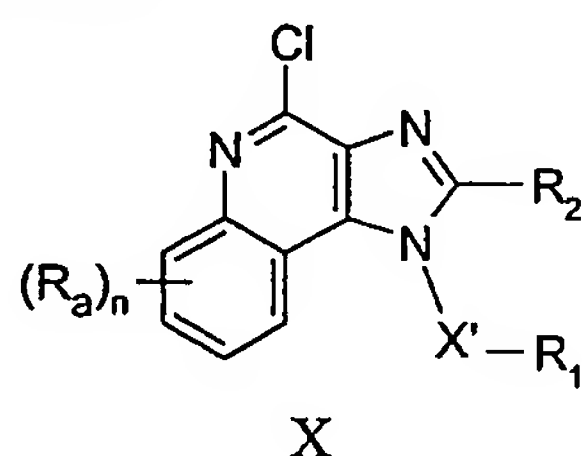
30. A method of inducing cytokine biosynthesis in an animal comprising administering an effective amount of a compound or salt of any one claims 1 through 28 or the
25 pharmaceutical composition of claim 29 to the animal.

31. A method of treating a viral disease in an animal in need thereof comprising administering a therapeutically effective amount of a compound or salt of any one of claims 1 through 28 or the pharmaceutical composition of claim 29 to the animal.

30

32. A method of treating a neoplastic disease in an animal in need thereof comprising administering a therapeutically effective amount of a compound or salt of any one of claims 1 through 28 or the pharmaceutical composition of claim 29 to the animal.

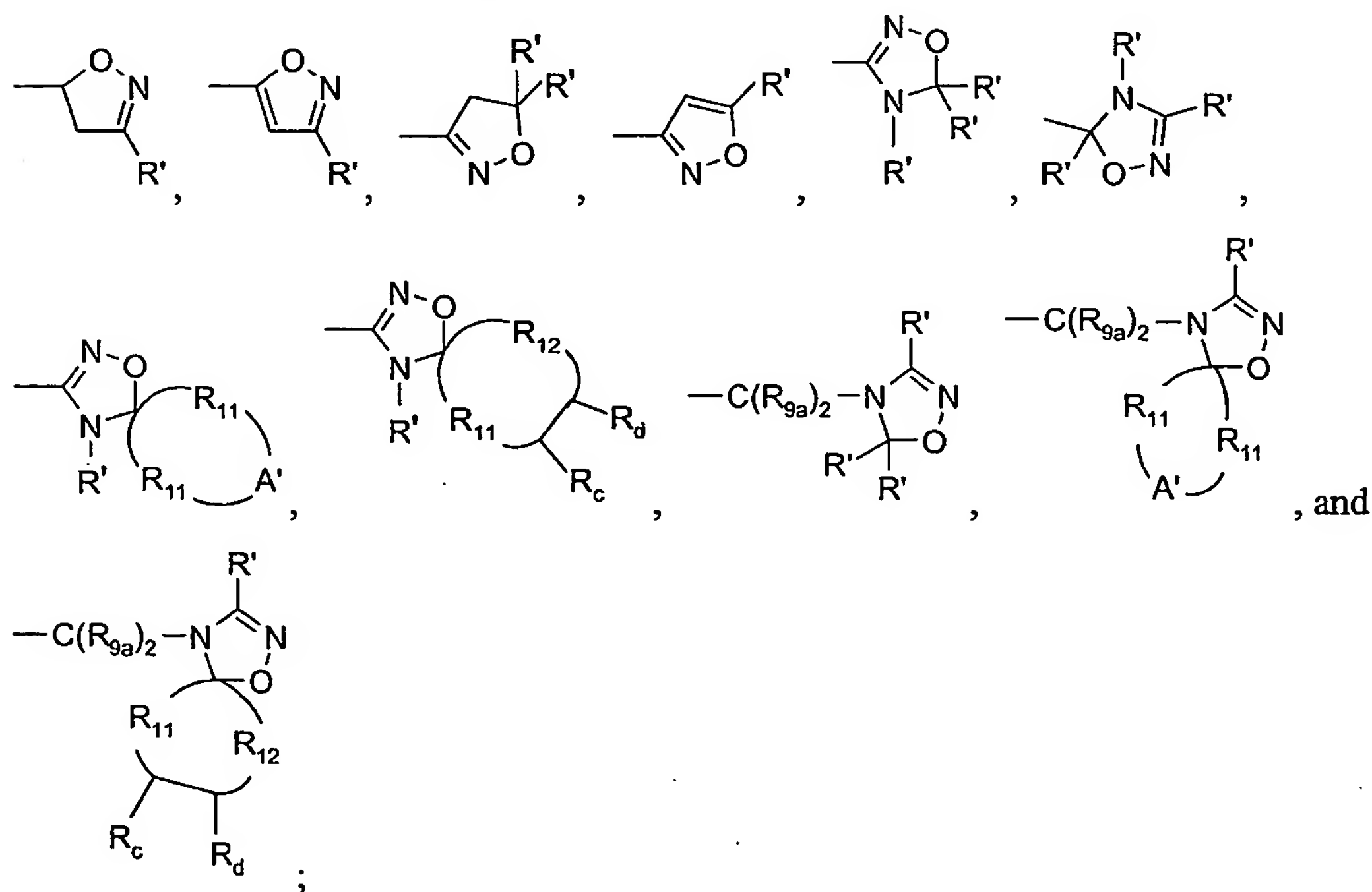
5 33. A compound of the Formula X:



wherein:

X' is selected from the group consisting of -CH(R₉)-, -CH(R₉)-alkylene-, and
10 -CH(R₉)-alkenylene-;

R₁ is selected from the group consisting of:



15 R' is selected from the group consisting of:

hydrogen,
alkyl,
alkenyl,
aryl,

arylalkylenyl,
heteroaryl,
heteroarylalkylenyl,
heterocyclyl,
5 heterocyclylalkylenyl, and
alkyl, alkenyl, aryl, arylalkylenyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkylenyl,
heterocyclyl, or heterocyclylalkylenyl, substituted by one or more substituents selected
from the group consisting of:

10 hydroxy,
alkyl,
haloalkyl,
hydroxyalkyl,
alkoxy,
dialkylamino,
15 -S(O)₀₋₂-alkyl,
-S(O)₀₋₂-aryl,
-NH-S(O)₂-alkyl,
-NH-S(O)₂-aryl,
haloalkoxy,
20 halogen,
nitrile,
nitro,
aryl,
heteroaryl,
25 heterocyclyl,
aryloxy,
arylalkyleneoxy,
-C(O)-O-alkyl,
-C(O)-N(R₈)₂,
30 -N(R₈)-C(O)-alkyl,
-O-(CO)-alkyl, and
-C(O)-alkyl;

R_c and R_d are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halogen, hydroxy, alkyl, alkenyl, aryl, haloalkyl, alkoxy, alkylthio, and $-N(R_9)_2$; or R_c and R_d can join to form a fused aryl ring or fused 5-10 membered heteroaryl ring containing one to four heteroatoms;

5 R_{11} is C_{1-6} alkylene or C_{2-6} alkenylene, wherein the alkylene or alkenylene is optionally interrupted by one heteroatom;

R_{12} is selected from the group consisting of a bond, C_{1-5} alkylene, and C_{2-5} alkenylene, wherein the alkylene or alkenylene is optionally interrupted by one heteroatom;

10 wherein the total number of atoms in the ring which includes R_{11} or R_{12} is 4 to 9;

A' is selected from the group consisting of $-O-$, $-S(O)_{0-2}-$, $-N(-Q-R_4)-$, and $-C(R_{9a})_2-$;

R_a is selected from the group consisting of halogen, alkyl, haloalkyl, alkoxy, and $-N(R_9)_2$;

15 n is an integer from 0 to 4;

R_2 is selected from the group consisting of:

$-R_4$,

$-X-R_4$,

$-X-Y-R_4$, and

20 $-X-R_5$;

X is selected from the group consisting of alkylene, alkenylene, alkynylene, arylene, heteroarylene, and heterocyclylene wherein the alkylene, alkenylene, and alkynylene groups are optionally interrupted or terminated by arylene, heteroarylene or heterocyclylene and optionally interrupted by one or more $-O-$ groups;

25 Y is selected from the group consisting of:

$-S(O)_{0-2}-$,

$-S(O)_2-N(R_8)-$,

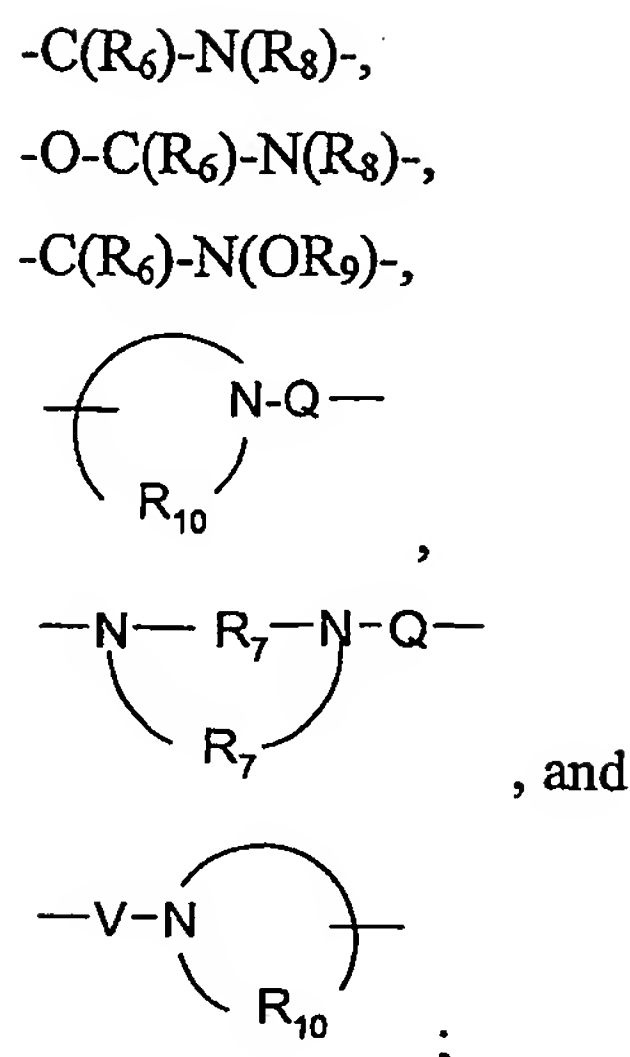
$-C(R_6)-$,

$-C(R_6)-O-$,

30 $-O-C(R_6)-$,

$-O-C(O)-O-$,

$-N(R_8)-Q-$,



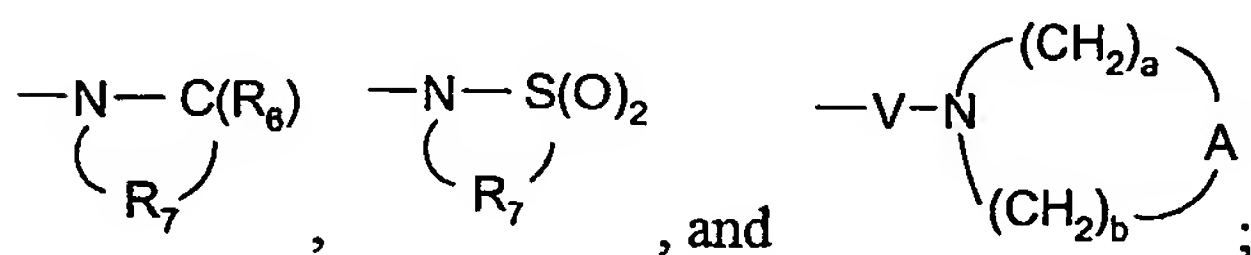
5

10

15

R_4 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, arylalkylenyl, aryloxyalkylenyl, alkylarylenyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkylenyl, heteroaryloxyalkylenyl, alkylheteroarylenyl, and heterocyclyl wherein the alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, arylalkylenyl, aryloxyalkylenyl, alkylarylenyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkylenyl, heteroaryloxyalkylenyl, alkylheteroarylenyl, and heterocyclyl groups are unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents independently selected from the group consisting of alkyl, alkoxy, hydroxyalkyl, haloalkyl, haloalkoxy, halogen, nitro, hydroxy, mercapto, cyano, aryl, aryloxy, arylalkyleneoxy, heteroaryl, heteroaryloxy, heteroarylalkyleneoxy, heterocyclyl, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, (dialkylamino)alkyleneoxy, and in the case of alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, and heterocyclyl, oxo;

R_5 is selected from the group consisting of:



20

R_6 is selected from the group consisting of =O and =S;

R_7 is C_{2-7} alkylene;

R_8 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, alkoxyalkylenyl, hydroxyalkylenyl, and arylalkylenyl;

R_9 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl;

25

R_{9a} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and C_{1-4} alkyl;

R_{10} is C_{3-8} alkylene;

A is selected from the group consisting of -O-, -C(O)-, -S(O)₀₋₂-, -CH₂-, and -N(R₄)-;

Q is selected from the group consisting of a bond, -C(R₆)-, -C(R₆)-C(R₆)-, -S(O)₂-, and -S(O)₂-N(R₈)-;

5 V is selected from the group consisting of -C(R₆)-, -O-C(R₆)-, and -S(O)₂-; and

a and b are each independently an integer from 1 to 6 with the proviso that $a + b \leq 7$;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

10